

Applied English Grammar
and Composition

H. C. DAS



VERB

Adverb

Narration

Interjection

Adverb

VOICE

Conjunction

Applied English Grammar and Composition

ANGLO-BENGALI
FOR HIGH SCHOOLS

Based on
Nesfield, Mern & Martin

Compiled by
H. C. DAS

4

Some of the authorities consulted

1. English Grammar Series—J.C. Nesfield.
2. High School English Grammar & Comp.—Wren & Marin.
3. Hints on the Study of English—Rowe & Webb.
4. Good English—How to write it—G.H. Vallins.
5. A Practical English Grammar—A.J. Thomson & A. V. Martinet.
6. Modern English Usage (MEU)—Fowler.
7. The King's English—Fowler.
8. Current English Usage—F.T. Wood.
9. English Colloquial Idioms—F.T. Wood & R.J. Hill.
10. COD—Concise Oxford Dictionary.
11. Twentieth Century Dictionary—Chambers.
12. The Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English—S.S. Hornby, E.V. Gatenby & H. Wakefield.
13. Mc. Mordie—English Idioms and How to use them—Revised by R.C. Giffin.
14. Collins Cobuild English Grammar—The University of Birmingham.
15. Collins Cobuild Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs.
16. English Conversation Practice—Grant Jaylor.
17. English Conversation Practice—D.H. Spencer.
18. Oxford Dictionary of New Words [First published in 1991]
19. Oxford Guide to English Grammar—John East Wood
(First published in 1994)
20. English Pronouncing Dictionary—Daniel Jones. And many other.



LearningHomeBD.com

*"I have milked three hundred cows into my bucket
but the butter I churned is my own."—Chesterton*

CONTENTS

PART- I

GRAMMAR

| Chapter | Pages |
|--|---------|
| i Sentences & Functions of Sentences | ... 1 |
| ii Parts of Speech | ... 17 |
| iii Kinds of Nouns | ... 38 |
| iv Countable and Uncountable Nouns | ... 43 |
| v The Noun : Number | ... 48 |
| vi The Noun : Gender | ... 56 |
| vii The Noun : Case | ... 60 |
| viii More About Pronouns | ... 64 |
| ix More about Adjectives | ... 76 |
| x More about Verbs & Modals | ... 88 |
| xi Subject-Verb Agreement/Syntax | ... 105 |
| xii Conjugation of Verbs | ... 113 |
| xiii Time and Tense | ... 124 |
| xiv Verbal Noun, Gerund and Participle | ... 145 |
| xv More about Adverbs and Adverbials | ... 153 |
| xvi More about Prepositions | ... 168 |
| xvii Appropriate Prepositions | ... 184 |
| xviii More about Conjunctions | ... 205 |
| xix Articles and Determiners | ... 211 |
| xx Modifiers | ... 225 |
| xxi Structural & Non-structural Words | ... 228 |
| xxii Narration / Reporting | ... 231 |
| xxiii Voice change / Describing a Process/ Narrating events | ... 252 |
| xxiv Sentence and its Clauses/Joining/Splitting | ... 265 |
| xxv Transformation of Sentences | ... 286 |
| xxvi Formation of Words / Antonyms | ... 298 |
| xxvii Words from one Part of Speech to Others | ... 314 |
| xxviii Same Word used as Different Parts of Speech | ... 324 |
| xxix Group Verbs/Phrasal Verbs | ... 331 |
| xxx Idioms | ... 342 |
| xxxi Nominal Compounds | ... 349 |
| xxxii Punctuation | ... 355 |

PART-II

COMPOSITION

| Chapter | Pages |
|--|---------|
| I. Letter Writing | ... 363 |
| II. Narrating Events | ... 402 |
| III. Paragraphs | ... 413 |
| IV. Presenting Problems and Suggesting Solutions | ... 437 |
| V. Retelling Stories | ... 444 |
| VI. Reporting Dialogue in a Summary Form | ... 458 |
| VII. Describing a Process | ... 465 |

PART-III

READING COMPREHENSION

... 472

PART-IV

USE OF MOTHER TONGUE

| Chapter | Pages |
|--|---------|
| I. Sentence Pattern | ... 507 |
| II. Introductory—'There' | ... 512 |
| III. Introductory 'It' | ... 514 |
| IV. Articles | ... 515 |
| V. Tenses | ... 517 |
| VI. Gerund | ... 524 |
| VII. Infinitives | ... 525 |
| VIII. Participles | ... 526 |
| IX. Complex Sentences [with Sequence of Tenses] | ... 528 |
| X. Compound Sentences | ... 532 |
| XI. Idiomatic uses of some Verbs | ... 534 |
| XII. Bengali Particles | ... 536 |
| XIII. Idiomatic comparisons | ... 537 |
| XIV. Proverbs | ... 539 |
| XV. Passages for Translation | ... 541 |
| APPENDIX | ... |
| i. Structural Patterns | ... 551 |

GRAMMAR

CHAPTER-I SENTENCES

A combination of words that makes a complete sense is called a sentence. —J.C. Nesfield.

A group of words which makes a complete sense is called a sentence. —Wren & Martin.

পরিপূর্ণ অর্থ প্রকাশ করে এমন শব্দ সমষ্টিকে Sentence বা বাক্য বলে।

এবার Sentence -এর এরকম সংজ্ঞা কতটা ঠিক তা দেখা যাক :

(i) আমরা কথা বলার সময় কখনো একটি শব্দ ব্যবহার করে মনের ভাব প্রকাশ করি (যেমন- Yes. No. Come. Go. Halt. ইত্যাদি), কখনো group of words বা শব্দসমষ্টি ব্যবহার করে মনের ভাব প্রকাশ করি। এইভাবে কখনো কোনো একটি প্রসঙ্গে একটি word দিয়েও একটি Sentence বা বাক্য হয়। আবার অধিকাংশ সময় group of words বা শব্দ সমষ্টি দিয়েও Sentence বা বাক্য হয়। একটি Situation বা Context-এ ব্যাপারটা দেখা যাক।

Mr. Sen: Is it your pen? [Multi-worded sentence]
Mr. Roy: Yes. [Single-worded sentence]

এক্ষেত্রে group of words দিয়ে যেমন একটি বাক্য হয়েছে, তেমনি একটি word দিয়েও একটি বাক্য হয়েছে। তাই একটি Sentence-এর জন্য সর্বদা A group of words-এর প্রয়োজন হয় না।

(ii) আবার যখন বলা দরকার—'The man is walking slowly in the morning.'—তখন যদি কেউ 'The man is walking.' বলে থেমে যায়, তাহলে তো Complete sense হয় না। কিন্তু সেটি কি একটি বাক্য নয়? নিশ্চয়ই তা একটি বাক্য বা Sentence—কারণ এইটুকুতেও একটা clear meaning রয়েছে। তাই Sentence-এর সংজ্ঞায় complete-এর পরিবর্তে clear কথাটি থাকলে আর কোন বিতর্ক থাকে না।

সুতরাং ভাষাবিজ্ঞানের অগ্রগতির সঙ্গে আমরা Sentence বা বাক্যের সংজ্ঞাকে আরো বিজ্ঞানসম্মতভাবে প্রকাশ করতে পারি। তাই মনে রাখা দরকার :

A word or a group of words having a clear meaning in a given context is called a sentence. —P. C. Das.

যে শব্দ বা শব্দসমষ্টি কোন একটি প্রসঙ্গে পরিষ্কার অর্থ প্রকাশ করে, তাকে sentence বা বাক্য বলে।

***Note :** In written form of English we usually have a group of words with verbs. But in spoken English we often use single word or verbless group of words as sentences; rather such sentences are preferred in many cases. Hence single-worded sentences or verbless sentences are also spoken of in **Modern English Grammar**.

[লেখা ইংরেজিতে সাধারণতঃ Verb-যুক্ত Group of words দিয়ে বাক্য তৈরি হলেও কথ্য ইংরেজিতে অনেক সময়েই একটিমাত্র word দিয়েই বা Verb-হীন Group of words দিয়েই সঠিক বাক্য হয়। শুধু তাই নয়, কোন কোন ক্ষেত্রে Verb-যুক্ত একাধিক শব্দ দিয়ে সম্পূর্ণ বাক্য তৈরি করলে কথ্য ইংরেজির style বজায় থাকে না। যেমন : ট্রেনের টিকিট পরীক্ষক "Please show me your ticket" না বলে শুধু বলেন—"Ticket, Please."]

Written form

A. What is your name?

B. My name is Jack.

A. What is the time by your watch?

B. It is just 9 by my watch.

Spoken English-এ যদি 'Name, please' না বলে 'what is your name?' বলা হয়, কিংবা 'just 9' না বলে 'It is just 9 by my watch' বলা হয়, তাহলে Good Spoken English হয় না। মনে রাখা দরকার, যদিও সাধারণভাবে What is your name?—এর Spoken form—'What's your name?' তবু বয়স্ক ব্যক্তি বা সম্মানিত ব্যক্তির ক্ষেত্রে 'Name, Please' বলাই শিষ্টাচার সম্মত। তেমনি নাম বলার সময় 'My name is' অংশটি Spoken English-এ বাহ্যিক হিসেবে বিবেচিত হয়।

এবার কিছু sentence-এর ব্যবহার লক্ষ্য কর :

আমর যদি বলি যা দিবি—

Brother my is Subhas.

A student good he is:

Goes he to school.

Love I much him very.

He me too loves.

তাহলে কতকগুলি শব্দ বা group of words বসিয়েও বাক্য হচ্ছে না। কারণ শব্দগুলি ঠিকমতো সাজিয়ে না বসানোর জন্য (in proper order না বসানোর জন্য) কোন পরিষ্কার অর্থ (Clear meaning) হচ্ছে না। কিন্তু এগুলিকে যদি ঠিকমতো সাজিয়ে বসানো হয়, যাতে একটি পরিষ্কার অর্থ পাওয়া যায় তাহলে এই শব্দগুলিই এক একটা sentence বা বাক্য তৈরি করতে পারে।

এবার এই শব্দগুলি ঠিকমতো সাজিয়ে দিলে কি দাঁড়ায় দেখা যাক :

Subhas is my brother.

He is a good student.

He goes to school.

I love him very much.

He loves me too.

(সুভাস আমার ভাই।)

(সে ভালো ছাত্র।)

(সে স্কুলে যায়।)

(আমি তাকে খুব ভালোবাসি।)

(সে আমাকেও ভালোবাসে।)

দেখা গেল, ওপরের শব্দগুলি ঠিকভাবে পাশাপাশি বসে পরিষ্কার অর্থ প্রকাশ করার জন্য প্রত্যেকটিই এক একটি Sentence বা বাক্য হয়েছে। সুতরাং একটি Sentence-এর দুটি বৈশিষ্ট্য—*proper order (একাদিক শব্দ হলে) এবং clear meaning.

A sentence must have a proper order of words and a clear meaning.—P.C.Das

*Note : সঞ্চিত বাক্যের Sentence বা বাক্যের সংজ্ঞা দেওয়া হয়েছে নিম্নোক্তভাবে।

সেখানে বাক্যের তিনটি অংশের কথা বলা হয়েছে—আকাঙ্ক্ষা, যোগ্যতা ও আসত্তি বা পদসংস্থান—কীতি। উদাহরণ দেওয়া যাক—যদি বলি, "The cow is" তাহলে শ্রোতার আকাঙ্ক্ষার নিবৃত্তি হবে না, "The cow is grazing in the field" বললে আকাঙ্ক্ষার নিবৃত্তি হবে এবং তখন তা বাক্য হবে। আবার যদি বলা হয়, "The cows are flying in the sky" তাহলে তাও বাক্য হবে না, কারণ পোকুর আকাঙ্ক্ষা ওড়ার যোগ্যতা নেই। কিংবা যদি বলা হয় "The is cow in the field grazing", তাহলে সেটিও বাক্য হবে না, কারণ তার আসত্তি বা পদসংস্থানকীতি ঠিক নেই এবং তার ফলে কোন অর্থবোধ হয় না। ইংরেজি বাক্যের সংজ্ঞা 'Clear meaning'—এর মধ্যে এই তিনটি গুণ লুকিয়ে আছে। কারণ এই তিনটি গুণের মধ্যে যে কোন একটির অভাব হলেই 'Clear meaning' হবে না।

FORMATION OF SENTENCES

(বাক্য গঠন)

Now, we see, sentences may be single-worded and multi-worded with verbs and without verbs. Single-worded sentences and multi-worded sentences without verbs are often said in Spoken English. বাক্য কখনো single worded বা একপদী, কখনো multi worded বা বহুপদী হয়। Spoken English-এ কখনো Verb থাকে, কখনো verb থাকে না।

SENTENCES

Sentences

Single-worded

(Yes. No. Come. Go. Stop. Halt. Thanks etc.)

Multi-worded

With verbs

Who's speaking = who is speaking?

What's the time now?

Have you taken any sweets?

Will you take any?

Without verbs

Mr. Roy.

Five minutes past ten.

Not at all.

Why not?

Some other verbless sentences : All right. (ঠিক আছে।)
So what? (তাতে কি?)

However, in written form of English we often use full forms of sentences. Such sentences have some structures or patterns.

যাই হোক লিখিত ইংরেজিতে আমরা প্রায়ই বাক্যের পূর্ণরূপ ব্যবহার করি। এরূপ বাক্যের কিছু Structure বা গঠন পদ্ধতি আছে।

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

(1) The part which names the person or thing we are speaking about is called the **subject** of the sentence.

(2) The part which tells something about the subject is called the **predicate** of the sentence.

—Wren & Martin.

বৈশিষ্ট্য ভাগ sentence যা আমরা বলি বা লিখি, তার দুটি অংশ থাকে।

(1) **Subject** (2) **Predicate**.

যে ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু বা বিষয় সম্বন্ধে আমরা কথা বলি বা লিখি, তাকে বলে **Subject** এবং Subject-এর সম্বন্ধে আমরা যা বলি বা লিখি তাকে বলে **Predicate**.

বাক্যে সাধারণত : **Subject** প্রথমে এবং তার পরে **Predicate** বসে। যেমন—

| Subject | Predicate |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| A boy | lived in a village. |
| His parents | sent him to school. |
| He | liked his lessons. |
| He | never stood second in the class. |

*Note : উপরের উদাহরণে লক্ষ্য কর—'boy', 'parents' এবং 'he' হলো মূল Subject. এগুলিকে বলে *Subject proper*; 'A' এবং 'His' Subject এর বাড়তি অংশ। এগুলিকে বলে *Adjuncts to Subject*.

*সাধারণত : Subject আগে এবং Predicate পরে বসলেও কখনো কখনো বাক্যের কোন বিশেষ অংশকে জোর দেওয়ার জন্য Subject-এর আগে সমগ্র Predicate বা Predicate-এর কিছু অংশ বসে। যেমন—

Silver and gold have I none (সোনা রূপো আমার কিছুই নেই।)

Predicate Subject Predicate

Sweet are the uses of adversity.

Predicate Subject

আদেশ অনুবোধমূলক বাক্যে (Imperative sentence-এ) প্রায় সর্বদাই Subject উহা থাকে। যেমন—

Come in. (Subject 'you' উহা আছে)

Sit down. (Subject 'you' উহা আছে)

কখনো কখনো বিবৃতিমূলক বাক্যেও (Assertive Sentence-এ) Subject উহা থাকে।

Thank you. (Subject 'I' উহা আছে।)

Hope, you are well. (Subject 'I' উহা আছে।)

4 APPLIED ENGLISH GRAMMAR & COMPOSITION

Interrogative sentence বা প্রশ্নবোধক বাক্যে Predicate-এর একটি অংশ (Verb বা Verb-এর একটি অংশ) Subject-এর আগে বসে। যেমন—Are you a student? Will you go to school?

Optative sentence বা ইচ্ছা-প্রার্থনাসূচক বাক্যে Subject-এর আগে Predicate-এর একটি অংশ 'may' verb বসে। যেমন—*May you be happy.

Sentences are of five kinds : Sentence পাঁচ রকম

- A sentence that makes a statement or assertion is called a Declarative or **Assertive** sentence.
- A sentence that asks a question is called an **Interrogative** sentence.
- A sentence that expresses a command or an entreaty is called an **Imperative** sentence.
- A sentence that expresses wish or prayer is called an **Optative** sentence.
- A sentence that expresses strong feeling or emotion is called an **Exclamatory** sentence.

Sentence বা বাক্যের কাজ অনুসারে বাক্যকে পাঁচ ভাগে ভাগ করা হয়।

যদি কোন বাক্যে কিছু বর্ণনা বা বিবৃতি বোঝায়, তবে তাকে বলে Assertive Sentence; প্রশ্ন করা বোঝালে হয় Interrogative Sentence; আদেশ-অনুরোধ বোঝালে Imperative Sentence; ইচ্ছা-প্রার্থনা বোঝালে Optative sentence; আবেগ প্রকাশ করলে Exclamatory Sentence হয়।

এখন নিচের Table-টি লক্ষ্য কর :

| Kinds of Sentences | Example | Function |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| Assertive | Subhas is a good boy. | Statement (বিবৃতি) |
| Interrogative | Does he play football? | Question (প্রশ্ন) |
| Imperative | Go home at once. | Command (আদেশ) |
| " | Please lend me a pen. | Request (অনুরোধ) |
| Optative | May he live long. | Wish (ইচ্ছা) |
| " | May god bless you. | Prayer (প্রার্থনা) |
| Exclamatory | Hurrah! We have won the match. | Emotion (আবেগ) |

***Note :** J.C. Nesfield- বলেছেন—“There are four different kinds of Sentences.”—(1) Statements, (2) Desires including command, request, entreaty and wish, (3) Questions, (4) Exclamations.

Nesfield Sentence- কে চারভাগে বিভক্ত করলেও পরবর্তীকালে বুঝবার এবং ব্যবহারের সুবিধার জন্য Desire-কে আলাদা একরকম sentence ধরে Sentence- কে Assertive, Interrogative, Imperative, Optative এবং Exclamatory—এই পাঁচ ভাগে বিভক্ত করা হয়।

এই পাঁচরকম Sentence-এর প্রত্যেককেই আবার দুভাগে ভাগ করা যায়—

(1) **Affirmative** বা হ্যাঁ-সূচক। (2) **Negative** বা না-সূচক।

নিচের Table-টি দেখ :

| Kinds of Sentence (বাক্যের প্রকারভেদ) | Affirmative (হ্যাঁ-সূচক) | Negative (না-সূচক) |
|--|---|--|
| Assertive (বিবৃতিমূলক) | Bimal is a good boy. (বিমল ভালো ছেলে) | Bimal is not a bad boy. (বিমল মন্দ ছেলে নয়) |
| Interrogative (প্রশ্নসূচক) | Does he play football? (সে কি ফুটবল খেলে?) | Does he not play football? (সে কি ফুটবল খেলে না?) |

SENTENCES

| Kinds of Sentence (বাক্যের প্রকারভেদ) | Affirmative (হ্যাঁ-সূচক) | Negative (না-সূচক) |
|--|--|---|
| Imperative (আদেশ-অনুরোধমূলক) | Open the window. (জানালাটি খোল) | Do not shut the window. (জানালাটি বন্ধ করো না) |
| Optative (ইচ্ছা-প্রার্থনাসূচক) | May he be happy. (সে সুখী হোক) | May he not be unhappy. (সে যেন অসুখী না হয়) |
| Exclamatory (আবেগসূচক) | Hurrah! We have won the game. (কি আনন্দ! আমরা খেলায় জিতেছি।) | Hurrah! we have not lost the game. (কি আনন্দ! আমরা খেলায় হারিনি।) |

Assertive বা বিবৃতিমূলক বাক্য, Imperative বা আদেশ-অনুরোধমূলক বাক্য এবং Optative বা ইচ্ছা-প্রার্থনাসূচক বাক্যের শেষে ফুলটপ (.) বসে। Interrogative বা প্রশ্নসূচক বাক্যের শেষে প্রশ্নচিহ্ন (?) বসে। Exclamatory বা আবেগসূচক বাক্যে note of exclamation বা আবেগ চিহ্ন (!) বসে।

*** Note :** Note of exclamation কে বাংলায় প্রচলিত ব্যাকরণ গুলিতে বিন্দুচিহ্ন বলা হয়। কিন্তু এই নামকরণ অসঙ্গত। কারণ হর্ষ, বিবাদ, বিষয়, ঘৃণা, ক্ষোভ, পিকার প্রভৃতি অনেকগুলি আবেগের মধ্যে বিন্দু একটি আবেগমাত্র। অংশকে দিয়ে সমগ্রের নামকরণ হয় না। তাই Note of exclamation-এর প্রকৃত নামকরণ হওয়া উচিত বিন্দুচিহ্ন নয়, আবেগচিহ্ন।

SENTENCE PATTERN

আমরা আগেই বলেছি, ইংরেজিতে পাঁচরকম Sentence আছে—**Assertive, Imperative, Interrogative, Optative এবং Exclamatory**। এই পাঁচরকম বাক্যের পাঁচরকম Sentence pattern আছে। এগুলি না বুঝলে কিছুতেই শুদ্ধ ইংরেজি লেখা যায় না।

Assertive Sentence Pattern

1. ইংরেজিতে শতকরা আশিভাগেরও বেশি বাক্য এই Assertive Sentence বা বর্ণনামূলক বাক্য এই বাক্য সাজাবার নিয়ম :

| Subject বা কর্তা (যে কাজ করে) | + | Verb বা ক্রিয়া (করা, হওয়া বা থাকা) | + | Object/ Complement কর্ম বা কর্মস্থানীয় শব্দ (ক্রিয়াকে 'কি' বা 'কাকে' দিয়ে প্রশ্ন করলে যে উত্তর পাওয়া যায়) | + | Preposition etc. (বিভক্তি ইত্যাদি) |
|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|
| I We We Amal Lila He She Lipika | | am learn eat reads writes plays shuts dances | | a student. English. rice. a book. a letter. football the door — | | — at home. at daytime. in the morning. at 7 a.m./8 p.m. etc in the afternoon. at night. in the evening. |

লক্ষ্য কর, বাক্য গঠনে বাংলার মত ইংরেজিতে শব্দ সাজানো হয় না। বাংলা বাক্যে সাধারণত : প্রথমে কর্তা এবং ক্রিয়াপদ শেষে বসে এবং কখনো ক্রিয়াপদ উহা থাকে। কিন্তু ইংরেজি বাক্যে প্রথমে Subject বা কর্তা এবং তারপরে Verb বা ক্রিয়া বসে। যেমন—

বাংলায়— আমি ছাত্র। কিন্তু ইংরেজিতে—আমি হই ছাত্র—I am a student.

বাংলায়— আমার কলম আছে। কিন্তু ইংরেজিতে—আমার আছে একটি কলম—I have a pen.

বাংলায়—আমি ভাত খাই। কিন্তু ইংরেজিতে—আমি খাই ভাত—I eat rice.

বাংলায়—কর্তা—কর্ম—ক্রিয়া (ক-ক-ক্রি) S—O—V

ইংরেজিতে—কর্তা—ক্রিয়া—কর্ম—(ক-ক্রি-ক)—S—O—V

এ যেন বাঙালী পরিবার এবং ইংরেজ পরিবারের আহারের রীতি অনুযায়ী বাক্য গঠনের পদ্ধতি। বাক্যের কর্তা যেন বাঙালী কর্তা, বাক্যের ক্রিয়া যেন বাঙালীর গিল্লী, হেলেনমেরেরা যেন Object বা কর্ম। বাঙালী পরিবারে প্রায়ই গিল্লী খেতে যেন সবার শেষে। কিন্তু ইংরেজ পরিবারে কর্তার ঠিক পাশেই যেন গিল্লী, আর তার পাশে কর্মহীনীর হেলেনমেরেরা। এজন্য বাংলায় 'আমরা ভাত খাই', কিন্তু ইংরেজিতে 'আমরা খাই ভাত' বা We eat rice.

এর পর Simple Sentence বা সরল বাক্যে সদস্য সংখ্যা বাড়তে গেলে Preposition যোগ করে তাদের খেতে দিতে হয়।

আরো লক্ষ্য কর, কর্তা যদি Anal, Lila, He বা She হয় অর্থাৎ কর্তা যদি Third Person Singular number হয়, তাহলে ক্রিয়ার শেষে s বা es যোগ হয়। অবশ্য এটা হয় কেবলমাত্র Present Indefinite tense-এ। যেমন—

কমল ভাত খায়—Kamal eats rice. লীলা স্কুলে যায়—Lila goes to school.

পাখি উড়ে—The bird flies. সে স্কুলে যায়—She goes to school.

আগের বাক্যগুলিতে নেত্র, ক্রিয়া সক্রমক হলে কর্ম বা object নেয়। কিন্তু ক্রিয়া অক্রমক হলে কোন কর্ম বসে না, কিংবা preposition (to, in, on, of ইত্যাদি) যোগ করে বাক্য বাড়ানো হয়।

লিপিকা সন্ধ্যায় নাচে—Lipika dances in the evening.

বাঘাঘাটীনে বনে বাঘ মারিয়াছিলেন—Bagha Jatin killed a tiger in the forest.

Imperative Sentence pattern

2. Imperative Sentence-এর বা আদেশ-অনুরোধমূলক বাক্যের Subject 'you' প্রায়ই উহ্য থাকে। সেক্ষেত্রে প্রথমেই Verb বা ক্রিয়া বসে। বাকি অংশ Assertive Sentence-এর মতো। এ ধরনের বাক্য সাজাবার নিয়ম :

| Pattern-A | | | Pattern-B | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|--|-----------------|-------------------|
| Subject বা কর্তা উহ্য | Verb বা ক্রিয়া (করা, হওয়া বা থাকা) | Object বা কর্ম (Verb ও Prep-এর Object) (What/Whom) | Verb বা ক্রিয়া | Where কোথায় |
| — | Read | the book | Come | here. |
| — | Write | a letter. | Go | there. |
| — | Shut | the door. | Walk | to the door. |
| — | Give | me a glass of water. | Run | across the field. |

বাড়ী যাও—Go home.

দরজাটি খোল—Open the door.

এক কাপ চা খাও—Have a cup of tea.

হাতমুখ ধোও—Wash your hands and face.

[কিন্তু] আপনি ধূমপান করেন আর আপনার পরিবার কষ্ট ভোগ করে—You smoke and your family suffers. [This is not an Imperative sentence, but an Assertive sentence]

তুমি তোমার কর্তব্য করিবে—You must do your duty. [Assertive, not Imperative]

*Note : Imperative Sentence-এ কর্তা উহ্য থাকে কেন ?

Imperative Sentence-এর কর্তা সর্বদাই তুমি, তোমরা, তুই, তোরা বা আপনি, sentence-এ You উহ্য থাকে।

Request বা অনুরোধ বোঝালে Verb-এর আগে Please বা Kindly যোগ হয়। যেমন—
দয়া করে বসুন—Please sit down. অনুগ্রহ করে আমাকে এক গ্লাস জল দিন—Kindly give me a glass of water.

Interrogative Sentence Pattern

3. প্রশ্নসূচক বাক্য বা Interrogative Sentence গঠনের তিনটি নিয়ম।

(i) যদি 'be' verb (অর্থাৎ is, am, are, was, were), 'have' verb (অর্থাৎ has, have, had) এবং shall, should, will, would, can, could, may বা might verb থাকে তবে প্রশ্নসূচক বাক্য বা Interrogative sentence-এ সেই Verb-টি Subject-এর পূর্বে বসে।

| Assertive | Interrogative |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Bimal is your brother. | Is Bimal your brother? |
| He has got a bad tooth. | Has he got a bad tooth? |
| He will pull out the bad tooth. | Will he pull out the bad tooth? |
| The girl is dancing in the hall. | Is the girl dancing in the hall? |

(ii) উপরের verb-গুলি ছাড়া যদি অন্য কোন verb থাকে তবে subject-এর পূর্বে একটি 'Do' verb আনতে হয় এবং tense ও Person অনুযায়ী এই 'Do' verb-এর পরিবর্তন হয়, কিন্তু মূল verb-এর কোন পরিবর্তন হয় না। যেমন—

তুমি কি প্রতিদিন ফুটবল খেল? Do you play football every day?

মালা কি প্রত্যহ তার বাড়ির কাজ করে? Does Mala do her homework every day?

তুমি কি তোমার বাবাকে চিঠি লিখেছিলে? Did you write a letter to your father?

(iii) যদি who (কে বা কাহার) whose (কাহার বা কাহারের), whom (কাহাকে বা কাহারিগকে), which (কোনটি বা কোনগুলি), what (কি), why (কেন), When (কখন), where (কোথায়), How much (কত), How many (কতগুলি) প্রভৃতি কোন প্রশ্নবোধক শব্দ থাকে, তবে সেই শব্দটি সবার আগে বসে। যেমন—

তোমরা কারা?—Who are you?

এই বইটি কার?—Whose book is this?

তুমি কাকে চাও?—Whom do you want?

কোন কলমটি তোমার?—Which is your pen?

তুমি কি করছ?—What are you doing?

তুমি কখন খাও?—When do you eat?

সে কোথায় বাস করে?—Where does he live (in)?

কেন তুমি এখানে আস?—Why do you come here?

সে কিভাবে লেখে?—How does he write?

তোমার কতগুলি বোন আছে?—How many sisters have you?

তুমি কতটা দুধ চাও?—How much milk do you want?

*Note : Who নিজে Subject হলে 'do' auxiliary verb -এর প্রয়োজন হয় না। যেমন—কে তোমাকে অপমান করেছিল?—Who insulted you? অবশ্য Negative হলে এখানেও 'do' বসে। যেমন—Who does not know it?

Optative Sentence Pattern

4. ইচ্ছা বা প্রার্থনা বোঝালে Optative Sentence হয়। এই বাক্য গঠনের নিয়ম :

May + Assertive = optative

তোমরা দীর্ঘজীবী হও—May you live long.

ভগবান তোমাদের আশীর্বাদ করুন—May God bless you.

আবার কখনো 'May' verb-টি উহ্য থাকে।

রাজা দীর্ঘজীবী হউন—Long live the king. (=May the king live long.)

Exclamatory Sentence Pattern

5. দুঃখ, আনন্দ, বিস্ময় প্রভৃতি আবেগ বোঝাতে Exclamatory Sentence হয়। এরূপ বাক্য দুভাবে গঠিত হয়।

(i) *Alas! Hurrah! Ah!* প্রভৃতি দুঃখ, আনন্দ, বিস্ময়বোধক শব্দ বসিয়ে—
[Alas বা Hurrah প্রভৃতি শব্দ] + [Assertive] = Exclamatory.

হায়! লোকটি মারা গিয়েছে—*Alas!* The man is dead.
কি আনন্দ, আমরা খেলায় জিতেছি—*Hurrah!* We have won the match.
হুপ! লোকটি ঘুমিয়ে গেছে—*Hush!* The man is asleep.
হিঃ! তুমি মিথ্যাবাদী—*Fie!* You are a liar.
আরে, অমল হে—*Hallo!* You are Amal. I see!

(ii) *What, How* ইত্যাদি শব্দ যোগে—
কী সুন্দর পাখী—*What* a nice bird it is!
কী বিচিত্র এই দেশ—*What* a wonderful land it is!
তুমি কত সুখী—*How* happy you are!

*Note: Interrogative sentence-এ *What, How* বসলে Verb-টি Subject-এর আগে আসে। কিন্তু Exclamatory Sentence-এ এরূপ ক্ষেত্রে Verb-টি Subject-এর পরে এবং Sentence-এর শেষে বসে।

NEGATIVE FORMS

Now study the rules of making Negative forms. There are three ways of doing this.

ই-বাক্য থেকে না-বাক্য বা Negative form তৈরি করার তিনটি নিয়ম:

(i) যদি 'be' verb (অর্থ is, am, are, was, were), 'have' verb (অর্থ has, have, had) এবং *shall, should, will, would, can, could, may* বা *might* verb থাকে, তবে সেই verb-এর পর *not* বসে। যেমন—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| Amal is a good boy. | Amal is not a good boy. |
| Bimal has a book. | Bimal has not a book (no book). |
| I shall go to school. | I shall not go to school. |
| We can do this work. | We can not do this work. |

(ii) যদি উপরের Verb-গুলি ছাড়া অন্য কোন Verb থাকে, তবে একটি 'Do' Verb আনতে হয় এবং tense ও person অনুযায়ী এই 'Do' Verb-এর পরিবর্তন হয়। মূল Verb-এর কোন পরিবর্তন হয় না। আর 'Do' verb এবং মূল Verb-এর মাঝখানে *not* বসে। যেমন—

| Affirmative | Negative |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Go there. | Do not go there. |
| Dipak plays football. | Dipak does not play football. |
| They play football. | They do not play football. |

অবশ্য মনে রাখা দরকার Interrogative Sentence-এর Negative form-এ Noun-এর পূর্বে *not* এবং Pronoun-এর পরে *not* বসে।

[Noun = নামবাচক পদ। Pronoun = সর্বনাম যা Noun-এর পরিবর্তে বসে। পরবর্তী পাঠে এ বিষয়ে আরো বিস্তৃতভাবে পড়বে।]

Amal is not going to school. → Is not Amal going to school?
He is not going to school. → Is he not going to school?

Dipak does not play football. → Does not Dipak play football?
He does not play football. → Does he not play football?

কিছু Do এবং not-এর সংক্ষিপ্ত রূপ Don't বা Doesn't হলে তা Noun এবং Pronoun উভয়েরই পূর্বে বসে।

You do not play football. → Don't you play football? [Don't = Don't]
Reba does not like story books. → Doesn't Reba like story books?
[Does not = Doesn't]

(iii) Noun-এর পূর্বে No এবং Adjective-এর পূর্বে Not বসিয়েও Negative Sentence করা হয়।

[Noun = নামবাচক পদ। Adjective = দোষ-গুণ-অবস্থাবাচক পদ। পরবর্তী পাঠে এ বিষয়ে আরো বিস্তৃতভাবে পড়বে।]

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| No man can do this work. | 'No' before the noun 'man'. |
| He has no enemy. | " " noun 'enemy'. |
| He is not faithful. | 'Not' before the adjective 'faithful'. |
| The girl is not beautiful. | " " adjective 'beautiful'. |

'কখনও না' অর্থে never এবং 'কিছু না' অর্থে nothing ব্যবহার করেও Negative sentence করা যায়।

সে কখনো বিদ্যালয়ে যায় না—He never goes to school.

তারা ঘরের মধ্যে কিছুই দেখতে পেল না—They saw nothing in the room.

* লক্ষ্য কর, তিন নম্বর নিয়মটি ছাড়া Interrogative sentence এবং Negative sentence-এর ক্ষেত্রে এক নম্বর ও দুই নম্বর নিয়মের প্রয়োগ প্রায় একইরকম।

Now study affirmative, Negative and Interrogative side by side.

| Affirmative | Negative | Interrogative |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| I am | I am not | Am I? |
| We are | We are not | Are we? |
| You are | You are not | Are you? |
| He/She is | He/She is not | Is he/she? |
| They are | They are not | Are they? |
| It is | It is not | Is it? |

APPLIED SECTION

(Functional Communicative Approach)

FUNCTIONS OF SENTENCES

| FUNCTIONS | SENTENCE |
|--|---|
| A. Assertive : | |
| (i) Giving information/ Reporting (ভথ্যাজ্ঞাপন/প্রতিবেদন) | The Second Hooghly Bridge was inaugurated on October 10 in 1992 |
| (ii) Narrating (পরোক্ষ উক্তি) | The English ruled India for about two hundred years. |
| (iii) Describing (বর্ণনা) | He said that Napoleon died at St. Helens. |
| (iv) Defining (সংজ্ঞা দেওয়া) | There are rows of trees on both sides of the road. Fables are short tales usually with animal characters in them, but always with a moral. |

| FUNCTIONS | SENTENCE |
|---|--|
| (v) Hesitating/Giving opinion not confidently (বিধা প্রকাশ) | I don't know what exactly she is. |
| (vi) Classifying (শ্রেণীকরণ) | Food substances may be classified into two broad groups—organic food and inorganic food. |
| (vii) Illustrating/Exemplifying (উদাহরণের সাহায্যে বিবৃতিকরণ) | Some of the best Science Fiction writers are : H. G. Wells, Jules Verne and Arthur Clarke. |
| (viii) Stating cause (কারণ বর্ণনা) | His hard labour placed him in the high position. |
| (ix) Describing a process (পদ্ধতি বর্ণনা) | The preparation of butter goes through a number of steps. |
| (x) Denying a fact (অস্বীকৃতি) | No, I'm all right. |
| (xi) Asserting a fact (দৃঢ়ীকরণ) | Yes, Sir. I am a book binder. |
| (xii) Expressing obligation (বাধ্যতা) | I must go home. |
| (xiii) Supposing/Guessing (সম্ভাবনা/অনুমান) | If he comes, he may receive a hearty welcome. |
| (xiv) Comparing (তুলনা করা) | He is as cunning as a fox. The ruby shall be redder than rose. |
| (xv) Contradicting (বিশপীড়িত বোঝানো) | I don't worry but I can't keep from thinking. |
| (xvi) Apologizing/Confessing (ক্ষমা চাওয়া) | I beg your pardon. I have hurt your feelings. |
| (xvii) Expressing ability | I can do the sum easily. |
| (xviii) Expressing possibility | He may come here today. |
| (xix) Giving permission | You may sit in the parlour. |
| (xx) Appealing (আবেদন) | I pray to your kindness for granting me three day's sick leave. |
| B. Interrogative | |
| (i) Asking information/Asking reason/Interrogating / Enquiring (তথ্য চাওয়া/প্রশ্ন করা) | What is the distance of Delhi from Calcutta ? Why did you not go to school yesterday? |
| (ii) Asserting a fact (বক্তব্যকে দৃঢ় করা) | Who does not want to be free ? That was really a fun. Wasn't it? |
| (iii) Asking for opinion (মত চাওয়া) | May I have your opinion on this book? |
| (iv) Asking for permission | May I come in sir ? |
| (iv) Requesting (অনুরোধ করা) | Could you please tell me your name ? |
| (v) Challenging (স্পর্ধার সঙ্গে প্রশ্ন করা) | Who dares to defy me ? |
| (vi) Expressing a doubt (সন্দেহ প্রকাশ করা) | Who knows when the country will be free from corruption? |

| FUNCTIONS | SENTENCE |
|--|--|
| (vii) Confirming a doubt (সন্দেহ নিরসন করা) | The science you have learnt is more or less the result of self-teaching, isn't it, Mr. Faraday ? |
| C. Imperative : | |
| (i) Ordering/Commanding (আদেশ করা) | Get out at once. |
| (ii) Requesting (অনুরোধ করা) | Please give me a glass of water. |
| (iii) Advising (উপদেশ দেওয়া) | Don't give up hope, Mr. Faraday. |
| (iv) Suggesting/Proposing (প্রস্তাব দেওয়া) | Let's sit down here and talk the matter over. |
| (v) Instructing (নির্দেশ দেওয়া) | To improve your English read as much as you can. |
| (vi) Warning (সতর্ক করা) | Be quiet or I'll punish you. |
| (vii) Threatening (ভীতি প্রদর্শন করা) | Get out or I'll break down your nose. |
| (viii) Permitting (অনুমতি দেওয়া) | Go wherever you like but come back before evening. |
| (ix) Prohibiting (নিষেধ করা) | Don't leave the place without permission. |
| (x) Reminding (পুনরায় স্মরণ করিয়ে দেওয়া) | Kindly remember the date and time of our meeting. |
| D. Optative | |
| (i) Wishing/Desiring (ইচ্ছা প্রকাশ করা) | Wish you good luck. |
| (ii) Praying (প্রার্থনা করা) | May God bless you. |
| E. Exclamatory | |
| (i) Expressing joy (আনন্দ প্রকাশ করা) | Hurrah ! Our club has won the trophy. |
| (ii) Expressing sorrow (দুঃখ প্রকাশ করা) | Alas ! The man is dead. |
| (iii) Expressing wonder (বিশ্বাস প্রকাশ করা) | What a nice bird it is ! |
| (iv) Expressing pity (করুণা প্রকাশ করা) | Poor fellow ! How changed you are. |
| (v) Expressing disgust (বিরক্তি প্রকাশ করা) | How shabby the statue is ! |
| (vi) Encouraging (উৎসাহ দেওয়া) | Bravo ! You have saved a nice goal. |
| (vii) Greeting (স্বাগত সন্ধ্যা) | Hallo ! How nice to meet you after years. |
| (viii) Farewell (বিদায় সন্ধ্যা) | Good bye !/Good night ! Hope we'll meet you again. |

I. Giving Information. [Assertive]

Be = নিজে হই বা নিজের আদি / আছে। Have = কারো কিছু অধিকারে আছে।

| | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|-----------|
| I am | He is | I have | He has |
| We are | She is | We have | She has |
| You are | They are | You have | They have |

I am a student. We are student. You have four brothers.

***Note :** The British English uses both *have* and *have got*, but prefers the second.

We have/ have got a cottage in the village. (Possession বা কিছু অধিকারে আছে)

Moreover you can have things to eat, things to drink. (কিছু খাবার, পান করা অর্থে have হয়।)

What do you usually (সামান্যতঃ) have for breakfast?

We usually have 'muri' for breakfast.

Do you have lunch at school?

No, we have lunch at home.

You can have a cup of tea/ coffee, a cold drink etc.

Similarly (অনুরূপভাবে) You can have a rest, a shower, a dream, an idea, a lesson, a lecture, a good/bad/dull/happy time, an outing etc.

2. (Order, Request/Instruction etc.)

Verb (করা, হওয়া, থাকা)

Come
Don't sit
Don't talk
Don't run

Verb

Shut
Open
Bring
Show

Verb

Put
Draw
Throw

What

the book
a map

Where

to my desk.
on the table.
in the class.

What/Whom
your eyes.

me your book.

Where

on the table.

3. Question and Information :

Question

Is your school big?
Are the elephants small?
Have you good friends?
Has the ant.....legs?

Do you have breakfast?

Do you like your English?

Don't you like coffee?

Does Lata sing daily?

Doesn't Pintu play regularly?

[It's aren't, don't, doesn't etc. are used in spoken English.]

Who is your English teacher?

Information

Yes, it's a big one.
No, they aren't

Yes, the ant.....legs?
Yes, I do/No, I don't.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

SENTENCES

Who lives near your house?
What's the time now? It's
Which your pen? The red one.
Where do you live?
When your father come home?

4. Wish and Prayer : Express similar wishes & prayers.
May you be happy.
May God bless you.

5. Sudden feeling or emotion : Express similar emotion.
Alas! The king is no more.
Hurrah! It's a rainy day.
Hallo! You're Nipa, I see.
What a fool you are!
How happy you are!

EXERCISE

1. Say something about the following subjects :
(নিচের Subject বা উদ্দেশ্য সম্পর্কে কিছু বল।)

| | |
|-----------|-------|
| Ratan | ..... |
| The boys | ..... |
| The girls | ..... |
| The cows | ..... |
| The birds | ..... |

2. Divide each of the following sentences into Subject and Predicate :
(নিচের প্রত্যেকটি sentence- কে subject এবং predicate- এ ভাগ কর।)

- Mary has a little lamb.
- She has a good memory.
- The boy stood on the burning deck.
- The earth moves round the sun.
- Nature is the best physician.
- All roads lead to Rome.
- A barking dog seldom bites.
- We cannot pump the ocean dry.
- Edison invented the photograph.
- We should profit by experience.

3. Mention the kinds of sentences in the following table. One has been done for you. (নিচের Table-এ বাক্যের প্রকারভেদ উল্লেখ কর। একটি তোমাদের জন্য করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।)

| Sentences | Kinds of Sentences |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. People are smoking more now a days. | Assertive |
| 2. When will you come? | |
| 3. Go there and wait for a while. | |
| 4. May God bless you. | |
| 5. Alas! The man is no more. | |

4. State the functions of the sentences in the following table. One has been done for you. নিচের Table-এ বাক্যগুলির Function উল্লেখ কর। একটি তোমাদের করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।

| Sentences | Function Statement. |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. I enjoyed your letter and your notebook. | |
| 2. Don't spit here. | |
| 3. Why are you weeping then? | |
| 4. May you be happy. | |
| 5. What a beautiful flower it is! | |

5. Write down the names of the specific functions of the following sentences. (নিচের বাক্যগুলির সুনির্দিষ্ট Function-এর নাম লেখ।)

| Sentences | Functions |
|---|-----------|
| (i) "I'm all right." | |
| (ii) "No, I'm all right." | |
| (iii) What is it? | |
| (iv) Her little head is bare. | |
| (v) Her father will beat her. | |
| (vi) Her father will not beat her. | |
| (vii) She has let her matches fall in the street. | |
| (viii) "Pluck out my other eye and give it to her." | |
| (ix) I don't know what exactly he or she is. | |
| (x) Sir Humphry Davy was taken aback by the unexpected outburst. | |
| (xi) A few years in the field will cause you to change your opinion. | |
| (xii) "A very good way to learn?" | |
| (xiii) Davy nodded approvingly. | |
| (xiv) "About how long will it be before I die?" | |
| (xv) "Or, yes, I am. I heard him say a hundred and two." | |
| (xvi) "People don't die with a fever of one hundred and two. That's a silly way to talk." | |
| (xvii) I still prefer scientific work. | |
| (xviii) Please tell me about them. | |
| (xix) "You have a trade at present, Mr. Faraday?" | |
| (xx) "What's the matter, Schatz?" | |
| (xxi) "I've got a headache." | |
| (xxii) "You better go back to bed." | |
| (xxiii) "What made him wait for it?" | |
| (xxiv) Give yourself a quarter of an hour and walk gently. | |
| (xxv) How cool I feel! | |
| (xxvi) But I feel quite warm now, although it is so cold. | |
| (xxvii) I must be getting better. | |
| (xxviii) We shan't (shall not) see him again. | |
| (xxix) Do you know how I earn my bread? | |
| (xxx) Could you bring your camera? | |
| (xxxi) May I come in, Sir? | |
| (xxxii) You mustn't idle away your time. | |
| (xxxiii) I can walk five miles at a stretch. | |

6. Write sentences against the functions in the table below.

| Functions | Sentences |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| (i) Expressing approval | |
| (ii) Asking information/Enquiring | |
| (iii) Illustrating | |
| (iv) Confirming doubts | |
| (v) Expressing dislike | |
| (vi) Giving information | |
| (vii) Giving opinion | |
| (viii) Giving opinion not confidently | |
| (ix) Assuring immediate action | |
| (x) Asking for confirmation | |
| (xi) Narrating | |
| (xii) Persuading | |
| (xiii) Expressing determination | |
| (xiv) Asserting | |
| (xv) Requesting | |
| (xvi) Expressing disbelief/doubt | |
| (xvii) Narrating an event | |
| (xviii) Expressing surprise | |
| (xix) Commanding | |
| (xx) Appreciating | |
| (xxi) Describing | |
| (xxii) Stating a fact | |
| (xxiii) Expressing disagreement | |
| (xxiv) Suggesting | |
| (xxv) Expressing satisfaction | |
| (xxvi) Asking for opinion | |
| (xxvii) Advising | |
| (xxviii) Warning | |
| (xxix) Prohibiting | |
| (xxx) Expressing disgust | |
| (xxxi) Expressing pity | |
| (xxxii) Encouraging | |
| (xxxiii) Expressing a condition | |
| (xxxiv) Appealing | |

7. Apply the Subject-Predicate rules and write in your own English:

- (a) Assertive Sentences: (Give the following statements)
[Place the subject first and then the predicate. See rules—S—V—O.]
বাঙালীর বুদ্ধিমান। বইখানি পুরাতন। সূর্য পূর্বদিকে উঠে। কলকাতা একটি বড় শহর। রানীগঞ্জের কয়লা। দার্জিলিং-এর দৃশ্য মনোরম। এই নদীর জল ঘোলা (muddy)। আমরা কাগজে লিখি। এই আংটির বাটি। রেবা বেশ বুদ্ধিমতী। বিদ্যাসাগর মেদিনীপুর জেলার বীরসিংহ গ্রামে জন্মগ্রহণ করেন। তিনি চা করেন না।
- (b) Interrogative Sentences: (Ask the following questions)
[Main verb or a helping verb is placed before the Subject.]
কলমটি কোথায়? তোমার নাম কি? তুমি কোথায় থাক? তোমার বাবার নাম কি? তিনি কি করেন? তারা কয় ভাইবোন? তুমি কোন ক্লাসে পড়? তারা কি ফুলে যায়? কুকুর কি প্রভুত্ব নয়? ছেলেকে কি আজ বে না? তোমার কি পড়ার বই নাই? তারা কি বোজ ফুটবল খেলে? রেবা কি তোমার বোন? তুমি কি এই গীত মুখস্থ (learn by heart) করতে পারবে?

(k) Imperative Sentences : (Give the following commands etc.)

[Subject 'you' is omitted in such sentences.]

ভাইরে ভাইরে বিদায় করিও না। যেহেতু গুণ কলিও (spit) না। তিসুককে ভিক্ষা (almos) দুইজন এটি অত্যন্ত করিও না। আশীর্বাদ জানালে যত দোষ করিও না। তাকে সংবাদ দাও। পণ্ডিত সন্মান কর। পুণ্ডিতের কল্যায়। পণ্ডিতের কল্যায়।

(ll) Optative Sentences : (Express the following wishes and prayers)

[May is often placed before the Subject.]

তুমি সুখী হও। সে সুখী হউক। তুমি পণ্ডিতের কল্যায় হও। ভগবান আপনার মঙ্গল করুন। ভগবান আপনার মঙ্গল করুন।

(m) Exclamatory Sentences : (Express the following emotions)

[Alas, Hurrah, What, How etc. are placed in the beginning.]

হয়ঃ হারবরু আর নই। হি যখন। হারবরু কোর ভিত্তি। পাইটি কী সুন্দর। সে কী ভয়ঙ্কর। তুমি কী বোকা। কী বিড়ি এই দেশ। হিঃ তুমি বিদ্যাবলী।

8. Suppose someone is talking to someone else on telephone. Write the following dialogue in English. There may be single-worded or worded sentences with verbs and without verbs. (মনে কর, কেউ টেলিফোনে কথা বলছে। এই সংলাপটি নিচের ইংরেজিতে লেখ। এতে Verb সহ বা Verb ছাড়া একক বা বহুবচন হতে পারে।)

- হ্যাঁ।
- কে কথা বলছেন?
- মিস্টার সেন।
- কোথেকে?
- সেই মেইজ নার্সিংহাস থেকে।
- আমি কি ভা পাতের সঙ্গে কথা বলতে পারি?
- হ্যাঁ, নিশ্চয়ই। আপনি দয়া করে এক মুহূর্ত ধরে ধরুন।

[দয়া করে এক মুহূর্ত ধরে ধরুন = Please hold on for a moment.]

CHAPTER 2 PARTS OF SPEECH

The different kinds of words are called **Parts of Speech**.
বিভিন্ন প্রকারের শব্দগুলিকে parts of speech বলে।

—J. C. Nesfield.

Words are divided into different kinds or classes, called **Parts of Speech**, according to their use; that is, according to the work they do in the sentence.

—Wren & Martin.

কোনো ব্যবহার অনুযায়ী বিভিন্ন প্রকারের শব্দগুলিকে Parts of Speech বলে।

*Note : Nesfield-এর সংজ্ঞার চেয়ে Wren & Martin-এর সংজ্ঞাতেই Parts of Speech আরো শাট এবং পরিষ্কার হয়ে উঠেছে।

প্রকৃতপক্ষে Word চলি Sentence বা Speech-এর অংশ। সেজন্য এগুলিকে Parts of Speech বলে।

—P. C. Das

The Parts of Speech are eight in number.

Parts of Speech হলি আট প্রকার।

1. Noun
2. Pronoun
3. Adjective
4. Verb
5. Adverb
6. Preposition
7. Conjunction
8. Interjection.

NOUN [বিশেষ্য]

A Noun is a word used for naming some person or thing.

—J. C. Nesfield.

কিছু Noun শুধু ব্যক্তি, বা কিছু নাম নয়, স্থানের নামও হতে পারে। তাই Wren & Martin Noun-এর সংজ্ঞা দিলেন—

A Noun is a word used as the name of a person, place or thing.

—Wren & Martin

কিছু Noun শুধু ব্যক্তি, কিছু বা স্থানের নাম নয়, দোষ-গুণ-অবস্থাব্যাপক বা ভাবব্যাপক নামও হতে পারে।

তাই Wren & Martin আবার Note দিলেন—

The word thing includes (i) all objects that we can see, hear, taste, touch or smell; and (ii) something that we can think of, but cannot perceive by the senses.

কিছু এতেও জ্ঞতিব্যাপক বা সমষ্টিব্যাপক নামের বিষয়টি পরিষ্কার হল না।

তাই বিষয়টিকে জটিল না করে আমরা Noun-এর সংজ্ঞা খুব সহজেই দিতে পারি এইভাবে—

A Noun is a naming word.

—P. C. Das

* Noun, কথাটির অর্থ হলো নাম। সেজন্য যে কোন নামব্যাপক পদকে Noun বলে।

Examples :

Subhas is a brilliant boy. — Proper Noun (ব্যক্তিব্যাপক নাম।)

The Cow gives us milk. — Common Noun (জ্ঞতিব্যাপক নাম।)

Salil is the best boy in the Class. — Collective Noun (সমষ্টিব্যাপক নাম।)

Gold is a Valuable metal. — Material Noun (বস্তুব্যাপক নাম।)

Honesty is the best policy. — Abstract Noun (গুণ বা ভাবব্যাপক নাম।)

*Note : সবক্ষেত্রেই Noun হচ্ছে নামব্যাপক পদ।

PRONOUN [সর্বনাম]

A word used instead of a noun is called a Pronoun. —J. C. Nesfield.

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun. —Wren & Martin.

Noun-এর পরিবর্তে যে Word ব্যবহৃত হয়, তাকে Pronoun বলে।

Pro = পরিবর্তে, Noun = বিশেষ্য; তাই Noun-এর পরিবর্তে যে Word বসে, তাকে Pronoun বলে। —P. C. Das.

একই Noun বারবার ব্যবহার করলে প্রতিকটু হয়। তাই একই Noun বারবার ব্যবহার না করে বাক্যকে প্রাতিমধুর করার জন্য Noun-এর পরিবর্তে Pronoun ব্যবহার করা হয়।

Pronoun-এর ব্যবহার লক্ষ্য কর :

Noun-এর ব্যবহার
Ram is a boy.

Ram is going to school.

Ram is an intelligent boy.

Pronoun-এর ব্যবহার

Ram is a boy. (noun)

He is going to school. (Pronoun)

He is an intelligent boy. (Pronoun)

Pronoun সম্পর্কে নিচের বিষয়গুলি মনে রাখা দরকার :

বাংলার যেমন সর্বস্বত্বের উত্তম পুরুষ, মধ্যম পুরুষ এবং প্রথম পুরুষ হয়, তেমনি ইংরেজিও Pronoun-এর First Person (উত্তম পুরুষ), Second Person (মধ্যম পুরুষ) এবং Third Person (প্রথম পুরুষ) হয়।

আমি, আমরা; আমাকে, আমাদের; আমার, আমাদের বোঝাতে Pronoun-এর First Person হয়। যেমন-I, we; me, us; my, mine our, ours.

তুমি, তোমরা; তোমাকে, তোমাদের; তোমার, তোমাদের বোঝাতে Pronoun-এর Second Person হয়। যেমন-you, your, yours.

সে, তাকে, তাকে, তাকে; তাকে, তাকে; ইহা, ইহারা, ইহাকে, ইহাদের; ইহাদের, ইহাদের বোঝাতে Pronoun-এর Third Person হয়। যেমন-He, she, they; him, her, them; his, her, hers, their, theirs, it, its.

ADJECTIVE [বিশেষণ]

An Adjective is a word used for qualifying (or adding something to) the meaning of a Noun or Pronoun. —J. C. Nesfield.

An Adjective is a word used to add something to the meaning of a Noun. —Wren & Martin.

Adjective শুধু Noun-এর নয়, Pronoun-এরও হতে পারে। প্রকৃতপক্ষে Noun বা Pronoun-কে Qualify করতে অথবা বিশেষিত করতে যে শব্দ যোগ করা হয়, তাকে Adjective বলে।

"The word Adjective means 'adding'.

—J. C. Nesfield.

এমন Adjective-এর ব্যবহার লক্ষ্য কর :

Amal is a **good** boy. Bimal is very **clever**. He is an **Indian**.

Lazy students fail in the examination. Lila plucked a **red** rose.

The mouse is a **little** animal. The elephant is a **large** animal.

Our Cow gives **much** milk. Give me **two** pens and **three** pencils.

উপরের উদাহরণগুলিতে দেখ, good শব্দটি 'boy' noun-কে, clever শব্দটি Bimal noun-কে, Indian শব্দটি 'he' Pronoun-কে, Lazy শব্দটি 'Students' noun-কে, red শব্দটি 'rose' noun-কে, little, শব্দটি 'animal' noun-কে, large শব্দটি 'animal' noun-কে, much শব্দটি 'milk' noun-কে এবং two ও three শব্দ দুটি 'pen' ও pencils'-এই দুটি noun-কে বিশেষিত করেছে। তাই এগুলি Adjective.

SENTENCES

আগের উদাহরণগুলিতে আরো লক্ষ্য কর, এই Adjective তুলি Noun বা Pronoun-এর দোষ, গুণ, অবস্থা, আকৃতি, সংখ্যা, পরিমাণ ইত্যাদি বোঝায়। সেজন্য বলা যায়—
An Adjective qualifies a Noun or a Pronoun.

When an adjective is placed before a noun it is used attributively. But when it qualifies a noun or a pronoun and is placed after a verb it is used predicatively. (Noun-এর আগে বসলে **Attributive Adjective** এবং Verb-এর পরে বসলে **Predicative Adjective** হয়।) —P. C. Das

VERB [ক্রিয়া]

A Verb is a word used for saying something about a person or a thing. —J. C. Nesfield.

A Verb is a word used to say something about some person, place or thing. —Wren & Martin.

যে word কোন ব্যক্তি, বস্তু বা স্থান সম্বন্ধে কিছু বলার জন্য ব্যবহৃত হয় তাকে Verb বলে।

উপরের দুটি সংজ্ঞাতেই Verb-এর ধারণা অস্পষ্ট থেকে যায়। উদাহরণের সাহায্যে বিষয়টি দেখা যাক।

The fat girl wrote a letter to her brother. Calcutta is a big city.
The old man had a faithful dog. This pen is nice.

উপরের বাক্যগুলিতে girl, man, Calcutta এবং pen এই সব ব্যক্তি, স্থান এবং বস্তু সম্বন্ধে অনেক কিছুই বলা হয়েছে। মেয়েটি মোটা, লোকটি বৃদ্ধ, কলকাতা একটি বড় শহর, কলমটি সুন্দর—এসব কথাও বলা হয়েছে। অর্থাৎ fat, old, big, nice-এই শব্দগুলি Verb নয়, Adjective বা বিশেষণ।

সুতরাং উপরের সংজ্ঞাগুলিতে Verb-এর বৈশিষ্ট্য ধরা পড়েনি।

তাই Verb-এর বৈশিষ্ট্য স্পষ্ট করে প্রকাশ করতে হলে বলা উচিত :

A verb is a word that denotes 'being', 'having' or 'doing' or an action in any form. —P. C. Das.

যে Word-এর দ্বারা হওয়া, থাকা বা কোন কিছু করা বোঝায়, তাকে Verb বলে।

প্রকৃতপক্ষে Verb বা ক্রিয়া চার রকমের।

1. **'Being' verb** : The man is honest.
2. **'Having Verb** : I have a sharp knife.
3. **'Doing' Verb** : The boy kicks the football.
4. **An action in any form** : The moon looks bright.

ADVERB [ক্রিয়া বিশেষণ]

An Adverb qualifies anything except a Noun or a Pronoun.

—J. C. Nesfield.

Noun বা Pronoun ছাড়া অন্য যে কোন কিছুকে Adverb বিশেষিত করে।

An Adverb is a word used to add something to the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb. —Wren & Martin.

যে Word verb, adjective বা অন্যকোন adverb সম্বন্ধে পরিষ্কার অর্থ পরিস্ফুটনের জন্য ব্যবহৃত হয়, তাকে Adverb বলে।

স্পষ্টতই Wren & Martin-এর সংজ্ঞার তুলনায় Nesfield-এর সংজ্ঞা অধিক যুক্তিযুক্ত। কারণ Adverb শুধু verb, adjective বা অন্য কোন adverb নয়, preposition এবং conjunction-কেও বিশেষিত করতে পারে।

Adverb-এর বিভিন্ন উদাহরণগুলি নিচে দেওয়া হয়েছে।

Lila goes *slowly*. (Adverb modifies a verb)
She is a *very beautiful* girl. (Adverb modifies an adjective)
She walks *very slowly*. (Adverb modifies another adverb)
The bird flew *exactly* over our head. (Adverb modifies a preposition)
I dislike her *simple* because she is *very* rude. (Adverb modifies conjunction)

Adverb to denote time, place, manner etc. :

An adverb may denote **time, place, manner, number, degree, reason, purpose, condition and contrast.** [Adverb সময় স্থান, ধরণ, সংখ্যা, কারণ, উদ্দেশ্য, শর্ত এবং বৈপরীত্য প্রকাশ করতে পারে।]

Time : now, then, soon, early etc.
Place : here, there, far, near etc.
Manner : slowly, quickly, surely, probably etc.
Number : once, twice, thrice, again, always etc.
Degree : very, much, partly, wholly etc.
Reason : as, so, because etc.
Purpose : that, so that etc.
Condition : if, unless etc.
Contrast : though, although etc.

PREPOSITION [পদাধারী অব্যয় বা সম্বন্ধসূচক অব্যয়]

A Preposition is a word placed before a noun or noun-equivalent to show in what relation the person or thing denoted thereby stands to something else.

—J. C. Nesfield.

Preposition হল সেই শব্দ যা Noun বা Noun-জাতীয় শব্দের পূর্বে বসে তার সঙ্গে বাক্যের অন্য কিছু (অন্য word-এর) সম্পর্ক দেখিয়ে দেয়।

A preposition is a word used with a noun or a pronoun to show how the person or thing denoted by the noun or pronoun stands in relation to something else.

—Wren & Martin.

Preposition হল সেই শব্দ যা Noun বা Pronoun-এর সঙ্গে ব্যবহৃত হয়ে তার সঙ্গে বাক্যের অন্য কিছু সম্পর্ক প্রকাশ করে।

আমরা একই সংক্ষেপে বলা যায় :

A Preposition is a word that is placed before a noun or a pronoun to show the relation of that noun or pronoun with any other word of the sentence.

—P. C. Das.

Preposition noun বা pronoun-এর পূর্বে ব্যবহৃত হয়ে সেই noun বা Pronoun-এর সঙ্গে বাক্যের অন্য word-এর সম্পর্ক বুঝিয়ে দেয়। Pre = পূর্বে, Position = অবস্থান, অর্থাৎ এই Word-এর অবস্থান noun বা pronoun-এর পূর্বে।

এবার Preposition-এর ব্যবহার দেখি :

The book is *on* the table.

The fish is *in* the pond.

He is *behind* you.

The man is *under* the tree.

The bird flew *over* our head.

What did you say *about* her?

উপরের বাক্যগুলিতে on, under, in এবং over শব্দগুলি যথাক্রমে table, tree, pond, head এই noun-এর পূর্বে এবং behind, about শব্দ দুটি you-এর her-এই Pronoun-এর পূর্বে বসে বাক্যের অন্য word-এর সঙ্গে তাদের সম্পর্ক বুঝিয়ে দিয়েছে। তাই এগুলি Preposition.

CONJUNCTION [সংযোগক অব্যয়]

A Conjunction is a word for joining one word to another word, or one sentence to another sentence.

—J. C. Nesfield.

যে শব্দ একটি শব্দের সঙ্গে আর একটি শব্দকে অথবা একটি বাক্যের সঙ্গে আর একটি বাক্যকে সংযুক্ত করে, তাকে বলে Conjunction.

A Conjunction is a word used to join words or sentences.

—Wren & Martin.

Conjunction হলো সেই শব্দ যা একাধিক শব্দ বা বাক্যকে সংযুক্ত করার জন্য ব্যবহার করা হয়।

'Con' মানে 'একত্র' এবং 'junction' মানে 'সংযোগ'। সুতরাং 'Conjunction'—এর অর্থ হলো একত্র সংযোগ।

এখন নিচের উদাহরণ তলি লক্ষ্য কর :

Reba *and* Rekha are good girls.

Dipu is a boy *but* Mira is a girl.

Learn your lesson *or* Leave the class.

প্রথম Sentence-এ 'and' শব্দটি Reba এবং Rekha এই Word দুটিকে সংযুক্ত করেছে।

দ্বিতীয় Sentence-এর 'but' শব্দটি 'Dipu is a boy' এবং 'Mira is a girl'—এই বাক্য দুটিকে সংযুক্ত করেছে।

তৃতীয় Sentence-এ 'or' শব্দটি 'Learn your lesson' এই sentence-এর সঙ্গে 'leave the class' এই sentence-টিকে সংযুক্ত করেছে। তাই *and*, *but*, *or*—এই word গুলি Conjunction.

INTERJECTION [অনবহী অব্যয় বা আবেগসূচক অব্যয়]

An Interjection is a word or sound thrown into a sentence to express some feeling of the mind.

—J. C. Nesfield.

মনের আবেগ প্রকাশ করার জন্য বাক্যের মধ্যে যে শব্দটি ঢুকিয়ে দেওয়া হয়, তাকে Interjection বলে।

An Interjection is a word which expresses some sudden feeling.

—Wren & Martin.

যে শব্দ মনের আকস্মিক আবেগ প্রকাশ করে, তাকে Interjection বলে।

প্রকৃতপক্ষে বাক্যের অন্য শব্দের সঙ্গে সম্বন্ধ না থাকলেও মনের আবেগ প্রকাশের জন্য Sentence-এর ভেতরে (= Inter) যে word বা sound ছুঁড়ে দেওয়া (= ject) হয়, তাকে Interjection বলে।

নিচের Sentence গুলিতে এর ব্যবহার লক্ষ্য কর :

ওহে রমেশ! কেমন আছ? *Hallo, Ramesh!* How do you do?

হায়! ইন্দিরা গান্ধী আর জীবিত নেই। *Alas!* Indira Gandhi is no more.

কি মজা, আজ আমাদের ছুটি। *Hurrah!* Today is a holiday.

আহা! কী সুন্দর দৃশ্য। *Oh!* What a nice view.

খিক! তুমি মিথ্যাবাদী। *Fie!* You are a liar.

সাবাস! তুমি খুব ভাল করেছ। *Bravo!* You have done well.

উপরের বাক্যগুলিতে Alas শব্দের সাহায্যে দুঃখ, Hurrah শব্দের সাহায্যে আনন্দ, Oh—এই sound-এর সাহায্যে বিস্ময় এবং Fie শব্দের সাহায্যে ঘৃণা, Bravo শব্দের সাহায্যে প্রশংসা করা হয়েছে। এগুলি সবই মনের আকস্মিক আবেগ। মনে রাখবে, Interjection-এর পর Note of Exclamation বা আবেগসূচক চিহ্ন বসাতে হয়। [Note of Exclamation-এর 'বিস্ময়চিহ্ন' নামকরণ ভুল; কারণ বিস্ময় মনের অনেকগুলি আবেগের মধ্যে একটি মাত্র।]

Interjections may express (Interjection প্রকাশ করতে পারে) :

- (a) Joy (খানন্দ) : Hurrah! How! [How nice to meet you!]
 (b) Grief (দুঃখ) : Alas! [The man is dead.]
 (c) Surprise (বিস্ময়) : Ah! Ha! What! How! ইত্যাদি।
 (d) Encouragement (উৎসাহ) : Bravo! ইত্যাদি।

Certain groups of words are also used to express some sudden feeling or emotion.

মনের আকস্মিক আবেগ প্রকাশের জন্য অনেকসময় কিছু groups of words-ও ব্যবহৃত হয়।
 Ah me! For shame! Well done! etc.

***Note:** An Interjection, grammatically speaking, is not a part of speech as it has no connection with any other word of the sentence. But in broader sense an Interjection is a part of our speech. Hence, it is included as a part of speech in the grammar.

[প্রকৃতপক্ষে ব্যাকরণগত দিক থেকে Interjection কোন Part of Speech নয়, কারণ বাক্যের অন্য কোন পদের সঙ্গেই এর কোন সম্পর্ক নেই। কিন্তু ব্যাপকতর অর্থে Interjection আমাদের Speech বা কথার একটি অংশ। তাই একে গ্রামারে Part of speech বলা হয়।]

USEFUL WORDS OF DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH

ইংরেজি উচ্চারণ রীতি সম্বন্ধে কয়েকটি প্রয়োজনীয় কথা।

এখানে ইংরেজির উচ্চারণ রীতি সম্বন্ধে কয়েকটি কথা বলা দরকার। কিছু শব্দের আমরা সাধারণত ভুল উচ্চারণ করি। যেমন—tail (টেল নয়, টেইল); main (মেন নয়, মেইন); train (ট্রেন নয়, ট্রাইন); ai = এই।

[a + consonant + e = এই] যেমন—spade (স্পেড নয়, স্পেইড; test (টেস্ট), কিন্তু tast (টেস্ট নয়, টেইস্ট); trade (ট্রেড নয়, ট্রেইড)।

এই রকম আরো কিছু বিশিষ্ট উচ্চারণ—grass (গ্রাস নয়, গ্রাস); branch (ব্রাঞ্চ নয়, ব্রাঞ্চ); forehead (ফোরহেড নয়, ফরিড); market (মার্কেট নয়, মার্কেট বা মার্কিট—r-এর উচ্চারণ প্রায় silent); biscuit (বিস্কিট নয়, বিকিট); alm (আল্ম নয়, আম); palm (পাল্ম নয়, পাম); womb (উম্ব নয়, উম্ব); tomb (টুম্ব নয়, টুম্ব) ইত্যাদি। সঠিক উচ্চারণ রীতির জন্য 'English Pronouncing Dictionary' by Daniel Jones এবং 'The Advanced Learner's Dictionary' by A. S. Hornby দ্রষ্টব্য।

আমাদের দেশে ইংরেজি শব্দের যে সব উচ্চারণ করা হয়, অনেক ক্ষেত্রেই তা বিধিসম্মত নয়। তবে আমরা দুশো বছর ধরে এক ধরনের উচ্চারণে অভ্যস্ত হয়েছি, যা সব সময় বিধিসম্মত না হয়েও বহুল ব্যবহারে প্রতিষ্ঠা অর্জন করেছে। এই অবস্থায় আমাদের যে সব উচ্চারণ স্ট্যান্ডার্ড ইংরেজি উচ্চারণের অনেকটা কাছাকাছি, সেগুলি রেখে দিয়ে যেগুলি একেবারেই উচ্চারণ স্ট্যান্ডার্ড ইংরেজি উচ্চারণের অনেকটা দূরে রয়েছে এবং সেগুলো বন্ধনীর মধ্যে Jones-এর নাম উল্লেখ করা হয়েছে। তাই এ বিষয়ে প্রথমে থেকেই সতর্ক হওয়া উচিত এবং সঠিক উচ্চারণ অভ্যাস করা উচিত।

ইংরেজি উচ্চারণ রীতির একটি প্রধান বৈশিষ্ট্য এই যে, Consonant-এর আগের 'r' কখনো উচ্চারিত হয় না। এজন্য market-এর উচ্চারণ 'মার্কেট' নয়, 'মার্কেট' বা 'মার্কিট', garden-এর উচ্চারণ 'গার্ডেন' নয়, 'গার্ডেন', garland-এর উচ্চারণ 'গারল্যান্ড' নয়, 'গারল্যান্ড' ইত্যাদি।

আর একটি লক্ষণীয় বৈশিষ্ট্য হলো বাক্যের মধ্যে কোন word-এর শেষের 'r' উচ্চারিত হয় না। যেমন—What's **your father**? [হোয়াট্‌স্‌ ইও (র) ফাদার (র)?] কিন্তু ঐ word-এর পর যদি কোন Vowel থাকে, তাহলে 'r'-এর উচ্চারণ হয়। যেমন—My **father** is a **teacher**, [মাই ফাদার ইজ আ টিচার (র)]।

Article 'a'-এর উচ্চারণ 'এ' নয়, 'আ'; 'The'-এর উচ্চারণ Vowel-এর আগে 'দি' এবং Consonant-এর আগে 'দা'। [অনেকেই ভুল করে সব জায়গায় 'দি' বা সব জায়গায় 'দা' উচ্চারণ করেন।]

What a fool you are! [হোয়াট্‌ আ ফুল ইউ আ (র)!]

Here is **the** egg. [হিয়ার ইজ দি এগ।]

I am **the** man who can tell it. [আয়্যাম দ্য মান হু ক্যান টেল্‌ ইট্‌।]

ইংরেজি উচ্চারণের এই প্রধান নিয়মগুলি বিশেষভাবে মনে রাখা এবং অভ্যাস করা দরকার।

NOUN

যে word দ্বারা কোন কিছুর নাম বোঝায় তাকে **Noun** বলে।

These are very useful nouns. Remember them. এগুলি খুবই প্রয়োজনীয় Noun; এগুলি মনে রাখা দরকার।

Proper Noun (বিশেষ নাম); **Common Noun** (জাতিবাচক নাম); **Collective Noun** (সংগৃহীতবাচক নাম); **Material Noun** (বস্তুবাচক নাম); **Abstract Noun** (গুণ বা ভাববাচক নাম)

About Relations—আত্মীয়-স্বজনদের সম্বন্ধসূচক নাম।

| | |
|---|---|
| মানুষ—man [মান] | স্ত্রীলোক—woman [উম্যান-Jones] |
| পিতা—father [ফাদা (র)] | মাতা—mother [মাদা (র)] |
| বালক—boy [বয়] | বালিকা—girl [গার্ল (গোল-Jones)] |
| ভাই—brother [ব্রাদা (র)] | বোন—sister [সিস্টা (র)] |
| কাকা, জ্যাঠা—uncle [আঙ্কেল] | কাকীমা, জ্যাঠীমা—aunt [আন্ট] |
| বুড়ভূতো, জ্যাঠাভূতো, মামাজো, | ভাইপো, ভাগনে—nephew [নেফিউ] |
| পিসভূতো, ভাইবোন—cousin [কাজিন] | ভাইকি, ভাগনী—neice [নীস] |
| পুত্র—son [সন্‌ নয়, সান-Jones] | কন্যা—daughter [ডাটা (র)] |
| স্বামী—husband [হাঙ্কব্যান্ড] | স্ত্রী—wife [ওয়াইফ] |
| পিতামহ, মাতামহ—grandfather [গ্র্যাণ্ড ফাদা (র)] | পিতামহী, মাতামহী—grandmother [গ্র্যাণ্ড মাদা (র)] |
| নাতি—grandson [গ্র্যাণ্ডসান] | নাতিনী—grand daughter [গ্র্যাণ্ড ডাটা (র)] |
| পিতামাতা—parents [পেয়ারেন্ট্‌স্‌] | স্বস্তর—father-in-law [ফাদার-ইন্‌-ল] |
| শাশুড়ী—mother-in-law [মাদার-ইন্‌-ল] | শালা, ভগিনীপতি—brother-in-law [ব্রাদার-ইন্‌-ল] |
| শাশী, ভাজ—sister-in-law [সিস্টার-ইন্‌-ল] | জামাই—son-in-law [সান-ইন্‌-ল] |
| পুত্রবধূ—daughter-in-law [ডাটার-ইন্‌-ল] | সন্তান—child [চাইল্ড] |
| শিশু—baby [বেবি] | আত্মীয়—relative [রিলাটিভ্‌] |
| বন্ধু—friend [ফ্রেন্ড-Jones] | শত্রু—enemy [এনিমি] |
| অতিথি—guest [গেস্ট] | গ্রন্থ—master [মাস্টার (র)-Jones] |
| ভূতা—servant [সার্ভেন্ট-Jones] | উত্তরাধিকারী—heir [এয়ার (র)-Jones] |
| পোষাপুত্র—adopted son [আডাপ্টেড সন্‌] | বিমাতা—step-mother [স্টেপ্‌ মাদা (র)] |
| বৈমায়ের ভাই—step-brother [স্টেপ্‌ ব্রাদা (র)] | বৈমায়ের বোন—step-sister [স্টেপ্‌ সিস্টা (র)] |

About Body—শরীর সম্বন্ধীয় নাম।

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| শরীর—body [বডি] | সঙ্গপ্রত্যঙ্গ—limb [লিম্‌-Jones] |
| মস্ত—head [হেড] | কপাল—forehead [ফরহেড-Jones] |
| চুল—hair [হেয়ার] | চোখ—eye [আই] |
| চোখের তারা—pupil [পিউপিল-Jones] | কান—ear [ইয়ার] |
| নাক—nose [নোজ-Jones নোজ-COD] | নাকের ছিদ্র—nostril [নস্ট্রিল] |
| মুখমণ্ডল—face [ফেইস্‌-Jones] | মুখবিবর—mouth [মাউথ] |
| গাল, কপাল—Cheek [চীক্‌] | চিবুক, থুতনি—chin [চিন্‌] |

পনা—throat [থ্রোট]
 ঘাড়—neck [নেক]
 জিভ—tongue [ট্যাংগু]
 মৌস—moustache [মুস্টাশ-Jones]
 বাহু—arm [আর্ম (অর্থ নয়)-Jones]
 কনুই—elbow [এলবো]
 হাতের আঙুল—finger [ফিঙ্গার (র)]
 নখ—nail [নাইল-Jones]
 পায়ের আঙুল—toe [টো]
 গোড়ালি—heel [হিল]
 উরু—thigh [থাই]
 কোমর—waist [ওয়াইস্ট-Jones]
 পেট—belly [বেলী]
 পাকস্থলী—stomach [ষ্টমাক]
 বকস্থল—chest [চেস্ট]
 পাঁজর—rib [রিব]
 মস্তিষ্ক—brain [ব্রেইন-Jones]
 রক্ত—blood [ব্লাড]
 চামড়া—skin [স্কিন]

About beasts and birds—পশুপাখী সম্বন্ধীয় নাম

প্রাণী—animal [আনিমাল-Jones]
 গোরু—cow [কো]
 বলদ—bullock [বুলক]
 ভেড়া—sheep [শীপ]
 গবাদিপশু—cattle [ক্যাটল]
 ঘোড়া—horse [হোর্স-Jones]
 কুকুর—dog [ডগ]
 বিড়াল—cat [ক্যাট]
 উট—camel [ক্যামেল]
 বাঘ—tiger [টাইগার (র)]
 চিত্রা বাঘ—leopard [লেপার্ড-Jones]
 ভালুক—bear [বোয়া (র)-Jones]
 কুম্ভীর—crocodile [ক্রকডাইল]
 সাপ—snake [স্নেক]
 শামুক—snail [স্নেইল-Jones]
 কোকিল—cuckoo [কুকু-Jones]
 পিপড়ে—ant [আন্ট]
 মাছি—fly [ফ্লাই]
 ফড়িং—grasshopper [গ্রাসহপার (র)]
 শুকরান—pig [পিগ]
 সন্ধানিহের ছানা—cub [ক্যুব]
 ফরিশ শাবক—fawn [ফন]
 হাতীর ঝড়—trunk [ট্রাঙ্ক]
 লোম—fur [ফার (র)]
 হুঁক—hump [হাম্প-Jones]
 ঠোঁট—beak, bill [বীক, বিল]
 মুহের পাখনা—fin [ফিন]

পশু—beast [বিস্ট]
 ঝাড়—Ox, bull [অক্স, বুল]
 ছাগল—goat [গোট]
 মহিষ—buffalo [ব্যাফেলো]
 হরিণ—deer [ডিয়ার (র)]
 বরগোশ—hare [হোয়া (র)]
 কেকশিয়াল—fox [ফক্স]
 গাধা—ass [আস]
 হাতি—elephant [এলিফ্যান্ট]
 নেকড়ে বাঘ—wolf [উল্ফ]
 লিফ—lion [লায়ন]
 জেব্রা—zebra [জিভ্রা-Jones]
 কচ্ছপ—tortoise [টার্টোস-Jones]
 ব্যাঙ—frog [ফ্রগ]
 কাক—crow [ক্রো]
 দুহু—dove [ডাভ]
 মশা—mosquito [মসকীটো-Jones]
 প্রজাপতি—butterfly [বাটা ফ্লাই-Jones]
 বাছুর—calf [কাল্ফ]
 ছাগলছানা—kid [কিড]
 ভেড়ার ছানা—lamb [ল্যাম-Jones]
 হাতীর দাঁত—tusk [টাস্ক]
 শিং—horn [হর্ন-Jones]
 থাবা—paw [পা-Jones]
 লেজ—tail [টেইল-Jones]
 সাপের ফণা—hood [হুড]
 পাখীর ডানা—wing [উইং]

About fruit, flower, food etc.—ফল, ফুল, খাদ্য সম্বন্ধীয় নাম

ফুল—flower [ফ্লাওয়ার (র)-Jones]
 ফুলের পাপড়ি—petal [পেটাল]
 ফুলের মালা—garland [গারলন্ড-Jones]
 ফুলের বুড়ি—bud [বুড]

কাঁধ—shoulder [শোল্ডার (র)]
 দাঁত—tooth [টুথ]
 চোবাল—jaw [জা]
 দাড়ি—beard [বিয়ার্ড]
 হাত—hand [হ্যান্ড]
 কব্জি—wrist [রিস্ট]
 হাতের তালু—palm [পাম]
 পায়ের পাতা—foot [ফুট]
 পায়ের তলা—sole [সোল]
 ঠাঁই—knee [কনি]
 কোল—lap [ল্যাপ]
 নভি—navel [নাইভেল-Jones]
 তলপেট—abdomen [আবডোমেন]
 বুকে—breast [ব্রেস্ট-Jones]
 পিঠ—back [ব্যাক]
 হৃৎপিণ্ড—heart [হার্ট-Jones]
 অস্থি—bone [বোন]
 মাংস—flesh [ফ্লেশ-Jones]
 বুড়ো আঙুল—thumb [থাম্-Jones]

গোলাপ—rose [রোজ]
 ফল—fruit [ফ্রুইট]
 লেবু—lemon [লেমন]
 আপেল—apple [এপ্পেল-Jones]
 আঙ্গুর—grape [গ্রেইপ-Jones]
 খেজুর—date [ডেইট-Jones]
 তরমুজ—water-melon [ওয়াটার মেলন]
 গাছ—tree [ট্রী]
 খোপঝাড়—bush [বুশ]
 গুল্ম—shrub [শ্রাব]
 কাঠ—wood [উড]
 বীজ—seed [সিড]
 শাখা—branch [ব্রাঞ্চ-Jones]
 গম—wheat [হুইট]
 আটা/ময়লা—flour [ফ্লাওয়ার (র)]
 রুটি—bread [ব্রেড-Jones]
 মাখন—butter [বাটা (র)-Jones]
 মাংস—meat [মীট]
 খাদ্য—food [ফুড]

দ্বিপ্রাহরিক ভোজন—lunch [লান্চ]
 রাত্রির ভোজন—supper [সাপ (র)]
 আলু—potato [পটেইটো-Jones]
 বেগুন—brinjal [ব্রিজাল]
 বাধাকপি—cabbage [ক্যাবিজ-Jones]
 মটর—radish [র্যাডিশ]
 গুড়—molasses [মল্যাসিস]
 লবন—salt [সল্ট]
 আদা—ginger [জিঞ্জার (র)]
 লক্ষা—chilly [চিলি]

About buildings—ঘরবাড়ী সম্বন্ধীয় নাম

বাড়ি—house [হাউস]
 কক্ষ—room [রুম]
 জানালা—window [উইন্ডো]
 দেওয়াল—wall [ওয়াল-Jones]
 ছাদ—roof [রুফ]
 ঘরের ঘর—bath room [বাথরুম]
 বৈঠকখানা—drawing room, [ড্রইং রুম]
 living room, parlour.
 খাবার ঘর—dining room [ডাইনিং রুম]
 রান্নাঘর—kitchen [কিচেন]
 গাড়ী বারান্দা—portico [পোর্টিকো]
 ঠোকাঠ—threshold [থ্রেশহোল্ড]
 বসতবাড়ী—dwelling house [ডুয়েলিং হাউস]
 বাগান—garden [গার্ডেন-Jones]
 কারাগার—prison [প্রিজন্]
 রাজবাড়ী বা প্রাসাদ—palace [প্যালিস-Jones]
 সেনানিবাস—cantonment [ক্যান্টনমেন্ট]
 মন্দির—temple [টেম্পল]

গির্জা—church [চার্চ-Jones]

পদ্ম—lotus [লেটাস-Jones]
 আম—mango [ম্যাঙ্গো]
 কমলালেবু—orange [অরিন্জ-Jones]
 আনারস—pine-apple [পাইন-আপ্পেল]
 নারকেল—coconut [কোকনাইট]
 কলা—banana [ব্যানানা]
 তাল—plam [প্যাম]
 কঁঠাল—jack-fruit [জ্যাক্ ফ্রুইট]
 চরাপাছ—plant [প্লান্ট]
 ঘাস—grass [গ্রাস-Jones]
 বন—forest [ফরিস্ট-Jones]
 মোম—wax [ওয়াক্স-Jones]
 শিকড়—root [রুট]
 ধান—paddy [প্যাডী]
 ভাত—rice [রাইস]
 পুউরুটি—loaf [লোফ]
 গো মাংস—beef [বীফ]
 চিম—egg [এগ]
 প্রাতরাশ—breakfast [ব্রেইকফাস্ট]

Jones

সন্ধ্যা, ভোজন—dinner [ডিনার (র)]
 শাকসবজি—vegetables [ভেজিটেবলজ]
 গাজর—carrot [ক্যারট]
 লিমন—bean [বীন]
 ফুলকপি—cauliflower [কলিফ্লাওয়ার (র)]
 চিনি—sugar [সুগার (র)]
 মধু—honey [হানি]
 মশলা—spice [স্পাইস]
 বসুন্ধা—garlic [গার্লিক-Jones]
 পিঁয়াজ—onion [আনিয়ন-Jones]

হুটী—hut, cottage [হাট, কটিজ-Jones]
 মেঝে—floor [ফ্লোর (র)-Jones]
 দরজা—door [ডোর (র)-Jones]
 সিঁড়ি—stair case [স্টেয়ার (র) কেইস]
 থাম—pillar [পিলার (র)-Jones]
 শোবার ঘর—bed room [বেডরুম]
 পড়ার ঘর—reading room [রিডিং রুম]
 (study) [স্টাডি]
 ছাদবান্দা—balcony [ব্যালকনি]
 দেউড়ি—porch [পর্চ-Jones]
 চিলেকোঠা—garret, turret, attic [অ্যাটিক]
 ওদামঘর—ware house, godown
 গ্রন্থাগার—library [লাইব্রেরী]
 কোষাগার—treasury [ট্রেজারি]
 ছাত্রাবাস—hostel [হোস্টেল-Jones]
 একতলা—ground floor [গ্রাউন্ড ফ্লোর (র)]
 দোতলা—first floor [ফার্স্ট ফ্লোর (র)]
 তিনতলা—second floor
 [সেকেন্ড ফ্লোর (র)]
 মসজিদ—mosque [মস্ক]

[About dress, furniture & arms—পোশাক, আসবাবপত্র এবং অস্ত্রশস্ত্র]

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| পোশাক—dress [ড্রেস] | সাহেবী টুপি—hat [হ্যাট] |
| শেখী টুপি—cap [ক্যাপ] | মুসলমানী টুপি—fez [ফেজ] |
| পাণ্ডি—turban [ট্যুরবান-Jones] | ছড়ি—stick [স্টিক] |
| বোতাম—button [বটাম-Jones] | জুতা—shoe [শু] |
| ছাতা—umbrella [আমব্রেলা-Jones] | চশমা—spectacles [স্পেক্টাকলস] |
| অলঙ্কার—ornament [অল্যাংক-ment-Jones] | আসবাবপত্র—furniture [ফার্নিচার (র)] |
| মাদুর—mat [ম্যাট] | শেপ—quilt [কুইল্ট] |
| রুগা—rug [রাগ] | চাদর—wrapper [রাপা (র)] |
| বাগিশ—pillow [পিলা] | গামিচ—carpet [কাপিট-Jones] |
| বাসন—utensil [ইউটেনসিল] | ফুলদানি—flower vase |
| লণ্ঠন—lantern [ল্যান্টার্ন-Jones] | [ফুলদানি-বাসন-Jones] |
| আলমিরি—almirah [আলমিরা] | ডাক—shelf [শেল্ফ] |
| দোয়াতদানি—ink pot [ইঙ্ক পট] | মোমবাতি—candle [ক্যান্ডল] |
| খুড়ি—basket, hamper [বাস্কেট, হাম্পা (র)] | সাবনদানি—soap case [সোপ কেইস] |
| ফুড়ি—knife [নাইফ] | ছুঁচ—needle [নিডল] |
| কাঁচি—scissors [সিক্স-জন্স] | দোরা—dagger [ড্যাগা (র)] |
| কাঙে—sickle [সিকল] | ছুর—razor [রেজা (র)-Jones] |
| কোদাল—spade [স্পেড-Jones] | হাতুড়ি—hammer [হ্যামা (র)] |
| লাঙ্গল—plough [প্লাউ] | নিড়নি—hoe [হো-Jones] |
| চামচ—spoon [স্পুন] | মই—ladder [ল্যাডা (র)-Jones] |
| ডাক—lock [লক] | দড়ি—string, rope [স্ট্রিং, রোপ] |
| চাবি—key [কী] | জীর—arrow [আরো] |
| আয়না—mirror [মিরা (র)-Jones] | বন্দুক—gun [গান] |
| চিরুনি—comb [কম] | ভরবারি—sword [সোর্ড-Jones] |
| অস্ত্রশস্ত্র—arms [আর্মস-Jones] | নৌবহর—navy [ন্যাভি-Jones] |
| ধনুক—bow [বো-Jones] | লেন্স—COD [লেন্স] |
| বিস্ত্র—spear [স্পিরা (র)-Jones] | কামান—cannon [ক্যানন] |
| বিমানবাহিনী—air force [এয়ারফোর্স-Jones] | পদাতিক বাহিনী—infantry [ইনফ্যান্ট্রি] |

[About time & direction—সময় ও দিক]

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| দিন—day [ডেই-Jones ; ডে-COD] | সকাল—morning [মর্নিং-Jones] |
| দুপুর—noon [নুন] | বিকাল—afternoon |
| | [আফটারনুন-Jones] |
| সন্ধ্যা—twilight [টুইলাইট] | সন্ধ্যা—evening [ইভনিং] |
| রাত্রি—night [নাইট] | সপ্তাহ—week [উইক] |
| একপক্ষকাল—fortnight [ফটনাইট] | মাস—month [মান্থ] |
| বছর—year [ইয়া (র)] | সূর্যোদয়—sunrise [সানরাইজ] |
| সুদূর—sunset [সানসেট] | দক্ষিণপশ্চিম—south-west |
| | [সাউথ-ওয়েস্ট] |
| পূর্বদিক—east [ইস্ট] | দক্ষিণপূর্ব—south-east |
| পশ্চিমদিক—west [ওয়েস্ট] | উত্তরপূর্ব—north-east |
| | [নর্থ-ইস্ট-Jones] |
| উত্তরদিক—north [নর্থ-Jones] | উত্তরপশ্চিম—north-west |
| | [নর্থ-ওয়েস্ট] |
| দক্ষিণদিক—south [সাউথ] | দিকচক্রবাল—horizon [হরাইজন্] |
| ডানদিক—right [রাইট] | বামদিক—left [লিফ্ট] |

[About education—শিক্ষা সম্বন্ধীয়]

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ছাত্র—student [স্টুডেন্ট-Jones] | শিক্ষক—teacher [টিচার (র)] |
| পাঠ—Lesson [লেসন্স] | ভাষা—language [ল্যাংগুইজ-Jones] |
| বিজ্ঞান—science [সায়েন্স] | সাহিত্য—literature [লিটারেচার (র)] |

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| প্রবন্ধ—essay [এসেই-Jones] | নাটক—drama [ড্রামা] |
| উপন্যাস—novel [নভেল-Jones] | কবিতা—poem [পোয়েম] |
| কবি—poet [পোয়েট-COD] | নাট্যকার—dramatist [ড্রামাটিস্ট] |
| ঔপন্যাসিক—novelist [নভেলিস্ট] | গ্রন্থকার—author [অথার (র)] |
| লেখক—writer [রাইটার (র)] | সম্পাদক—editor [এডিটর (র)] |
| পঠক—reader [রিডার (র)] | দার্শনিক—philosopher [ফিলজফা (র)] |
| ছুটির দিন—holiday [হলিডেই-Jones] | ছুটি—leave [লীভ] |
| শাস্তি—punishment [পানিশমেন্ট] | ফলাফল—result [রেজাল্ট] |
| জ্ঞান—knowledge [নলিজ-Jones] | পুরস্কার—reward [রিওয়ার্ড] |
| শিক্ষাদান—teaching [টিচিং] | শিক্ষাগ্রহণ—learning [লার্নিং-Jones] |

[About occupation—পেশা সম্বন্ধীয়]

| | |
|--|--|
| কেরানী—clerk [ক্লার্ক-Jones] | ছুতার—carpenter [কার্পেন্টার (র)] |
| ভাজী—weaver [উজা (র)] | মুড়ি—cobbler [কোবলার (র)] |
| কামার—black-smith [ব্ল্যাক স্মিথ] | স্বর্ণকার—goldsmith [গোল্ডস্মিথ] |
| কুকার—potter [পটা (র)] | মুটে—porter [পোর্টার (র)] |
| মুদ্রী—grocer [গ্রোসার (র)] | ভিক্ষুক—beggar [বেগার (র)] |
| কুসাই—barber [ব্রা (র)] | দোকানী—shop keeper [শপকিপা (র)] |
| জোলে—fisherman [ফিশম্যান-Jones] | ধোপা—washerman [ওয়াশম্যান] |
| নাগিত—barber [বা (র) বা-Jones] | রাজমিস্ত্রী—mason [রেইসন্-Jones] |
| মজুর—labour [লেবোর (র)] | গোয়াল—milkman [মিল্কম্যান] |
| পাহারাওয়াল—watchman [ওয়াচম্যান] | দারওয়ান—gatekeeper |
| | [গেটকীপার (র)] |
| মাঝি—boatman [বোটম্যান] | দস্তারী—book-binder [বুক বাইন্ডার (র)] |
| করিশর—artisan [আর্টিজান] | অভিনেতা—actor [অ্যাকটর (র)] |
| চিত্রকর—painter [পেইন্টার (র)] | ভাস্কর—sculptor [স্কাল্পটার (র)] |
| নৃত্যশিল্পী—dancer [ড্যান্সার (র)] | খেলোয়াড়—player [প্লেইয়ার (র)-Jones] |
| ইঞ্জিনিয়ার—engineer [এঞ্জিনিয়ার (র)] | শিকারী—hunter [হান্টার (র)] |
| উকিল—lawyer [লইয়ার (র)] | মক্কেল—cliant [ক্লাইয়ান্ট] |
| চিকিৎসক—Physician, doctor [ডক্টার (র)] | ব্যবসায়ী—businessman |
| ঔষধ বিক্রেতা—druggist [ড্রাগিস্ট] | [বিজনেস ম্যান-Jones] |

[About king, Queen etc. রাজা রাণী ইত্যাদি]

| | |
|--|-------------------------|
| রাজা—king [কিং] | রাণী—queen [কুইন] |
| সিংহাসন—throne [থ্রোন] | স্বর্গ—heaven [হেভেন] |
| ভূত—spirit, ghost [স্পিরিট, গোস্ট-Jones] | নরক—hell [হেল] |
| সেবদূত—angel [এইঞ্জেল-Jones] | ধর্ম—religion [রিলিজন্] |

[About natural objects—প্রাকৃতিক বিষয় সম্বন্ধীয়]

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| পুকুর—pond [পন্ড] | জলাশয়—tank [ট্যাংক] |
| হ্রদ—lake [লেইক-Jones] | নদী—river [রিভার (র)] |
| ছোটনদী—stream, brook [স্ট্রিম, ব্রুক] | জলপ্রপাত—waterfall [ওয়াটারফল] |
| সাগর—sea [সী] | উপসাগর—bay [বেই-Jones] |
| মহাসাগর—ocean [ওসেন-Jones] | প্রবাহ—current [কারেন্ট-Jones] |
| জোয়ার—flow tide [ফ্লো টাইড] | ভাঁট—ebb tide [এব্ টাইড] |
| তেউ—wave [ওয়েভ-Jones] | ছোট তেউ—ripple [রিপল] |
| উপকূল—coast [কোস্ট-Jones] | দ্বীপ—land (আইল্যান্ড) |
| সमुদ্রতীর—sea-shore [সী শোর (র)] | পাহাড়—hill [হিল] |
| পর্বত—mountain [মাউন্টেন] | উপত্যকা—valley [ভ্যালি] |
| আগ্নেয়গিরি—volcano [ভলকেনো] | গুহা—cave [কেইভ-Jones] |

কন—forest, jungle | জঙ্গল, বনাঞ্চল |
 মকদাস—oasis | ওয়েসিস |
 নক্ষত্র—star | স্টার |
 চন্দ্র—moon | মুন |
 মেঘ—cloud | ক্লাউড |
 বাতাস—air | এয়ার |
 জলবায়ু—climate | ক্লাইমেট |
 ঝড়—storm | স্টর্ম |
 গজ—thunder | থান্ডার |
 লিলাকুটি—hallstorm | হেলস্টর্ম |
 স্নো—snow | স্নো |
 বাষ্প—vapour | ভেপার |
 ধূলি—dust | ডাস্ট |
 ভূকম্প—earthquake | আর্থকোয়েইক |
 অক্ষাংশ—latitude | ল্যাটিটিউড |
 কয়লা—coal |
 লৌহ—iron | আয়রন |
 রূপা—silver | সিলভার |
 মিকা—mica | মাইকা |
 লোহা—metal | মেটাল |

[About trade and commerce—বাণিজ্য]

বাণিজ্য—trade | ট্রেড |
 বাজার—market | মার্কেট |
 রপ্তানি—export | এক্সপোর্ট |
 বিক্রয়—sale | সেল |
 আয়—income | ইনকাম |
 ঋণ—credit | ক্রেডিট |
 হিসাব—account | অ্যাকাউন্ট |
 বিনিময়—exchange | এক্সচেঞ্জ |
 ক্ষয়—loss | লস |
 সুদ—interest | ইন্টারেস্ট |
 চালান—invoice | ইনভয়েস |
 চুক্তি—contract, agreement | এক্রিমেন্ট |
 বেতন—salary, pay | স্যালারি, পেই |
 ক্রেতা—customer | কাস্টমার |
 ন্যায্য মূল্য—fair price | ফেয়ার প্রাইস |
 সম্পত্তি—asset | অসেট |
 দামী—dear, costly | ডিয়ার, কস্টলি |
 বাণিজ্য—commerce | কমার্স |
 নমুনা—sample | স্যাম্পল |
 আমদানি—import | ইমপোর্ট |
 ক্রয়—purchase | পার্চেস |
 ব্যয়—expense | এক্সপেন্স |
 বাকী—due, balance | ডিউ, ব্যালেন্স |
 জমাধার—debit-credit | ডেবিট-ক্রেডিট |
 লাভ—Profit | প্রফিট |
 দায়—liability | লায়বিলিটি |
 অংশ—principal | প্রিন্সিপাল |
 মূলধন—capital | ক্যাপিটাল |
 মজুরি—wages | ওয়েজ |
 মালপত্র—goods | গুড্‌স |
 দাম—price | প্রাইস |
 বিক্রয়মূল্য—sale price | সেইল প্রাইস |
 পণ্য—commodity | কমোডিটি |
 সস্তা—cheap | চীপ |

[About conveyance—যানবাহন]

যানবাহন—conveyance | কনভেয়েন্স |
 কোচের গাড়ি—coach | কোচ |
 মালগাড়ি—goods train | গুড্‌স ট্রেন |
 জাহাজ—ship | শিপ |
 মহাকাশযান—space ship | স্পেসশিপ |
 গোকশাড়ি—cart | কার্ট |
 রেলগাড়ি—train | ট্রেন |
 ট্রামগাড়ি—tram | ট্রাম |
 ফেরানোকা—ferry boat | ফেরি বোট |
 উড়োজাহাজ—aeroplane | এয়ারপ্লেন |

[About diseases—রোগ]

রোগ—disease | ডিজিজ |
 কাশি—cough | কাফ |
 অসুস্থতা—illness | ইলনেস |
 ফুসফুস—phthisis | ফাইসিস |

বক্ষ—tuberculosis | টিউবাকুলোসিস |
 টিউবার—diarrhoea | ডায়েরিয়া |
 হাম—measles | মীসেলস |
 জলবক্ষ—chicken-pox | চিকেন পক্স |
 সর্পিপক্ষ—sunstroke | সানস্ট্রোক |
 অগ্নিবক্ষ—dyspepsia | ডিসপেপ্সিয়া |
 জ্বালাপ—dysentery | ডিসেন্ট্রি |
 নিদ্রাহীনতা—insomnia | ইন্সোমনিয়া |
 মস্তিষ্কবিকৃতি—insanity | ইনস্যানিটি |
 মস্তিষ্কবিজ্ঞ—nausea | নসিয়া |
 হৃদয়—cataract | ক্যাটারাক্ট |
 মহামারী—epidemic | এপিডেমিক |
 পথ—diet | ডায়েট |
 টিকা—inoculation | ইনোকুলেশন |
 মলম—ointment | অইন্টমেন্ট |
 ঊষ্মা—asthma | এস্‌থমা |
 কলাহা—cholera | কলেরা |
 কলহ—pox | পক্স |
 কুট—leprosy | লেপ্রসি |
 মাথাব্যথা—headache | হেডএক |
 জ্বর—fever | ফিভার |
 পক্ষাঘাত—paralysis | প্যারালিসিস |
 কষ্ট—diabetes | ডায়েবিটিস |
 প্রলাপ—delirium | ডিলিরিয়াম |
 হতাশতা—anaemia | এ্যানিমিয়া |
 মূণী—epilepsy | এপিলেপ্সি |
 টাইফয়েড—typhoid | টাইফয়েড |
 ঔষধ—medicine | মেডিসিন |
 চিকিৎসা—treatment | ট্রিটমেন্ট |
 জোলাপ—purgative | পার্গেটিভ |

[About feelings & qualities—অনুভূতি ও গুণসম্বন্ধীয়]

প্রেম—affection | অ্যাফেকশন |
 সাহস—courage | ক্যুরেজ |
 নিষ্ঠুরতা—cruelty | ক্রুয়েলিটি |
 দান—charity | চারিটি |
 পরিচ্ছন্নতা—cleanliness | ক্লিনলিনেস |
 সততা—honesty | অনেস্টি |
 দীনতা—decency | ডিসেন্সি |
 বন্ধুত্ব—friendship | ফ্রেন্ডশিপ |
 ভুল—error | এরর |
 দুঃখ—sorrow | সোরো |
 গুণ—quality | কোয়ালিটি |
 বিদ্বেষ—malice | ম্যালিস |
 দান—grift | গিফ্ট |
 আভ্যাস—grandeur | গ্র্যান্ডার |
 পবিত্রতা—holiness | হোলিনেস |
 স্বাস্থ্য—health | হেলথ |
 ন্যায়পরায়ণতা—justice | জাস্টিস |
 জ্ঞান—knowledge | নলিজ, নলেজ |
 ঘৃণা—hatred | হেট্রিড |
 স্বাধীনতা—liberty, freedom | লিবার্টি, ফ্রিডাম |
 উচ্ছ্বাস—laughter | লাক্টার |
 নীচতা—meanness | মিনেনেস |
 দারিদ্র—poverty | পোভার্টি |
 শ্রদ্ধা—respect | রেসপেক্ট |
 প্রতিহিংসা—revenge | রিভেঞ্জ |
 সহানুভূতি—sympathy | সিমপ্যাথি |
 কুসংস্কার—ugliness | অ্যাগলিনেস |
 অশ্রদ্ধা—arrogance | অ্যালাস (হ) |
 সাহসিকতা—bravery | ব্রেভারি |
 কাপুরুষতা—cowardice | কাওয়ার্ডিস |
 অদ্বন্দ্ব—courtsey | কাস্টি |
 আরাম—comfort | কমফোর্ট |
 অসততা—dishonesty | ডিশনেস্টি |
 শত্রুতা—enmity | এনমিটি |
 ভয়—fear | ফিয়ার |
 আনন্দ—joy | জয় |
 লজ্জা—shyness | শাইনেস |
 হিংসা—envy | এনভি |
 দুর্বলতা—weakness | উইকনেস |
 গৌরব—glory | গ্লোরি |
 ক্ষুধা—hunger | হাঙ্গার |
 কষ্ট—hardship | হার্ডশিপ |
 অপমান—insult | ইনসাল্ট |
 দয়া—kindness | কাইন্ডনেস |
 ভালোবাসা—love | লাব |
 উদারতা—liberality | লিবারেলিটি |
 শ্রম—labour | লেবোর |
 ককশ—pity | পিটি |
 পবিত্রতা—purity | পিউরিটি |
 ভক্তি—regard | রিগার্ড |
 কড়া—rudeness | রুডনেস |
 উপশম—relief | রিলিফ |
 ভীকতা—timidity | টিমিডিটি |
 মিথ্যা পর—vanity | ভ্যানিটি |

PRONOUN

Noun-এর পরিবর্তে যে word বসে, তাকে Pronoun বলে।

These are useful Pronouns. Remember them.

| | |
|---------------|---------------|
| আমি—I | আমাদের—we |
| তুমি—you | আপনার—you |
| সে—he | সে—she |
| তাকে (তু)—him | তাকে (হী)—her |
| তিনি (তু)—he | তিনি (হী)—she |
| তারা—they | তারা—they |
| উঁকে (তু)—him | উঁকে (হী)—her |
| উঁকি—them | উঁকি—their |
| ঐ—his | ঐ—her |
| যে—who | যে—who |
| যার—whose | যাকে—whom |

ADJECTIVE

যে Word-এর দ্বারা Noun বা Pronoun-এর দোষ, গুণ, অবস্থা, সংখ্যা, পরিমাণ, ইত্যাদি বোঝায় তাকে Adjective বলে।

These are some common Adjectives. Remember them.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|
| ভাল—good \| ভাল | খারাপ—bad \| খারাপ |
| গরম—hot \| গরম | ঠান্ডা—cold ঠান্ডা |
| দীর্ঘ—long \| দীর্ঘ | সুঁচ—short \| সুঁচ |
| প্রস্থ—broad \| প্রস্থ | সঙ্কট—narrow \| সঙ্কট |
| সফট—soft \| সফট | কঠিন—hard \| কঠিন |
| নতুন—new \| নতুন | পুরনো—old \| পুরনো |
| কোঁকড়া—curved \| কোঁকড়া | সোজা—straight \| সোজা |
| কোঁকড়া—lean \| কোঁকড়া | চর্বি—fat \| চর্বি |
| পাতলা—thin \| পাতলা | সুঁচ—thick \| সুঁচ |
| সুঁচ—short, dwarf \| সুঁচ, কোঁকড়া | উঁচরো লোক—tall \| উঁচরো |

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| দুঃখ—wet \| দুঃখ | শুকনো—dry \| শুষ্ক |
| গভীর—deep \| গভীর | শেঁকট—moist \| শেঁকট, damp |
| পূর্ণ—full \| পূর্ণ | কম্প—shallow \| কম্প |
| সুখ—sweet \| সুখ | খালি—empty \| খালি |
| কষ্ট—bitter \| কষ্ট | সবুজ—green \| সবুজ, raw \| র |
| সুস্বাদু—tasteful \| সুস্বাদু | কি—sour \| কি |
| সুস্বাদু—fresh \| সুস্বাদু | কি—salted \| কি—Jones |
| কি—rotten \| কি | কি—tasteless \| কি |
| কি—fried \| কি | কি—stale \| কি |
| কি—clean \| কি | কি—boiled \| কি—Jones |
| কি—nice \| কি | কি—dirty \| কি |
| কি—poor \| কি | কি—ugly \| কি |
| কি—idiotic \| কি | কি—rich \| কি |
| কি—gentle \| কি | কি—wise \| কি |
| কি—kind \| কি | কি—clever \| কি |
| কি—happy \| কি | কি—rude \| কি |
| কি—old \| কি | কি—cruel \| কি |
| কি—brave \| কি | কি—unhappy \| কি |
| কি—active \| কি | কি—young \| কি |
| কি—diligent \| কি | কি—timid \| কি |
| কি—foolish \| কি | কি—idle \| কি |
| কি—modest \| কি | কি—intelligent \| কি |
| কি—innocent \| কি | কি—noble \| কি |
| কি—naughty \| কি | কি—proud \| কি |
| কি—disobedient \| কি | কি—wicked \| কি |
| কি—false \| কি | কি—obedient \| কি |
| কি—dishonest \| কি | কি—true \| কি |
| কি—healthy \| কি | কি—truthful \| কি |
| কি—weak \| কি | কি—honest \| কি |
| কি—lame \| কি | কি—faithful \| কি |
| কি—dead \| কি | কি—sickly \| কি |
| কি—mad \| কি | কি—blind \| কি |
| কি—worthy \| কি | কি—dumb \| কি |
| কি—careful \| কি | কি—wealthy \| কি |
| কি—reckless \| কি | কি—busy \| কি |
| কি—hungry \| কি | কি—hopeless \| কি |
| কি—holy \| কি | কি—careless \| কি |
| কি—impure \| কি | কি—angry \| কি |
| কি—wild \| কি | কি—thirsty \| কি |
| কি—fine \| কি | কি—pure \| কি |
| কি—light \| কি | কি—tame \| কি |
| কি—blunt \| কি | কি—coarse \| কি |
| কি—cheap \| কি | কি—heavy \| কি |
| কি—harmful \| কি | কি—sharp \| কি |
| কি—illiterate \| কি | কি—valuable \| কি |
| কি—red \| কি | কি—useful \| কি |
| কি—white \| কি | কি—literate \| কি |
| কি—green \| কি | কি—black \| কি |
| কি—violet \| কি | কি—coloured \| কি |
| | কি—blue \| কি |

চকটক লাল—crimson [ক্রিসম]
 বাদামী—brown [ব্রাউন]
 বিবর্ণ—pale, fade [ফেইড]
 উজ্জ্বল—bright [ব্রাইট]

হালু—yellow [ইয়োলো]
 গোলাপী—pink, rosy [রোজি]
 ধূসর—grey [গ্রেই]
 সুন্দর—beautiful [বিউটিফুল]

VERBS

যে Word-এর দ্বারা কিছু করা, হওয়া বা থাকা বোঝায় তাকে Verb বলে।

These are some common Verbs. Remember them.

কিছুসং করা—ask [অস্ক]
 সন্মত হওয়া—agree [এগ্রি]
 ব্যবস্থা করা—arrange [আররেঞ্জ]
 পৌঁছানো—arrive [আরাইভ]
 উপস্থিত হওয়া—appear [আপিয়ার (র)]
 কেনা—buy [বাই]
 মার—beat [বিট]
 ভাঙা—break [ব্রেক]
 গঠন করা—build [বিড]
 বহন করা—bear [বিয়ার (র)]
 শ্বাস নেওয়া—breathe [ব্রেইথ]
 আরম্ভ করা—begin [বিগিন]
 যত্ন নেওয়া—care [কেয়ার (র)]
 রান্না করা—cook [কুক]
 ডাক—call [কল]
 আনা—come [কাম]
 পরিবর্তন করা—change [চেইঞ্জ]
 বন্ধ করা—close [ক্লোজ]
 তুলনা করা—compare [কমপেয়ার (র)]
 করা—do [ডু]
 নৃত্য—dance [ড্যান্স]
 সাহস করা—dare [ডেয়ার (র)]
 আঁক—draw [ড্রা]
 ঝরে পড়া—drop [ড্রপ]
 বাস করা—dwell [ডুয়েল]
 চালানো, ডাড়া—drive [ড্রাইভ]
 শেষ হওয়া—end [এন্ড]
 উপভোগ করা—enjoy [এনজয়]
 ভুলে যাওয়া—forget [ফগেট-Jones]
 যুদ্ধ করা—fight [ফাইট]
 ভয় করা—fear [ফিয়ার (র)]
 পড়িত হওয়া—fall [ফল]
 নিষেধ করা—forbid [ফরবিড-Jones]
 পরিত্যাগ করা—forsake [ফসেক-Jones]
 পাওয়া—get [গেট]
 বর্ধিত হওয়া বা জন্মানো—grow [গ্রো]
 থাকা—have [হ্যাভ]
 সহায়তা করা—help [হেল্প]
 ঘৃণা করা—hate [হেইট]
 উত্তর করা—answer [আনসার (র)]
 উপদেশ দেওয়া—advise [আডভাইস]
 গ্রেফতার করা—arrest [আরেস্ট]
 যোগ করা—add [আড]
 অনুমতি দেওয়া—allow [আলাউ]
 আনা—bring [ব্রিং]
 কামড়ান—bite [বাইট]
 পোড়ান—burn [বার্ন নয়] বান-Jones
 ধর করা—borrow [বরো]
 হান করা—bathe [বেইথ-Jones]
 ভিক্ষা করা—beg [বেগ]
 অশীর্বাদ করা—bless [ব্রেস]
 ধরা—catch [ক্যাচ]
 পছন্দ করা—choose [চুইজ]
 কট—cut [কট]
 পড়া—can [কান]
 আরোহণ করা—climb [ক্লাইম]
 কাট—cut [কট]
 হামাগুড়ি দেওয়া—creep [ক্রীপ]
 মরা—die [ডাই]
 খনন করা—dig [ডিগ]
 পান করা—drink [ড্রিংক]
 স্বপ্ন দেখা—dream [ড্রীম]
 ধ্বংস করা—destroy [ডেস্ট্রয়]
 ভাগ করা—divide [ডিভাইড]
 আলোচনা করা—discuss [ডিসকাস]
 খাওয়া—eat [ইট]
 উড়ান—fly [ফ্লাই]
 উপবাস করা—fast [ফাস্ট]
 খোঁজা—find [ফাইন্ড]
 বর্ষ হওয়া—fall [ফেইল]
 অনুভব করা—feel [ফীল-Jones]
 ক্ষমা করা—forgive [ফর্গিভ-Jones]
 যাওয়া—go [গো]
 দেওয়া—give [গিভ]
 এক দৃষ্টিতে তাকিয়ে থাকা—gaze [গেইজ-Jones]
 শোনা—hear [হিয়ার (র)]
 ধরা—hold [হোল্ড]
 আঘাত করা—hit [হিট]

কুশাসনে
 ঈদনি দেওয়া } hang [হ্যাং]
 গোপন করা—hide [হাইড]
 রাখা করা—keep [কীপ]
 হত্যা করা—kill [কিল]
 হাঁটু গেড়ে বসা—kneel [ক্নীল]
 পোড়ানো—lie [লাই]
 ধর দেওয়া—lend [লেণ্ড]
 পছন্দ করা—like [লাইক]
 হাসা—laugh [লাফ]
 হারানো—lose [লুস]
 তাকানো—look [লুক]
 তৈরি করা—make [মেইক-Jones]
 নড়াচড়া করা—move [মুভ]
 বিবাহ করা—marry [ম্যারি]
 মানা করা—obey [ওবেই-Jones]
 প্রার্থনা করা—pray [প্রেই-Jones]
 উত্তীর্ণ হওয়া—pass [পাস]
 ঠেলা—push [পুশ]
 রাখা—put [পুট]
 মোড়ান চড়া—ride [রাইড]
 দৌড়ান—run [রান]
 মনে করা—remember [রিমেম্বর (র)]
 তিরস্কার করা—rebuke [রিবুক]
 ঘুমানো—sleep [স্লীপ]
 দেখা—see [সী]
 বীজ বোনা—sow [সো]
 থাকা—stay [স্টেই-Jones]
 গান করা—sing [সিং]
 বলা—say [সেই-Jones]
 আঘাত করা—strike [স্ট্রাইক]
 হাসা—smile [স্মাইল]
 ঘ্রাণ নেওয়া—smell [স্মেল]
 বানান করা—spell [স্পেল]
 নাড়ানো—shake [শেক]
 গুলি করা—shoot [শুট]
 সাঁতার কাটা—swim [সুইম]
 শিক্ষা দেওয়া—teach [টিচ]
 স্পর্শ করা—touch [টাচ]
 ধন্যবাদ দেওয়া—thank [থ্যাংক]
 লওয়া—take [টেইক]
 চেষ্টা করা—try [ট্রাই]
 পরিধান করা—wear [উইয়ার (র)]
 চাওয়া—want [ওয়ান্ট]
 জাগা—wake [ওয়েইক-Jones]
 ধোওয়া—wash [ওয়াশ]
 লেখা—write [রাইট]
 অপেক্ষা করা—wait [ওয়েইট]

আশা করা—hope [হোপ]
 লাফানো—jump [জাম্প]
 জানা—know [নো]
 ধাক্কা মারা—knock [নক]
 পোড়ানো—lay [লেই-Jones]
 বাস করা—live [লিভ]
 শিখা করা—learn [লার্ন নয়] লান-Jones
 ভালোবাসা—love [লোভ]
 ত্যাগ করা—leave [লীভ]
 চাবি দেওয়া—lock [লক]
 বোঝাই করা—load [লোড]
 সাক্ষাৎ করা—meet [মীট]
 মেরামত করা—mend [মেণ্ড]
 প্রয়োজন হওয়া—need [নীড]
 খোলা—open [ওপন]
 শাস্তি দেওয়া—punish [পানিশ]
 টানা—pull [পুল]
 খেলা করা—play [প্লেই-Jones]
 উঠা—rise [রাইজ]
 পড়া—read [রিড]
 বাজান—ring [রিং]
 পৌঁছান—reach [রিচ]
 দাঁড়ানো—stand [স্ট্যান্ড]
 কিরণ দেওয়া—shine [শাইন]
 দেখানো—show [শো]
 সেলাই করা—sew [সিউ]
 নাড়া দেওয়া—shake [শেইক-Jones]
 বসা—sit [সিট]
 কথা বলা—speak [স্পিক]
 চুরি করা—steal [স্টীল]
 খোঁজা—seek [সীক]
 বিক্রি করা—sell [সেল]
 পাঠানো—send [সেন্ড]
 কষ্ট পাওয়া—suffer [সাফার (র)]
 উপবাস করা—starve [স্টার্ব-Jones]
 ডুবে যাওয়া—sink [সিংক]
 স্বাদ লওয়া—taste [টেইস্ট]
 নিক্ষেপ করা—throw [থ্রো]
 চিন্তা করা—think [থিংক]
 বলা—tell [টেল]
 হেঁচকা—tear [ট্যার (র)]
 কান্না—Weep [উইপ]
 হাঁটা—walk [ওয়াক-Jones]
 কাজ করা—work [ওয়ার্ক-Jones]
 ইচ্ছা করা—wish [উইশ]
 কাপড় বোনা—weave [উইভ]
 জয় করা—win [উইন]

ADVERBS

যে Word কোন Verb, Adjective, অন্য কোন Adverb, Preposition Conjunction-কে বিশেষিত করে তাকে Adverb বলে।

These are some common Adverbs. Remember them.

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| পূর্বে—ago [এগো] | আবার—again [এগেইন] |
| প্রায়—about, almost [অলমোস্ট] | সর্বদা—always [অলয়েয়েজ] |
| পরে—after [আফটার (র)] | পূর্বে—before [বিফোর (র)] |
| প্রতিদিন—daily [ডেইলি-Jones] | সকাল সকাল—early [আ-লি-Jones] |
| চিরকাল—ever [এজ (র)] | যথেষ্ট—enough [এনাফ] |
| এদিকে—hither [হিয়ার (র)] | দ্রুত—fast [ফাস্ট] |
| সেদিকে—thither [দিয়ার (র)] | এখানে—here [হিয়ার (র)] |
| এখন—now [নো] | সেখানে—there [দেয়ার (র)] |
| তখন—then [দেন] | অন্য—more [মোর (র)] |
| একবার—once [ওয়ান্স] | কখনো না—never [নেভার (র)] |
| শীঘ্র—soon [সুন] | কেবলমাত্র—only [ওনলি] |
| মাঝে মাঝে—sometimes [সামটাইমস্] | সম্পূর্ণরূপে—quite [কোয়াইট] |
| গতকাল—yesterday [ইয়েস্টারডেই] | কদাচিৎ—seldom [সেল্ডম] |
| আগামীকাল—tomorrow [টুমরো] | আজ—today [টুডেই-Jones] |
| একবার—once [ওয়ান্স] | চারবার—four times [ফোর টাইমস্] |
| দুবার—twice [টুইস্] | চতুর্থবার—fourth-time [ফোর্থ টাইম] |
| তিনবার—thrice [থ্রিইস] | এইভাবে—thus [দাস] |

[Adjective-এর সঙ্গে ly যোগ করে Adverb হয়]

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| সক্রিয়ভাবে—actively | ক্রুদ্ধভাবে—angrily |
| খারাপভাবে—badly | মনোযোগ সহকারে—attentively |
| উজ্জ্বলভাবে—brightly | সুন্দরভাবে—beautifully |
| যত্নসহকারে—carefully | সাহসের সঙ্গে—bravely |
| নিশ্চয়ই—certainly | পরিস্কার ভাবে—clearly, cleanly |
| নিষ্ঠুরভাবে—cruelly | অযত্নের সঙ্গে—carelessly |
| সুবিধাজনকভাবে—conveniently | কৌতূহলী হয়ে—curiously |
| নিশ্চিতভাবে—definitely | সাহসের সঙ্গে—courageously |
| বিপদজনকভাবে—dangerously | আলাদাভাবে—differently |
| আগ্রহের সঙ্গে—eagerly | ঈর্ষান্বিতভাবে—enviously |
| ভয়ের সঙ্গে—fearfully | চমৎকার ভাবে—excellently |
| আনন্দের সঙ্গে—gladly, joyfully | ভয়ঙ্করভাবে—frightfully |
| আশাজনকভাবে—hopefully | গৌরবজনকভাবে—gloriously |
| অলসভাবে—idly | রসিকতা করে—humorously |
| নির্দোষভাবে—innocently | অজ্ঞভাবে—ignorantly |
| স্থানীয়ভাবে—locally | ভীষণভাবে—intensely |
| বিশ্বস্তকরভাবে—marvellously | অর্থজনকভাবে—meaningfully |
| প্রায়—nearly (near-নিকটবর্তী) | খোলাখুলিভাবে—openly |
| বশব্দে—obediently | ধৈর্যের সঙ্গে—patiently |
| বাস্তবে—practically | নিঃশব্দে—silently |
| দ্রুত—quickly | কোমলভাবে—softly |
| শান্তভাবে—quietly | দুঃখের সঙ্গে—sorrowfully |
| দৃঢ়ভাবে—strongly | আচর্যজনকভাবে—surprisingly |
| সফলভাবে—successfully | সত্যিসত্যি—truly |
| প্রচণ্ডভাবে—violently | জীবনী শক্তিরূপে—vitality |
| সতেজে—vigorously | বিস্তৃতভাবে—widely |
| দুর্বলভাবে—weakly | জ্ঞানীর মতো—wisely |

PREPOSITION

যে শব্দ Noun বা Pronoun-এর পূর্বে বসে ঐ Noun বা Pronoun-এর সঙ্গে বাক্যের অন্য Word-এর সম্পর্ক বুঝিয়ে দেয়, তাকে Preposition বলে।

Preposition বাংলা বিভক্তি ও অনুসর্গের মতো ব্যবহৃত হয়।

at = এ, তে; above = উপরে; across = আড়াআড়ি ভাবে; against = বিরুদ্ধে; among = মধ্যে; after = পরে; before = পূর্বে; beside = পাশে; below = নীচে; beneath = নীচে; behind = পিছনে; beyond = বাইরে; between = দুই-এর মধ্যে; by = দ্বারা; down = নীচে; for = জন্য; from = থেকে; in = মধ্যে; into = ভেতরের দিকে; like = মতো; near = নিকটে; of = র, এর; on = উপরে; over = উপরে; outside = বাইরে; out of = কোন কিছু থেকে; since = কোন নির্দিষ্ট সময় থেকে; to = দিকে, প্রতি; towards = অভিমুখে; through = ভিতর দিয়ে; up = উপরে; upon = উপরে; with = সঙ্গে; within = ভিতরে; without = ব্যতীত।

CONJUNCTION

যে Word দুটি শব্দ বা বাক্যকে সংযুক্ত করে, তাকে Conjunction বলে।

and = এবং; as = যেহেতু; if = যদি; but = কিন্তু; both = উভয়; because = কারণ; else = নচেৎ; lest = পাছে; or = অথবা; however = যাইহোক; still = তবু; till = পর্যন্ত; so = সেইজন্য; either or = হয় এটা, না হয় ওটা; neither nor = এটাও না, ওটাও না; then = তখন; than = অপেক্ষা, চেয়ে; though = যদিও; unless = যদি না।

INTERJECTION

যে শব্দ মনের কোন আকস্মিক আবেগ প্রকাশ করে, তাকে Interjection বলে।

Ah! = আ! Alas! = হায়! Bravo! = সাবাস! Eh! = এঃ (ইস)! Fie! = ছি, ছি! Hallo! = ওহো! Hark! = ঐ শোনা! Hush! = চুপ! Hurrah! = কি আনন্দ! Ha! Ha! = হা-হা! Oh! = ও! Shame! = ধিক! কি লজ্জা!

1 Interjectional Phrases 1

অনেক সময় একাধিক word দিয়ে Interjectional Phrase তৈরি হয়।

Good morning! Good day! Good afternoon! Good evening! = (বিভিন্ন সময়ের স্বাগত সম্বোধন)। Good bye! = (যে কোন সময়ে বিদায় সম্বোধন)। Good night! (রাত্রিকালীন বিদায় সম্বোধন)। Good heavens! Good gracious! (হা ঈশ্বর!) For shame! = কি লজ্জা! How awful! (কি ভয়ানক!) What a mess! (কি কাণ্ড!) Well done! (বেশ করেছে)।

APPLIED SECTION

(Functional Communicative Approach)

1. Read the following passage and complete the chart given below: (নিচের অনুচ্ছেদটি পড় এবং তালিকাটি পূর্ণ কর।)

Amar goes to Mitra Institution at Bhawanipur in Calcutta. He is in Class-VIII. He goes to school by bus. He lives at Kalighat. His father, Binay Ghosh is a shop-keeper. He sells goods (মালপত্র) at his shop.

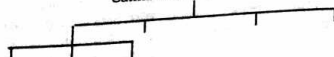
| Who (name) | What he does | Place of work/study | Lives in | How he goes |
|------------|--------------|---------------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. Amar | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| 2. | sells goods | ..... | ..... | ..... |

2. Read the following passage and make a family-tree.

(নিচের অনুচ্ছেদটি পড় এবং একটি বংশাবলি তৈরি কর।)

My name is Gopal. Samar Sen is my grandfather. My grandmother was Shantilata. She is now no more. They have four sons and daughters. They are Tapan, Tapas, Niva and Shubha. My uncle Tapan has no son. I have a brother and a sister. They are Tablu and Tumpa.

Samar Sen + Shantilata



3. Read the passage and complete the chart below:

(নিচের অনুচ্ছেদটি পড় এবং চার্টটি পূর্ণ কর।)

Atghara is a small village. There is a river beside it. To the south of the river there is a corn-field. A man is ploughing (পাশল করছে) in the field. There are some fisherman in the village. They catch fish in the river. Most of the villagers are farmers. They are very poor. But they live honestly and peacefully. How charming is the village life!

| Noun | Pro-noun | Adjec-tive | Verb | Adverb | Prepo-sition | Conjunc-tion | Inter-jection |
|-------|----------|------------|-------|--------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| | | | | | | | |

4. Now describe your village/town/city as shown above.

(উপর বোঝাবে যেখানে হয়েছে সেইভাবে জোয়ার নিজের গ্রাম বা শহরের বর্ণনা কর।)

EXERCISE

1. What are Parts of Speech? (Parts of Speech কাকে বলে?)

2. How many kinds are they? Give four examples of each kind.

(Parts of speech কয় প্রকার ও কি কি প্রত্যেক প্রকারের চারটি করে উদাহরণ দাও।)

3. Classify the following words according to the Parts of Speech and put them in the appropriate box.

(নিচের word গুলিকে Parts of Speech অনুযায়ী ভাগ করে সঠিক box-এ লেখ।)

father, mother, brother, sister, boy, girl, you, we, his, she, they, hot, cold, beautiful, ugly, kind, cruel, red, white, break, burn, ask, keep, learn, teach, stand, sleep, swim, dance, write, weave, again, ago, daily, early, often, never, always, idly, openly, surely.

| Noun | Pronoun | Verb | Adjective | Adverb |
|------|---------|------|-----------|--------|
| | | | | |

4. Classify the following Parts of Speech and put them in the appropriate box.

(নিচের Parts of Speech গুলিকে ভাগ করে সঠিক box-এ বসে।)

across at, to, or, but, and, into, through, though, if, Ah, Oh, below, under, both, else, up, over, above, Alas, Hurrah, between, among, Hallo, with, within, without, Bravo, towards, before, after, by, Fie, Hush, lest, behind, beyond, from, for, of, upon, till, on Hark, good bye.

| Preposition | Conjunction | Interjection |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| | | |

5. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate Parts of Speech given in the brackets.

(বন্ধীর মধ্যে দেওয়া Parts of Speech ভর্তির যথা সঠিক শব্দ বসিয়ে পূরণ কর।)

- (i) Reba was praised for the _____. (cruelty/honesty)
 (ii) The boy was admired for his _____. (intelligence/ intelligent)
 (iii) Vidyasagar is famous for his _____. (kind/kindness)
 (iv) Give _____ your pen (I/me)
 (v) _____ is a good exercise (swim/swimming)
 (vi) _____ is good for health (walk/walking)
 (vii) _____ good are cheap. (India/Indian)
 (viii) This curry is _____. (taste/tasteful)
 (ix) Early to bed and early to rise makes a man _____. (health/healthy)
 (x) Lipika dances very _____. (beautiful/beautifully)

6. Point out different Parts of Speech in the following sentence.

(নিচের বাক্যগুলিতে কোন শব্দ কি Parts of Speech বার কর।)

- (a) Abdul and Latif are brothers.
 (b) Delhi is a great city in northern India.
 (c) The clothes have been washed with soap.
 (d) The girl has a sweet voice.
 (e) Debkumar is the first boy in the class.
 (f) Columbus discovered America.
 (g) Solomon was famous for his wisdom.
 (h) He treats his children with great kindness.
 (i) The wind and the sun had a quarrel.
 (j) The boy showed great courage.
 (k) Our class consists of forty pupils.
 (l) The girl's hair is long and thick and full of curls.
 (m) The earth moves round the sun once in a year.
 (n) Boys sometimes act like monkeys in their play.
 (o) The stars shine through the branches of the tree.
 (p) A boy's head has less hair than a monkey's.
 (q) The days in all places are hotter than the nights.
 (r) parents must do their duty to their children.
 (s) The people who live in India are called Indians.
 (t) Without wealth there is no happiness.

7. Write in your own English:

(Use different parts of speech in the following sentences)

সূর্য পূর্ব দিকে উঠে এবং পশ্চিমদিকে অস্ত যায়। চাঁদের দিকে তাকাও। আকাশে অনেক নক্ষত্র আছে। পৃথিবী সূর্যের চারিদিকে ঘোরে। দিল্লী ভারতের রাজধানী। সুবীর আমার ভাই। সে এখনো ছুঁলে যায় না। আমরা কাপড়ের ওপর কলম দিয়ে লিখি। আমি দার্জিলিং-এর চা পছন্দ করি। এই গ্রামের জল খুব ঠাণ্ডা। জল বাতীত কেহ ঝিঁঝিঁ পড়ে না। আমরা সকালে চা পান করি। দয়া পরম ধর্ম। সত্যতাই শ্রেষ্ঠ উপায়। মোটা লোকাটি ধীরে ধীরে হাটে। মোটা কাপড়ের (coarse cloth) দাম কম।

8. Write the following passage in your own English.

এক ভদ্রলোকের দুটি ছেলে। তারা দেখতে খুব সুন্দর (handsome)। প্রথম ছেলেটির বয়স বারো বছর। সে খুব সাদাসিধে (simple)। দ্বিতীয় ছেলেটি বড় অলস (lazy)। সে লেখাপড়া করে না, কেবল ঘুমায়। তাদের একজন গৃহশিক্ষক (private tutor) আছেন। তিনি প্রত্যহ সন্ধ্যায় তাদের পড়ান। তাঁর মাসিক বেতন (salary) একশত টাকা।

CHAPTER-3

KINDS OF NOUNS

আমরা আগেই শিখেছি, **Noun is a naming word** অর্থাৎ যে word-এর মাধ্যমে কিছু নাম বোঝায় তাকে Noun বলে।
এবার Noun-এর শ্রেণীবিভাগ এবং Noun সম্বন্ধে আরো কিছু তথ্য জানতে হবে।

J.C. Nesfield shows that Nouns are of five different kinds: Proper, Common, Collective, Material and Abstract.
But Wren & Martin shows that Nouns are of four kinds: Proper, Common, Collective and Abstract.

হাইবোব, Noun- কে পাঁচ প্রকারে বিভক্ত করাই সুবিধাজনক।

1. Proper Noun (বিশেষ নাম), 2. Common Noun (জাতিবাচক নাম), 3. Collective Noun (সমষ্টিবাচক নাম), 4. Material Noun (বস্তুবাচক নাম), 5. Abstract Noun (তথ্য বা জ্ঞানবাচক নাম)।

এক দিগের Sentence-গুলি দেখ : (Proper Noun & Common Noun)

Ashoka was a nobel king.

Rita is a poor girl.

Binay is a smart boy.

Calcutta is a big city.

লক্ষ্যকর, Ashoka একজন বিশেষ রাজার নাম, কিন্তু King শব্দটি যে কোন রাজার ক্ষেত্রেই বৈধ।
পারে। Rita একটি বিশেষ মেয়ের নাম, কিন্তু girl শব্দটি যে কোন মেয়েকে বোঝাতে পারে। Binay
একটি বিশেষ ছেলের নাম, কিন্তু boy শব্দটি যে কোন বাচ্চকে বোঝাতে পারে। Calcutta এই
বিশেষ শহরের নাম, কিন্তু City শব্দটি যে কোন বড় শহরের ক্ষেত্রে বসতে পারে।

এই ভাবে বহন কোন word কোন একটি বিশেষ ব্যক্তি বা স্থানের নামকে বোঝায়, তখন তাকে
Proper Noun এবং যে word শ্রেণীবাচক বা জাতিবাচক সাধারণ নামকে বোঝায়, তাকে
Common Noun.

A Proper Noun is the name of some particular person or place.
A common Noun is a name given in common to every person or thing of the same class or kind.

—Wren & Martin

সুতরাং আমরা বলতে পারি—

Ashoka is a Proper Noun while king is a Common Noun.

Rita is a Proper Noun while girl is a Common Noun.

Binay is a Proper Noun while boy is a Common Noun.

Calcutta is a proper Noun while city is a Common Noun.

আরো লক্ষ্য কর, Proper Noun সর্বদাই Capital letter দিয়ে লেখা শুরু করতে হয়, কিন্তু
Common noun-এর ক্ষেত্রে তা হয় না।

এবার দিগের sentence-গুলি লক্ষ্য কর : (Collective Noun)

The Crowd has no discipline.

The army is formed with discipline.

Niren is the first boy in the class.

You must watch the fleet. (=a collection of armed ships)

বাক্যগুলিতে crowd (জনতা), army (সৈন্যবাহিনী), class (শ্রেণী), fleet (রণতরী) সমষ্টি
বা কলেক্টিভ Collective Noun. কারণ এগুলিতে ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুগুলিকে আলাদা আলাদাভাবে না বুঝিয়ে
কিন্তু বস্তু বা ব্যক্তি সমষ্টিতে একটি নামে বোঝাচ্ছে।

KINDS OF NOUNS

A Collective Noun denotes a group or collection of similar individuals, considered as one complete whole.

—J. C. Nesfield.

সমজাতীয় কিছু ব্যক্তি বা বিষয়ের সমষ্টিকে একটি নামে বোঝালে সেই শব্দটি Collective Noun হয়।

এবার Common Noun এর সঙ্গে Collective Noun এর পার্থক্য লক্ষ্য কর :—

There may be many sheep in a field, but there is only one flock.
Here 'sheep' is a Common Noun, because it may stand for any and every sheep, but 'flock' is a Collective Noun, because it stands for all the sheep at once.

—Nesfield.

'Sheep' বললে যে কোন একটি ছেড়াকে বোঝাতে পারে, তাই এটি Common Noun.
কিন্তু 'flock' বললে সমষ্টিগতভাবে ভেড়ার পালকে বোঝায়, তাই এটি Collective Noun.

*Note : Nesfield shows a distinction between a Collective noun and a Noun of Multitude.

(a) A Collective Noun denotes one undivided whole and hence the verb following is singular. (Collective Noun অবিভাজ্য একককে বোঝায়, তাই এর
verb-টি singular হয়।)
The jury consists of twelve persons.

(b) A Noun of Multitude denotes the individuals of the group and hence the Verb is plural, although the noun is singular. (Noun of
Multitude একটি group এর মধ্যে আলাদা আলাদা একককে বোঝায়, তাই Verb-টি plural
হয়।)

The jury (the men on the jury) were divided in their opinions.

এবার দিগের sentence-গুলি দেখ : (Material Noun)

This ring is made of gold.

This chair is made of wood.

Please give me a glass of water.

উপরের বাক্যগুলিতে 'gold', 'wood' এবং 'water' কোন পদার্থের (matter) বা বস্তুর
পদার্থের নাম বোঝাচ্ছে, তাই এগুলি Material Noun.

A Material Noun denotes the matter or substance of which things are made.

—J. C. Nesfield.

কোন বস্তু যে জিনিস দ্বারা গঠিত হয় তাকে বা বস্তুর উপাদানকে Material Noun বলে। মনে
পড়বে 'Gold' Material Noun, কিন্তু 'ring' Common Noun; 'wood' Material Noun কিন্তু 'chair' Common Noun; 'water' Material Noun কিন্তু
'glass' (গেলাস বোঝালে) Common Noun; কারণ 'ring', 'chair', 'glass', এগুলি
things of the same class or kind.

অবশ্য যদি বলা যায়—

Glass is transparent (কাচ স্বচ্ছ) তাহলে 'glass' হবে Material Noun; কারণ
এখানে 'glass' শব্দে গেলাসকে না বুঝিয়ে কাচ পদার্থকে বোঝাচ্ছে।

এইভাবে The sheep is a Common Noun, but mutton is a Material Noun.

*Note : Material Noun এর পূর্বে সাধারণতঃ কোন article বসে না। তবে
Material Noun যদি কোন নির্দিষ্ট অর্থে ব্যবহৃত হয়, তবে তার পূর্বে The বসে। যেমন— Coal is
black. (কয়লা কালো)। কিন্তু The coal of Jharia is of good quality. (ঝরিয়ার কয়লা
যদি বা বস্তুর সমষ্টিকে একটি নামে বোঝাচ্ছে।)

He drinks Water. কিন্তু The water of the Ganga is sacred.

একটি sentence-এর বিশেষ (Abstract Noun)

Honesty is the best Policy.

Beauty is truth.

Kindness is a great virtue.

He burst into laughter.

He is brave since his boyhood.

উপরের বাক্যগুলিতে 'honesty', 'beauty', 'kindness', 'laughter' boyhood শব্দগুলি কোন গুণ, কাজ বা অবস্থার নাম বোঝায়। তাই এগুলি Abstract Noun.

An Abstract Noun is usually the name of a quality, action or state considered apart from the object to which it belongs.

—Wren & Martin

Abstract Noun হলো বস্তু নির্দেশক গুণ, কাজ বা অবস্থার নাম।

Quality — goodness, kindness, hardness, brightness, honesty, beauty, bravery, wisdom etc.

Action — laughter, movement, judgment etc.

State — boyhood, childhood, youth, slavery etc.

Abstract Noun relates to qualities, states, or action which can be seen or touched.

*Note: Nesfield এর মতে Abstract Noun এমন গুণ, কাজ বা অবস্থা যা দেখা যায় না বা ধোঁয়া যায় না। তবে "can not be seen" কথাটি সর্বদা ঠিক নয়; কারণ 'movement' বা 'laughter' (হাসি) এমন কাজ যাকে ধোঁয়া যায় না, কিন্তু দেখা যায়। অবশ্য Abstract Noun সব ক্ষেত্রেই ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু নির্দেশক হবে। উদাহরণের সাহায্যে বিষয়টি পরিষ্কার হতে পারে।

We know that a stone is **hard**. We also know that iron is **hard**. We also know that a brick is **hard**. We can therefore speak of **hardness** apart from stone or iron or brick or any other object having these quality.

Abstract Nouns are formed :

(a) From Adjectives :

Kindness from kind; honesty from honest.

(b) From Verbs :

Arrival from arrive; growth from grow.

(c) From Common Nouns :

Childhood from child; slavery from slave.

*Note: The Gerunds and the Simple Infinitives of verbs are in (not in from) kinds of Abstract Nouns. The following sentences mean the same things. (Gerund এবং Infinitive আকারে এক না একই বস্তুকে Abstract Noun এর মতো। এদের অর্থেরও পার্থক্য নেই।)

Service is better than idleness. (Abstract Noun)

Serving is better than idleness (Gerund)

To serve is better than idleness (Infinitive)

Gerund/Verbal Noun

A Gerund is that form of the Verb which ends in -ing, and the force of a Noun and a verb.

—Wren & Martin

Gerund গঠিত হয় Verb + ing দিয়ে এবং এটা একই সঙ্গে Noun এবং Verb কাজ করে। এজন্য একে Double Parts of Speech বলে।

—P. C. Das

KINDS OF NOUNS

As both the Gerund and the Infinitive have the force of a Noun and a Verb, they have the same uses. Thus in many sentences either of them may be used without any special difference in meaning.

—Wren & Martin.

সমস্ত Gerund-ই আসলে Verbal Noun.

Gerund এবং Infinitive দুটোই Noun এবং Verb এর কাজ করে বলে অর্থের দিক থেকে এ দুটোর মধ্যে কোন পার্থক্য নেই।

Infinitive

Teach me to swim.

To see is to believe.

To walk is a good exercise.

Gerund

Teach me swimming.

Seeing is believing.

Walking is a good exercise.

Proper, Material and Abstract Noun used as Common Noun

There are two ways in which a Proper, Material or Abstract Noun can be used as a Common Noun :

(a) by putting an article ('a' or 'the') before it.

(b) by putting it into the plural number.

—Nesfield.

Material Noun বা Abstract Noun কে Common Noun হিসাবে ব্যবহার করা যায়।

Daniel was a learned Jew. (Proper Noun)

A Daniel has come to judgment. (Common Noun)

Scott is a great novelist. (Proper Noun)

Bamkum Chandra is the Scott of Bengal. (Common Noun)

Mango is my favourite fruit. (Material Noun)

Give me one of your mangoes. (Common Noun)

Justice is a noble quality (Abstract Noun)

He is a justice of the peace. (Common Noun)

Kindness is a great virtue. (Abstract Noun)

The kindness of Vidyasagar has become a proverb. (Common Noun)

*Note: মনে রাখবে, সাধারণতঃ Proper Noun, Material Noun এবং Abstract Noun-এর পূর্বে কোন article বসে না। কিন্তু এই রকম বিশেষ অর্থে এগুলি যখন Common-Noun হয়ে যায়, তখন article বসে।

EXERCISE

1. How many kinds are Nouns? Give four examples of each of them.

(Noun কয় প্রকার ও কি কি প্রত্যেক প্রকারের চারটি করে উদাহরণ দাও)

2. Classify the following Nouns and put them in the table below.

(নিচের Noun গুলির শ্রেণীবিভাগ করে Table -এ বসান।)

Amal, Binod, Vidyasagar, father, mother, boy, girl, Solomon, Postman, carpenter, hawker, Ramayana, Mahabharata, gold, silver, iron, army, class, crowd, fruit, player, club, bundle, stick, place, truth, wisdom, shoes, chair, table, ruler, strength, unity.

TABLE

| Proper Noun | Common Noun | Collective Noun | Material Noun | Abstract Noun |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| Amal, | boy, | army. | gold, | truth, |
| | | | | |

3. Point out the Nouns in the following sentences and say whether they are Common, Proper, Collective, Material or Abstract. (নিচের বাক্য থেকে Common, Proper, Collective, Material এবং Abstract Noun বার কর।)

- Solomon was famous for his wisdom.
- Our class consists of forty pupils.
- The elephant has great strength.
- The soldiers were rewarded for their bravery.
- Without health there is no happiness.
- He gave me a bunch of grapes.
- Cows are fond of grass as the tigers are of flesh.
- Honey is sweeter than milk.
- Cleanliness is next to godliness.
- Wisdom is better than strength.

4. (a) Form Abstract Nouns from the following Adjectives :
(নিচের Adjective তলি থেকে Abstract Noun গঠন কর।)

| | | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|----------|
| lazy | long | true | free | poor |
| cruel | strong | false | proud | wise |
| young | wide | good | novel | human |
| decent | broad | dark | modest | just |
| brave | high | deep | vacant | similar |
| bitter | short | prudent | sweet | ignorant |

(b) Form Abstract Nouns from the following Verbs :
(নিচের Verb তলি থেকে Abstract Noun গঠন কর।)

| | | | | |
|--------|---------|----------|---------|----------|
| live | act | choose | die | see |
| obey | hate | move | think | clean |
| laugh | serve | seize | advise | judge |
| know | stave | flatter | defend | pursue |
| steal | please | depart | protect | relieve |
| excel | believe | conceal | punish | converse |
| expect | occupy | preserve | succeed | discover |

(c) Form Abstract Nouns from the following Common Nouns :
(নিচের Common Noun থেকে Abstract Noun গঠন কর।)

| | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|---------|----------|
| boy | infant | author | bond | friend |
| man | woman | mother | priest | enemy |
| child | owner | agent | pirate | captain |
| king | rogue | hero | pilgrim | patriot |
| thief | regent | beggar | coward | bankrupt |

5. Apply Proper, Common, Collective, Material and Abstract Nouns in the following sentences and write them in your own English. (নিচের বাক্যগুলিতে Proper, Common, Collective, Material এবং Abstract Noun প্রয়োগ কর এবং নিজেদের ইংরেজিতে লেখ।)

আলেকজান্ডার গারগা জয় করলেন। তিনি ভারতবর্ষ আক্রমণ করলেন এবং পুন্ড্র বিজয় যুদ্ধ করে কালিদাস হলেন ভারতের হোমার। অর্ধের প্রতি লালসাই সকল অনাধারের মূল। কিন্তু অর্ধের সন্ধ্যাবহার মঙ্গল করতে পারে। প্রত্যেক ছেলে ও প্রত্যেক মেয়ে একটি করে পুরস্কার পেল। প্রত্যেক মাই সজনেকে ভালোবাসেন। সব মানুষই বুদ্ধিমান নয়। পঙ্গুর উভয় তীরে অনেক পাটকল আছে। কলকাতা নদীর তীরে অবস্থিত। আসানসোলের করলা ভালো। তেলজিৎ এভারেট জয় করেছিলেন। সত্যজিৎ উপায়। বিদ্যাসাগরের দয়া সর্বজন বিদিত।

CHAPTER-4

COUNTABLE & UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

In Modern English Grammar Nouns are broadly divided into two categories (a) Countable Noun. (b) Uncountable Noun.

আধুনিক ইংরেজি ব্যাকরণে Noun তলিকে আবার Countable এবং Uncountable এই দুই প্রধান ভাগে ভাগ করা হয়।

যে সব Noun গণনা যায় সেগুলিকে Countable Noun বলে এবং যে সব Noun গণনা যায় না, সেগুলিকে Uncountable Noun বলে।

Countable Noun সাধারণতঃ Common Noun এবং Uncountable Noun সাধারণতঃ Material Noun, Proper Noun, Collective Noun এবং Abstract Noun হয়।

*Note : অবশ্য যদি Proper Noun, Collective Noun, Material Noun বা Abstract Noun কখনো Common Noun হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়, তবে তা Countable Noun হয়। যেমন- This Window is made of glass, (uncountable). Please give me a glass of water (Countable) যাই হোক সাধারণভাবে Countable Noun বা Common Noun এর পূর্বে a, an বা the article বা determiner বসে, কিন্তু Uncountable Noun এর পূর্বে a, an বা the article বা determiner বসে না।

তাই বাক্য a boy, a book, a pen, an orange অথবা the boy, the book, the pen বা the orange প্রভৃতি Countable Noun বসে। কিন্তু বাক্য ও rice, milk, water, sugar, honesty প্রভৃতি Uncountable Noun ব্যবহার করা হয়।

অবশ্য ভোমরা পূর্বেই শিখেছ, Material Noun বা Abstract Noun-কে বিশেষভাবে নির্দিষ্ট করে বোঝালে The ব্যবহৃত হয়। যেমন— Water has no colour.

কিন্তু The Water of this tank is not pure.

Honesty is the best policy.

কিন্তু The honesty of this boy is praise-worthy.

*Note : আবার book, pen, boy ইত্যাদি Countable Noun-এর পূর্বে one, two, three, four, প্রভৃতি সংখ্যাচক শব্দ বসানো যায়, কিন্তু rice, milk, water, sugar, honesty, cruelty, kindness প্রভৃতি Uncountable Noun-এর পূর্বে কোন সংখ্যাচক শব্দ বসানো যায় না। এছাড়া অনেকগুলি অর্থে Countable Noun-এর পূর্বে many এবং অল্প কয়েকটি অর্থে a few বসে। আর অনেকটা অর্থে Uncountable Noun-এর পূর্বে much এবং অল্প একটু অর্থে a little বসে। অবশ্য Countable এবং Uncountable উভয় প্রকার Noun-এর পূর্বে কিছু অর্থে some এবং প্রচুর অর্থে a lot বসে।

এখন নিচের table-এ Countable Noun এবং Uncountable Noun তলিকে পৃথক ভাবে সাজিয়ে দেওয়া হলো।

| Countable Noun | Uncountable Noun |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A boy, a book, a pen ইত্যাদি | Rice, water, milk ইত্যাদি |
| A few, boys, a few books ইত্যাদি | A little rice, a little water ইত্যাদি |
| Many boys, many books ইত্যাদি | Much rice, much water ইত্যাদি |
| Some boys, some books ইত্যাদি | Some rice, some water ইত্যাদি |
| A lot of boys, a lot of books ইত্যাদি | A lot of rice, a lot of water ইত্যাদি |

এরপা আবার কিছু Countable Noun এবং Uncountable Noun-এর ব্যবহার লক্ষ্য কর।

Many men, many women many girls, many cows, many chairs, many pictures ইত্যাদি।

আবার, Much butter, much sugar, much salt, much tea, much honey, much money.

***Note:** বিশেষভাবে 'much money' কথাটির প্রয়োগ লক্ষ্য কর। money-এর অর্থ টাকা পরস্যা; এখন সাধারণভাবে তোমাদের যেন হতে পারে টাকা পরস্যা তো পোনা যায়। অর্থ টাকা পরস্যা; এখন সাধারণভাবে তোমাদের যেন হতে পারে টাকা পরস্যা তো পোনা যায়। অর্থ টাকা পরস্যা; এখন সাধারণভাবে তোমাদের যেন হতে পারে টাকা পরস্যা তো পোনা যায়।

***Note:** এটি বিজ্ঞানীর সময় countable এবং uncountable উভয় ক্ষেত্রেই

এক উভয় সময় some বা a lot of ব্যবহার করা।

Q Is there any water in the glass?

Ans. Yes, there is some.

Q Is there any book in the almirah?

Ans. Yes, there is a lot of books.

আরো একটি কথা, যদি Uncountable Noun-এর পূর্বে একটি Countable Noun বসানো হয়, সেক্ষেত্রে a, an, the অথবা many, a few, one, two, three এবং সংখ্যাচক শব্দ বসানো হয়।

যেমন—A kilo of rice, a cup of tea, the cup of tea, a few cups of tea, many cups of tea ইত্যাদি। লক্ষ্য কর, tea, milk, rice ইত্যাদি Uncountable Noun হলেও তার পূর্বে cup, glass বা kilo ইত্যাদি Countable Noun থাকলে a, an, the, few, many, one, two, three ইত্যাদি বসানো যায়।

আবার Proper Noun, Material Noun, Collective Noun এবং Abstract Noun যদি Common Noun হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়, তখন এগুলি Countable Noun হয়ে যায়।

(i) The Boses are highly cultured. (ii) Africa is a country with many woods. (iii) The navies of America are powerful. (iv) She has many virtues.

List of Uncountable Nouns used as countable :

Material Noun-এর পূর্বে সাধারণত : সংখ্যাচক শব্দ বসে না। যেমন, আমরা 'চারটি দুধ' বলতে পারি না। কিন্তু এর পূর্বে একটি Countable Noun যোগ করে আমরা সংখ্যাচক শব্দ বসাতে পারি। আমরা বলতে পারি 'চার বোতল দুধ' four bottles of milk.

Article/Number + Countable + of + Uncountable

| | | | | |
|-----------|---------|----|-------------|--------------------|
| A | bag | of | sugar | এক ব্যাগ চিনি |
| Two | bags | of | sugar | দু ব্যাগ চিনি |
| Many | bags | of | sugar | বহু ব্যাগ চিনি |
| Many more | bags | of | sugar | আরো বহু ব্যাগ চিনি |
| A few | bags | of | sugar | কয়েক ব্যাগ চিনি |
| Many | packets | of | Salt | অনেক প্যাকেট নুন |
| A few | boxes | of | bread | কয়েক বাক্স রুটি |
| Several | bottles | of | honey | কয়েক বোতল মধু |
| Two | tons | of | coal | দু টন কয়লা |
| Three | pieces | of | bread | তিনখন্ড রুটি |
| Four | kilos | of | flour | চার কিলো ময়দা |
| Five | liters | of | petrol | পাঁচ লিটার পেট্রল |
| Six | bottles | of | milk | ছয় বোতল দুধ |
| Seven | bales | of | cotton | সাত গাট তুলো |
| Eight | phials | of | medicine | আট শিশি ওষুধ |
| Nine | boxes | of | milk powder | নয় বাক্স শুকো দুধ |
| Ten | wagons | of | lime stone | দশ ওয়গন চুনাপাথর |

When full is added to a Countable Noun, it becomes ful. (Countable Noun-এর সাথে 'full'-যোগ করলে 'ful' হয়ে যায়।)

Article/Number + Countable + of + Uncountable

| | | | | |
|-------|-----------|----|--------|-----------------|
| A | bagful | of | sweets | এক ব্যাগ মিষ্টি |
| A | spoonful | of | sugar | এক চামচ চিনি |
| Three | spoonfuls | of | salt | তিন চামচ নুন |

Countable Nouns forming a Collective Noun :

| | | | | |
|---|------------|----|------------|------------------------------|
| A | batch | of | students | একদল ছাত্র |
| A | troop | of | soldiers | এক দল সৈন্য |
| A | gang | of | robbers | এক দল ডাকাত |
| A | band | of | pilgrims | ভীর্থ যাত্রীর দল |
| A | board | of | directors | ডাইরেক্টরদের বোর্ড |
| A | bundle | of | pencils | এক বাঁধ পেন্সিল |
| A | flock | of | birds | এক ঝাঁক পাখি |
| A | heap | of | files | কাইলের তুণ |
| A | pile | of | books | একপাদা বই |
| A | crowd | of | passengers | যাত্রীদের ভিড় |
| A | bunch | of | keys | চাবির গোছ |
| A | swarm | of | bees | এক ঝাঁক মৌমাছি |
| A | shoal | of | fish | মাছের ঝাঁক |
| A | pack | of | hounds | শিকারী কুকুরের দল |
| A | herd | of | cows | এক পাল গোরু |
| A | collection | of | rare books | দুশ্পাণ্য বইয়ের সংগ্রহ |
| A | cluster | of | words | শব্দ সমষ্টি |
| A | gathering | of | people | জন সমাবেশ |
| A | squad | of | homeguards | হোমগার্ডের দল |
| A | galaxy | of | talents | প্রতিভাবানদের উজ্জ্বল সমাবেশ |

APPLIED SECTION

(Functional Communicative Approach)

1. Uncountable (Mass) Nouns

Is there any sugar in the pot?

No, there is not much sugar in the pot.

Yes, there is some sugar in the pot/Yes, there is some.

Yes, there is a lot of sugar in the pot/Yes, there is a lot.

Now write five sentences in the same way.

Q. Is there any..... ?

Ans. Yes,

Q. ?

Ans. No,

Q. ?

Ans. Yes,

Q. ?

Ans. No,

Q. ?

Ans. Yes.

2. Countable Nouns :

How many seasons are there in West Bengal?
There are six seasons in West Bengal.

Now write some other sentences in the same way.

Q. How many ?

Ans. ?

Q. How many ?

Ans. ?

Q. How many ?

Ans. ?

3. Uncountable Nouns used as countables :

I want two teaspoonfuls of sugar in my cup of tea.

Here is a bottle of sugar. Take as much as you need.

Now fill up the blanks :

- (i) Give me _____ slice of bread and _____ glass of water.
- (ii) There are six _____ of milk.
- (iii) We want many more _____ of tea.
- (iv) Please give me _____ cupfuls of boiled water.
- (v) _____ squads of homeguards are on duty.
- (vi) Here is a _____ of cotton (এক গুটি তুলে)
- (vii) There is a _____ of passengers.
- (viii) We had a _____ of talents in the nineteenth century.

4. Use of 'a lot of' & 'a great deal of' :

'a lot of' replaces much and many. But 'a great deal of' replaces much only. [much এবং many উভয়ের ক্ষেত্রে a lot of বসে। কিন্তু শুধুমাত্র much-এর পরিবর্তে a great deal বসতে পারে।]

I have a lot of mangoes. I have a lot of milk. But, she took a great deal of (much) trouble to please us.

EXERCISE

1. What are countable and uncountable Nouns? Give some examples of each kind. (Countable Noun এবং Uncountable Noun বলতে কি বোঝে? প্রত্যেক প্রকারের কয়েকটি উদাহরণ দাও।)

2. Give separate uses of 'a few', 'a little', 'many' and 'much'.

(A few, a little, many এবং much-এর পৃথক পৃথক প্রয়োগ দেখাও।)

3. Make ten sentences with the use of 'some' and 'a lot of'.

(Some এবং a lot of প্রয়োগ করে দশটি বাক্য গঠন কর।)

4. Fill in the blanks with appropriate words.

(উপযুক্ত শব্দ বসিয়ে শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর।)

- (a) Mother gives him _____ milk (a few/a little)
- (b) Rabi takes _____ oranges (a little/a few)
- (c) I have _____ books (much/many)
- (d) Raju has _____ pens (a few / a little)
- (e) Kamal eats _____ rice (much/many)
- (f) There is _____ money in the purse (much/many)
- (g) They have _____ wheat in the granary. (much/many)
- (h) Give him _____ sweets (a few/a little)

5. Make sentences from the following tables.

(নিচের টেবিলগুলি থেকে বাক্য গঠন কর।)

| | | |
|-----------------------|----------|------------|
| (a) | | |
| I want | a few | milk |
| He wants | a little | sugar |
| They want | much | salt |
| Mr. Roy wants | many | books |
| Samir and Dipak want | a lot of | chairs |
| The naughty boy wants | a | orange |
| The greedy man wants | an | banana |
| (b) | | |
| Is there | any | milk? |
| | many | boys? |
| Are there | much | sugar? |
| | some | rice? |
| | a lot of | wheat? |
| (c) | | |
| How much | money | is there? |
| | pens | |
| | water | |
| How many | boys | are there? |
| | milk | |
| | books | |

6. Apply the Countable and Uncountable Nouns in the following sentences and write them in your own English. (নিচের বাক্যগুলিতে Countable এবং Uncountable Noun সঠিক প্রয়োগ কর এবং নিজের ইচ্ছাক্রমে লেখ) :

আমাদের স্কুলে অনেক ছাত্র আছে। স্কুলে তিরিশজন শিক্ষক আছেন। বিদ্যালয়তরানে অনেকগুলি কক্ষ আছে। লাইব্রেরীতে অনেক বই আছে। আমি সেখানে কিছু কিছু বই পড়ি। লোহা একটি প্রয়োজনীয় ধাতু। তিন রকমের লোহা আছে—কাঁচ আয়রন, রট (wrought) আয়রন এবং স্টিল।

7. Add 'ful' with the countable Nouns and write in your own English :

আমার চায়ে দুটামট চিনি দাও। এখানে তিন ব্যাগ চিনি আছে। রামবাবু পাঁচ প্যাকেট তুঁড়া দুধ কিনেছেন। আমাকে তিন পিচ রুটি দাও। বেলাইয়ার্তে দশ ওয়ান চুনা পাথর আছে। আমার তিন টন কয়লা দরকার। এক ঝাঁক পাখি (flock of birds) উড়ে গেল। স্টেশনে যাত্রীদের ভিড়ে তাকে বুঁজে পাওয়া গেল না। একদল সৈন্য মার্চ করতে করতে চলে গেল। খেলার মাঠে একদল ছাত্রের সঙ্গে দেখা হল।

CHAPTER-5

THE NOUN : NUMBER

The Countable Nouns have two forms :

Singular and Plural.

Countable Noun-এর দুটি রূপ : একক ও বহুবচন।

| | | | |
|------------|---------|----------|----------|
| { Boy | { Box | { Baby | { Knife |
| { Boys | { Boxes | { Babies | { Knives |
| { Child | { Ox | { Man | |
| { Children | { Oxen | { Men | |

The first word of each pair denotes one and the second word of each pair denotes more than one.

পদযুগলের প্রথমটিতে একটি এবং দ্বিতীয়টিতে একাধিক বোঝাচ্ছে। এই ধরনের ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু সংখ্যাকে Number বা বচন বলে। বাংলায় বচন দুইরকমের—একক ও বহুবচন।

ইংরেজিতে Number দুইরকমের — Singular Number ও Plural Number.

When one person or thing is spoken of, the noun is singular and when more than one person or thing is spoken of, the noun is plural.

—Nesfield

যখন একজন ব্যক্তি বা একটি বস্তু বোঝায় তখন noun-টি Singular Number হয়। যেমন—A boy, a book, a man ইত্যাদি। আর যখন একাধিক ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু বোঝায় তখন noun-টি Plural Number হয়। যেমন—Boys, books, men ইত্যাদি।

**মনে রাখবে, সাধারণভাবে Noun-এর Number পরিবর্তন হয় বলা হলেও Boy, Book, Brother প্রভৃতি Common Noun এবং Class, Army প্রভৃতি Collective Noun-এর Number পরিবর্তন হয়। কিন্তু Calcutta, Delhi প্রভৃতি Proper Noun, Oil, Rice প্রভৃতি Material Noun এবং Honesty, Kindness প্রভৃতি Abstract Noun-এর কোন Number পরিবর্তন হয় না।

How Plurals are Formed

1. The Plural of Nouns is generally formed by adding -s to the singular. (সাধারণতঃ Singular Noun-এর শেষে s যোগ করে Plural Number করা হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|--------|----------|--------|
| Book | Books | Pen | Pens |
| Desk | Desks | Chair | Chairs |
| Cat | Cats | Table | Tables |
| Cow | Cows | House | Houses |
| Dog | Dogs | Eye | Eyes |
| Lion | Lions | Ear | Ears |
| King | Kings | Hand | Hands |
| Girl | Girls | Head | Heads |

2. Nouns ending in -s, -sh, -ch (soft), or -x form the Plural by adding -es to the singular : (Noun-এর শেষে s, sh, ch (হালকা), x থাকলে es যোগ করে Plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| Ass | Asses | Box | Boxes |
| Gas | Gases | Fox | Foxes |
| Glass | Glasses | Kiss | Kisses |
| Lass | Classes | Inch | Inches |
| Bush | Bushes | Bench | Benches |
| Brush | Brushes | Branch | Branches |
| Dish | Dishes | Bunch | Bunches |
| | | Church | Churches |

*Note : If 'ch' sounds as 'k', Plural is formed by adding -s : (ch-এর উচ্চারণ 'ক'-এর মতো হলে Noun-এর শেষে শুধু s যোগ করে Plural হয়।)

Singular

Monarch—(মনার্ক)

Stomach—(ষ্টম্যাক)

Plural

Monarchs—(মনার্ক)

Stomachs—(ষ্টম্যাকস)

3. Nouns ending in -o having a Vowel before it take -s to form plural : (Noun-এর শেষে o এবং তার পূর্বে একটি Vowel থাকলে -s যোগ করে Plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|---------|----------|---------|
| Bamboo | Bamboos | Radio | Radios |
| Cuckoo | Cuckoos | Studio | Studios |
| Hindoo | Hindoos | Folio | Folios |

4. Nouns ending in -o having a Consonant before it, take -es to form plural : (Noun-এর শেষে o এবং তার পূর্বে Consonant থাকলে -es যোগ করে Plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|-----------|----------|------------|
| Hero | Heroes | Echo | Echoes |
| Zero | Zeros | Mosquito | Mosquitoes |
| Negro | Negroes | Mango | Mangoes |
| Buffalo | Buffaloes | Potato | Potatoes |

Some exceptions : (কিছু ব্যতিক্রম)

| | | | |
|--------|---------|--------|----------|
| Dynamo | Dynamos | Photo | Photos |
| Piano | Pianos | Quarto | Quartos. |

5. Nouns ending in -y having a Vowel before it form their plurals by adding -s : (Noun-এর শেষে y এবং তার পূর্বে Vowel থাকলে s যোগ করে Plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|---------|----------|---------|
| Boy | Boys | Day | Days |
| Toy | Toys | Play | Plays |
| Key | Keys | Ray | Rays |
| Monkey | Monkeys | Donkey | Donkeys |

6. Nouns ending in -y having a Consonant before it, form their plural by changing -y into i and adding -es : (Noun-এর শেষে y এবং y এর পূর্বে Consonant থাকলে y পরিবর্তিত হয়ে i হয় এবং es যোগ হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|-----------|----------|---------|
| Army | Armies | Copy | Copies |
| Baby | Babies | Duty | Duties |
| Body | Bodies | Fly | Flies |
| City | Cities | Lady | Ladies |
| Country | Countries | Story | Stories |

7. Nouns ending in -f or -fe form their plural by changing f or fe into v and adding -es : (Noun-এর শেষে f বা fe থাকলে f বা fe স্থানে ves যোগ করে Plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|----------------|----------|---------|
| Calf | Calves | Self | Selves |
| Half | Halves | Shelf | Shelves |
| Knife | Knives (নাইভস) | Sheaf | Sheaves |
| Life | Lives (লাইভস) | Thief | Thieves |
| Leaf | Leaves | Wife | Wives |
| Loaf | Loaves | Wolf | Wolves |

8. Several Nouns ending in *f* form their Plurals by adding *ves* (কয়েকটি Noun-এর শেষে *f* থাকলেও তথ্য *s* যোগ করে Plural হয়)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|---------|----------|--------|
| Chief | Chiefs | Gulf | Gulfs |
| Cliff | Cliffs | Hoof | Hoofs |
| Brief | Briefs | Proof | Proofs |
| Belief | Beliefs | Roof | Roofs |

9. Some Nouns form their plural by changing the inside vowel of the Singular : (কয়েকটি Noun-এর plural করার সময় শব্দের ভিতরের Vowel পরিবর্তন করে হয়)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|-----------|-----------|----------|--------|
| Man | Men | Foot | Feet |
| Woman | Women | Tooth | Teeth |
| Gentleman | Gentlemen | Goose | Geese |

10. A few Nouns form their plural by changing the inside vowel of the consonant of the singular : (কয়েকটি Noun-এর Plural করার সময় ভিতরের Vowel এবং Consonant পরিবর্তন করে হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|--------|----------|--------|
| Mouse | Mice | Louse | Lice |

11. A few Nouns form their Plural by adding *-en* to the Singular (কয়েকটি Noun-এর Plural করার সময় *en* যোগ করতে হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Ox | Oxen | Child | Children |
| Brother | Brethren | | |

12. Compound Nouns generally form their plural by adding *s* to the principal word or by changing inside vowel of the principal word (compound Noun-এর প্রধান Word-এর শেষে *s* যোগ করে অথবা প্রধান word-এর Vowel পরিবর্তন করে plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Son-in-law | Sons-in-law | Maid-servant | Maid-servants |
| Daughter-in-law | Daughters-in-law | Step-son | Step-sons |
| Father-in-law | Fathers-in-law | Step-daughter | Step-daughters |
| Mother-in-law | Mothers-in-law | Looker-on | Lookers-on |
| Man-of-war | Men-of-war | Passer-by | Passer-bys |
| Commander | Commanders | Washer-man | Washer-men |
| in-Chief | -in-Chief | | |
| Grand-in-aid | Grants-in aid | [But, Grown-up] | Grown-ups |

13. Compound Nouns written *without hyphen* take *'s* to form plural : (Compound Noun *hyphen* ছাড়া যুক্ত না হলে *s* যোগ করে Plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| Armchair | Armchairs | Handful | Handfuls |
| Bookcase | Bookcases | Bagful | Bagfuls |
| Pickpocket | Pickpockets | Spoonful | Spoonfuls |

14. There are some compound Nouns which take a double plural (কয়েকটি Compound Noun-এর Double plural হয়।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| Man-servant | Men-servants | Lord-justice | Lords-justices |
| Woman-servant | Women-servants | Knight-templar | Knights-templars |

15. Some Typical Examples of Plurals : (কয়েকটি বিশেষ ধরনের Plural-এর উদাহরণ)

Foreign Plurals :

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|------------|-----------------------|------------|-------------|
| Agendum | Agenda | Formula | Formulae |
| Addendum | Addenda | | (Formulas) |
| Appendix | Appendices | Forum | Fora/Forums |
| Axis | Axes | Genus | Genera |
| Basis | Bases | Hypothesis | Hypotheses |
| Bureau | Bureaux | Medium | Media |
| Corpus | Corporal / Corporuses | Memorandum | Memoranda |
| Crisis | Crises | Oasis | Oases |
| Criterion | Criteria | Ovum | Ova |
| Curriculum | Curricula | Phenomenon | Phenomena |
| Datum | Data | Radius | Radii |
| Dictum | Dicta | Syllabus | Syllabi |
| Erratum | Errata | Symposium | Symposia |
| Focus | foci/focuses | Terminus | Termini |
| | | Vertex | Vertices |

16. Nouns having different meanings in different numbers (Noun-এর ভিন্ন ভিন্ন অর্থ আলাদা হয়।)

| Singular | Plural |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Advice—counsel, উপদেশ | Advices—information, সংবাদ |
| Air—wind, বায়ু | Airs—manners, চালচলন |
| Force—শক্তি | Forces—সৈন্যবাহিনী |
| Good—benefit, well-being উপকার | Goods—things, মালপত্র |
| Iron—a kind of metal, লৌহ | Irons—chains made of iron, লৌহ শৃঙ্খল |
| Physic—medicine, ঔষধ | Physics—Physical science, পদার্থবিদ্যা |
| Return—coming back, ফিরে আসা | Return—accounts, হিসাবপত্র |
| Sand—a kind of matter, বালি | Sands—desert, মরুভূমি |
| Wood—timber, কাঠ | Woods—forest, অরণ্য |

17. Nouns with two plural forms of different meanings (দুইরকম Plural form-এ দুইরকম অর্থ হয়।)

| Singular | Plural |
|----------|---|
| Brother | { Brothers—sons of same parents Brethren—members of the same society |
| Cloth | { Cloths—Pieces of cloth Clothes—garments |
| Fish | { Fish—Collectively fish Fishes—fishes of different types |
| Genius | { Geniuses—men of talent Genti—spirits |

18. Noun with one meaning in the Singular but two in the Plural (Singular-এ একরকম অর্থ, Plural-এ দুইরকম অর্থ।)

| Singular | Plural | Meaning |
|------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| Arm—part of body | Arms | { 1. parts of the body 2. weapons |

| Singular | Plural | Meaning |
|-------------------------------|------------|--|
| Colour—hue | Colours | 1. hues 2. flag |
| Custom—habit | Customs | 1. habits 2. revenue duties |
| Manner—method | Manners | 1. methods 2. behaviour |
| Minute—1/60th part of an hour | Minutes | 1/60 th parts of an hour 2. proceedings of a meeting |
| Part—portion | Parts | 1. portions 2. skill |
| Pain—suffering | Pains | 1. sufferings 2. care take pains = take care |
| Premise—proposition | Premises | 1. propositions 2. buildings |
| Quarter—fourth part | Quarters | 1. fourth parts 2. lodgings |
| Spectacle—a sight | Spectacles | 1. sights 2. eye-glasses. |

19. Some Nouns have the Singular and the Plural alike

(কোনকিছু Noun Singular এবং Plural-এ একইরকম থাকে।)

| Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
|----------|--------|----------|---------------------------|
| Deer | Deer | Dozen | Dozen (Five Dozen) |
| Sheep | Sheep | Score | Score (Four score) |
| Piece | Piece | Hundred | Hundred (Two hundred) |
| Public | Public | Thousand | Thousand (Three thousand) |

The public is the best judge/are the best judges—POD & COD.

***Note:** অবশ্য Hundreds of students (শত শত ছাত্র), Thousands of people (হাজার হাজার লোক) এরূপ প্রয়োগ হয়।

20. Some Collective Nouns or Group Nouns are singular in form, but are used as Plural.

(কতকগুলি Noun আকারে Singular, কিন্তু ব্যবহারে Plural)

Cattle—These cattle are mine.

Folk—The old folk have gone.

Swine—These swine must be kept out of the garden.

Poultry—Whose are these poultry?

People—These people have returned home.

Police—The police are watching the house.

[But] The policeman is watching the house.

Vermin—Vermin destroy our property and carry disease.

21. Some Nouns are used only in the Singular. They may be used in the Plural in some special sense (কতকগুলি Noun কেবল Singular হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়। অবশ্য কিছু বিশেষ ক্ষেত্রে Plural-এ ব্যবহৃত হয়।)

Abuse—He gave me much abuse (গোলাগালি) for no fault.

Alphabet—He learnt the alphabet (বর্ণমালা) before he could read.

Furniture—His house is full of good furniture (furnitures নয়)

Information—He gave me all the information. (Informations নয়)

Issue—He had no issue (child or children) [issue = সন্তান]

Offspring—These four children are his offspring.

Poetry—He wrote very good poetry. /Poetry is my favourite subject.
Scenery—These hills are lovely scenery. /The scenery of Darjeeling is imposing.

***Note:** When 'abuse' is used in the sense of 'wrong use' the plural is 'abuses'. When more than one language is spoken of the plural of 'alphabet' is 'alphabets'. When 'issue' means result, its plural is 'issues.'

22. Nouns Plural in form but Singular in use.

(কতকগুলি Noun আকারে Plural কিন্তু ব্যবহারে Singular)

Gallows (উল্লিখকাজ), News, Physics, Ethics, Politics, Statistics, Economics, Athletics, Gymnastics etc.

News—What is the news?

Mathematics—Mathematics is his favourite subject.

Statistics—Statistics is a difficult subject. But, "These statistics are rather complicated. (=these figures)".—Oxford Guide to English Grammar—John Eastwood.

23. Some Nouns are always Plural:

(কতকগুলি Noun সর্বদাই Plural, এদের Singular হয় না।)

(a) Name of such instruments having two parts of **Pair Nouns**:
(দুটি অংশ নিয়েই তৈরী এমন যন্ত্রের নাম বা Pair Noun—গুলি সর্বদা Plural হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়।)

Bellows (হাণ্ডার), Scissors (কাঁচি), Glasses/Spectacles (চশমা)

Your new glasses/ spectacles are very nice.

(b) Names of certain articles of dress:

(Trousers, drawers, breeches (দু-পা বিশিষ্ট পোষাক))

These shorts are nice. These trousers need cleaning.

(c) Names of diseases- (রোগের নাম)

Measles mumps (কিন্তু Smallpox একটি singular noun.)

Small-pox has broken out there.

(d) Names of games: Billiards Plural according to Wren & Martin.

***Note:** According to 'Oxford Guide to English Grammar' by John Eastwood, 'billiards' (like the news, gymnastics etc.) is plural in form but takes a singular verb.]

(e) Certain other Nouns (আরো কিছু Plural Noun)

Ashes (ছাই), alms (ভিক্ষা), assets (সম্পত্তি), annals (ইতিহাস), fetters (পদশৃঙ্খল), proceed (ফল), Aborgins (আদিম অধিবাসী), thanks, tidings, vegetables, belongings, goods, clothes, congratulations, earnings, particulars, (= details), premises (= buildings), riches (= wealth), surroundings.

Usage: The goods were found to be defective.

My belongings have destroyed by fire. (not, my belonging).

***Note:** Letters, figures and other symbols are made plural by adding an apostrophe and s:

(বর্ণ, সংখ্যা বা প্রতীককে Plural করতে হলে এপস্ট্রফি s বসাতে হয়।)

Dot your i's and cut your t's Add two 5's and three 2's.

24. An uncountable Noun takes a Singular Verb.

(সংখ্যার সাহায্যে গেনা যায় না, এমন uncountable Noun-এর পর Singular Verb বসে।)

The grass is getting long. His hair is grey. (hairs নয়)

APPLIED SECTION

1. Change the subject into singular with other necessary changes in the following sentences. (নিচের বাক্যগুলির Subject-কে Singular করে প্রয়োজনীয় অন্যান্য পরিবর্তন কর।)

- These oranges are very sweet.
- Those mangoes are not ripe.
- Three boys were present yesterday.
- Good children are liked by all.
- There are ten benches in this room.
- The windows facing the street are broken.
- The thieves were arrested last night.

2. Change the subject into Plural with other necessary changes.

(Subject-কে Plural করে প্রয়োজনীয় অন্যান্য পরিবর্তন কর।)

- The boy is playing in the playground.
- The girl is dancing gracefully.
- A bird is singing on the tree.
- The owl sleeps in the day-time.
- A bad boy hides his faults.
- The book was on the table.
- The shop was closed yesterday.

3. This is a daily routine of a boy.

The boy gets up at six in the morning. He washes his hands and face and cleans his teeth. He takes his breakfast with his parents. Then he reads up to 9 a.m. Then he has his bath. After lunch he starts for school at 10 a.m. He returns home at 4 p.m. and then he takes some tiffin and goes to the playground. Coming back home at 6 p.m. he reads his lessons attentively. He takes his dinner at 10 p.m. and then goes to bed.

Make the above daily routine of the boy for 'the boys'.

PRONOUNCIATION NOTE

Noun-এর Singular number থেকে Plural number করার সময় যখন -s, -es বা m যোগ হয়, তখন তার সঠিক উচ্চারণ সম্পর্কে H. A. Gleason-এর *An Introduction to Descriptive Linguistics* এ নিম্নের তথ্যগুলো দেওয়া হয়েছে:

Noun-এর শেষের k, p, t, f থাকলে Plural number-এ -s যোগ হয়, তার উচ্চারণ হয় (s)।

book—books (বুক্‌স্‌)

cat—(ক্যাট্‌স্‌)

cup—cups (ক্যাপ্‌স্‌)

chief—chiefs (চীফ্‌স্‌)

Noun-এর শেষের b, d, g, l, m, n, r, e, y, w, h থাকলে Plural number-এ -es যোগ হয়, তার উচ্চারণ হয় (z)।

cub—cubs (ক্যুব্‌স্‌)

arm—arms (আর্ম্‌স্‌)

baby—babies (বেইবীজ্‌)

hand—hands (হ্যান্ড্‌স্‌)

lion—lions (লায়ন্‌স্‌)

elbow—elbows (এলবোজ্‌)

dog—dogs (ডগ্‌স্‌)

brother—brothers (ব্রদারজ্‌)

girl—girls (গার্ল্‌স্‌)

bee—bees (বীজ্‌স্‌)

path—paths (পাথ্‌স্‌)

almirah—almirahs (আলমিরাহ্‌স্‌)

Noun-এর শেষের 'th'-এর উচ্চারণ 'থ' হলে Plural number-এ -s (স্‌) হয়। কিন্তু 'path'-এর মতো কয়েকটি শব্দ -s-এর উচ্চারণ 'থ' (z) হয়।

THE NOUN : NUMBER

55

- Noun-এর শেষের s, ch (স্‌) বা z sound থাকলে Plural number-এ -s বা -es যোগ হয়, তার উচ্চারণ হয় ইজ (Iz)।
glass—glasses (গ্লাসিজ্‌) which—witches (উইচিজ্‌)
house (হাউস্‌)—houses (হাউজিজ্‌) badge (ব্যাড্‌জ্‌)—badges (ব্যাড্‌জিজ্‌)
- Noun-এর Plural number-এ -en থাকলে উচ্চারণ হয় ইন (in)।
Ox—oxen (অক্সেন্‌) child—children (চিলড্রেন্‌)
brother—brethren (ব্রিথ্রেন্‌)

সংক্ষেপে বলা যায়, Plural number-এ -s যোগ হলে উচ্চারণ কখনো 'স' কখনো 'জ' হয় : -es যোগ হলে সর্বদাই 'ইজ' হয় এবং -en যোগ হলে সর্বদাই 'ইন' হয়।

EXERCISE

1. How many kinds of number are there in English? What are they? Give some examples. (ইংরেজিতে Number কয় প্রকার ও কি কি কয়েকটি উদাহরণ দাও।)

2. Change the number of the following Nouns.

(নিচের Noun-গুলির Number পরিবর্তন কর।)

Boy, Bus, Comb, City, Country, Fool, Foot, Tooth, Eye, Ear, Baby, Thief, Knife, Life, Man, Woman, Fisherman, Gentleman, Calf, Roof, Hero, Radio, Bamboo, Body, Leaf, Chief, Child, Mouse, Son-in-law, Step-brother, Man-servant, Passer-by, Sheep, Railway, Valley, Volcano.

3. Give some examples having different meaning in Singular and in Plural. (Singular Number এবং Plural Number-এ বিভিন্ন অর্থ হয়, এরূপ কয়েকটি Noun-এর উদাহরণ দাও।)

4. Give some examples of Nouns having two meanings in the Plural. (Plural Number-এ দুইকর্ম অর্থ হয়, এরূপ কয়েকটি উদাহরণ দাও।)

5. Give some examples which are same in form in Singular and in Plural. (Singular এবং Plural-এ কোন পরিবর্তন হয় না এরূপ কয়েকটি উদাহরণ দাও।)

6. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word given in the bracket.

(বন্ধনীর মধ্যে প্রদত্ত শব্দগুলির মধ্য থেকে সঠিক word নির্বাচন করে পূরণ কর।)

- The.....are reading. (child, children)
- That.....is singing. (woman, women)
- Ratan's.....are white. (tooth, teeth)
- These.....are playing. (boy, boys)
- The.....are grazing (deer, deers)
- Give me ten.....(pice, pices)

7. Apply the rules of Number and write in your own English.

(a) হেমেনটির অনেকগুলি বই আছে, কিন্তু কয়েকটি খারাপ কলম আছে। মেলা (fair) থেকে সে এক টুকরা ছবি কিনেছিল। কিন্তু যখন সে বাড়ী ফিরেছিল, তখন কতকগুলি বামন তাকে তাড়া (chase) করেছিল। বাড়ী ফিরে সে একটি গরুর-বই পড়েছিল। বইটির নাম—'দুই পহরের গল্প'। বাবা কখনো, 'জীবনীটা শুধু আনন্দ পূর্ণ নয়, জীবনে অনেক কষ্টও আছে।'

(b) চিড়িয়াখানার ভিড়শোয়া হরিণ আছে। ঐ মেঘগুলি অক্টোপিয়া থেকে আসা হয়েছিল। একশো পরগায় এক টাকা হয়। এই গুরুদ্বিগতগুলি আমাদের সম্পত্তি। নিজেদের থেকে নির্ধারিত করার অধিকার জনগণ (people) আছে। আমার হেন্স তথ্য (information) প্রয়োজন তা সবই তুমি দিবে। বস্ত্রী আসবাবপত্র (furniture) মাসা। দুইতাকালে তাঁর কোন সমস্যা-সমস্যা (issue) ছিল না। দাসত্বের (slavery) শৃঙ্খল কোন সকলেরই নেই। ডোয়ার 'আই' অকস্মিকভাবে দুইটি বসন্ত এক 'টি' অকস্মিকভাবে মারা গেলো।

CHAPTER-6 THE NOUN : GENDER

What in nature is called the difference of sex is in grammar called the difference of Gender. —Nesfield.

Boy Girl Lion Lioness Hero Heroine Boy-friend Girl-friend
The first word of each pair denotes the name of a male animal and the second word of each pair denotes the name of a female animal.

A noun that denotes a male animal is said to be of the Masculine Gender.

Noun **पुरुष** है Masculine Gender व पुरुष है।

Boy, Lion, Hero, Boy-friend.

A noun that denotes a female animal is said to be of the Feminine Gender.

Noun **स्त्री** है Feminine Gender व स्त्री है।

Girl, Lioness, Heroine, Girl-friend.

A Noun that denotes either a male or a female is said to be of the Common Gender.

Noun **पुरुष** व **स्त्री** दोनों के लिये Common Gender है।

Parent, child, baby, infant, friend, people, servant, thief, enemy, cousin, orphan, student, doctor, teacher, month, neighbour etc.

A noun that denotes things without life is said to be of Neuter Gender.

Noun **जीवित** (जड़) पदार्थों के लिये Neuter Gender है।

Book, pen, chair, table, room, gold, silver, iron, knife, shirt, coat etc.

These are lifeless or Neuter Gender.

Therefore, there are four kinds of Gender (Gender इन प्रकार)

- (1) Nouns denoting male animals: Masculine
- (2) Nouns denoting female animals: Feminine
- (3) Nouns denoting animals of either sex: Common
- (4) Nouns denoting things without life: Neuter

Generally there are four rules for changing Masculine Genders of nouns into Feminine Genders : (Masculine Gender-ए Noun-के Feminine Gender-ए परिवर्तन करने के लिये चार नियम हैं।)

(a) By using different words (नouns word-ए बदलने।)

| Masculine | Feminine | Masculine | Feminine |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| Father | mother | Bully | madam |
| Brother | sister | Bull | cow |
| Uncle | aunt (अंक) | Dog | bitch |
| Nephew | niece (निय) | Fox | vixen |
| Husband | wife | Horse | mare |
| Man | woman | Boat | sow |
| Male | female | Boat | doe |
| Gen's man | lady | Drake | duck |
| Lord | lady | Drone | bee |

| Masculine | Feminine | Masculine | Feminine |
|---------------------------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| King | queen | Gander | goose |
| Bachelor | maid | Ram | ewe (बक) |
| Monk | nun | stag | hind (बक) |
| Widower | widow | Wizard | witch (बक) |
| (b) By adding -ess (-एस जोड़ने) | | | |
| Masculine | Feminine | Masculine | Feminine |
| Author | authoress | Mayor | mayoress |
| Baron | baroness | Patron | patroness |
| Count | countess | Peer | peeress |
| Giant | giantess | Poet | poetess |
| Heir (आर) | heiress | Priest | priestess |
| Host | hostess | Prophet | prophetess |
| Jew | jewess | Shepherd | shepherdess |
| Lion | lioness | Steward | stewardess |
| Manager | manageress | Viscount | viscountess |

Note that changes in spelling occur in some cases :

(क) -ess जोड़ने पर कभी-कभी वर्ण परिवर्तन हो जाता है।

| Masculine | Feminine | Masculine | Feminine |
|------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|
| Actor | actress | Prince | princess |
| Abbot | abbess | Preceptor | preceptress |
| Conductor | conductress | Seamster | seamstress |
| Duke | duchess | Songster | songstress |
| Emperor | empress | Master | mistress |
| Enchanter | enchantress | Murderer | murderess |
| Governor | governess | Tempter | temptress |
| God | goddess | Tiger | tigress |
| Hunter | hunress | Traitor | traitress |
| Instructor | instructress | Waiter | waitress |

(c) By changing the masculine word of a Compound word: (Compound word व संयुक्त शब्द में पुरुष शब्द को परिवर्तन करने।)

| Masculine | Feminine | Masculine | Feminine |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| Boy-friend | girl-friend | Grand-father | grand-mother |
| He-goat | she-goat | Great-uncle | great-aunt |
| He-bear | she-bear | Step-brother | step-sister |
| Bull-calf | cow-calf | Man-servant | maid-servant |
| Bridegroom | bride (ब्रिड) | Milk-man | milk-woman |
| Son-in-law | daughter-in-law | Pea-cock | pea-hen |
| Father-in-law | mother-in-law | Land-lord | land-lady |
| Brother-in-law | sister-in-law | Washer-man | washer-woman |

(d) Sometimes Feminine forms are by adding a, in, ix etc:

(क) कभी-कभी a, in, ix-ए जोड़कर Feminine रूप मिलता है।

| Masculine | Feminine | Masculine | Feminine |
|-------------|----------|---------------|----------------|
| Hero | heroine | Administrator | administratrix |
| Sultan | sultana | Executor | executrix |
| Czar (क़ार) | czarina | Prosecutor | prosecutrix |
| Signor | signora | Testator | testatrix |

*Note: Objects without life are often personified and then they are regarded as males or females. (जड़ पदार्थों को इंसानों की भाँति माना जाता है और तब वे पुरुष या स्त्री माने जाते हैं।)

(a) The Masculine Gender is often applied to objects remarkable for strength or power. (উল্লেখযোগ্য শক্তি বা ক্ষমতার অধিকারী বিষয়গুলি প্রায়শঃ Masculine Gender হয়।)

✓ যেমন—The Sun, Summer, Winter, Death, Time etc.
The Sun sheds his beams of the rich and the poor alike.

(b) The Feminine Gender is often applied to objects remarkable for beauty, gentleness and gracefulness. (সৌন্দর্য, মৃদুতা এবং যাদুর্ঘ্য প্রকাশক বিষয়গুলি প্রায়শঃ Feminine Gender হয়।)

✓ যেমন—The Moon, The Earth, Nature, Autumn, Spring, Liberty etc.
The Moon has hidden her face behind the cloud.

(c) A ship is always spoken of as Feminine Gender. (জাহাজকে সর্বদাই Feminine Gender ধরা হয়।)

The ship lost all her boats in the storm.

(d) Collective nouns, even when they denote living beings are considered of the Neuter Gender. (Collective Noun প্রাণীবাচক হলেও Neuter Gender হয়।)

The army showed its strength.

(e) Lower animals are often considered as Neuter Gender (ইতর প্রাণীকে প্রায়শঃ Neuter Gender গণ্য করা হয়।)

The mouse cut the rope by its teeth.

Some more words denoting male or female.

Masculine

Mr. (মিস্টার-বড়ক পুরুষ)

Master (মাস্টার-ছোট ছেলে)

Feminine

Mrs. (মিসেস-বিবাহিতা মহিলা)

Miss (মিস-কুমারী)

APPLIED SECTION

Read the passage and change the Genders :

(Passage-টি গড়ে Gender পরিবর্তন কর।)

Mr. Roy is a teacher. He teaches me English. He has two sons. One of them is a poet. He has a pet pea-cock. His uncle is a doctor. He is a widower. His Grand-father was a land-lord and his son-in-law is a hunter. His step-brothers is a bachelor but his step-sister is an actress.

EXERCISE

1. Classify the following nouns according to Gender and put them in the following boxes: (নিচের Noun-গুলিকে Gender অনুযায়ী শ্রেণীবিন্যাস করে সঠিক box-এ বসাবে।)

Baby, cock, man, chair, table, book, pen, oil, rice, tutor, hero, brother, child, teacher, doctor, son, poet, prince, tiger, master, priest, lord, aunt, wife, niece, male, host, bride.

| Masculine | Feminine | Common | Neuter |
|-----------|----------|--------|--------|
| | | | |

2. Change the Gender of the following nouns (নিচের Noun-গুলির Gender পরিবর্তন কর।):

Father, boy, daughter, husband, uncle, hero, master, widow, man, nephew, sir, brother, set, actor, son-in-law, mother-in-law, milk-man, host, bride, tiger, lion, man-servant, grand-father.

3. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate word given in the bracket. (কেউনো ঘরানো শব্দগুলির মধ্য থেকে সঠিক word নির্বাচন করে খুঁদে ঘরানো কর।)

(a) Naren is my.....(sister, brother)

(b) Rupa is my.....(brother, sister)

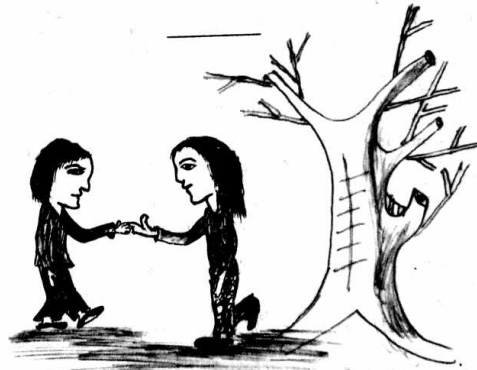
(c) Sukanta is a great.....(poet, poetess)

(d) Chandragupta was a great.....(queen, king)

(e) The.....gives us milk. (bull, cow)

4. Apply the rules of Genders and write in your own English:

অমলের বাবা যা কেউ নেই। তার একটি ভাই ও একটি বোন ছিল। তারাই এখন আর নেই। সে এখন তার কাকার বাড়ীতেই থাকে। তার কাকীমা তাকে খুব ভাল করেন। তার দুটি ভাইপো ও একটি ভাইবোন আছে। ভাইপোটি ডাক্তার হতে চায় এবং ভাইবোনটি অভিনেত্রী হতে চায়। তাদের আটটি মোরগ এবং বারোটি ছাগলী আছে। তারা একদিন ডিড়িচাখানা দেখতে গিয়েছিল। সেখানে তারা বাঘ, বাঘিনী, সিংহ, সিংহী, হরিণ, হরিণী, এবং ময়ূর, ময়ূরী দেখেছিল। ঘরে তাদের এক জোড়া বনস এবং তিনটি গাইগোরা আছে। গাইগোরাগুলি প্রচুর দুধ দেয়। সেজন্য বাড়িতে খুশর, লাভলী বা জামাই এসেও তাদের কোন অসুবিধা হয় না।



ONLY FOR ...U..

CHAPTER-7 THE NOUN : CASE

The relation in which a noun stands to some other word or the change of form by which this relation is indicate, is called its case.

—J. C. Nesfield

Noun-এর সঙ্গে যাক্যের অন্য word-এর সম্পর্কে Noun-এর Case বা কারক বলে।

There are five cases in English—Nominative, Objective, Possessive, Dative and Vocative. But in modern Grammar Dative is included in objective. Hence there are four cases in English. ইংরেজিতে পাঁচটি কারকের কথা বলা হয়। কিন্তু আধুনিক Grammar-এ Dative-কে Objective-এর অন্তর্ভুক্ত করে দেওয়ায় (Dative আসলে Indirect object) ইংরেজিতে চারটি কারক আলাদাচিত হয়—

Nominative, Objective, Possessive, এবং Vocative.

1. When a noun (or pronoun) is used as the Subject of a Verb, it is said to be in the **Nominative case**.

যখন কোন noun বা Pronoun কর্তৃরূপে ব্যবহৃত হয়, তখন তাকে **Nominative Case** (কর্তৃকারক) বলে। যেমন—John threw a stone. [who threw a stone? = John (subject)]

2. When a noun (or pronoun) is used as the **object** of a verb, it is said to be in the **Objective case**.

যখন কোন Noun বা Pronoun কর্মরূপে ব্যবহৃত হয়, তখন তাকে **Objective case** (কর্মকারক) বলে। যেমন—John threw a stone. The horse kicked the boy. [What did John throw? = a stone (object). Whom did the horse kick? = a boy. (Object)]

***Note:** To find the Nominative put **Who?** or **What?** before the verb. To find the Objective put **Whom?** or **What?** before the verb. The Nominative generally comes before the verb and the objective after it.

(Nominative বা কর্তৃ পদে হলে তাকে 'কর্তৃ' বা 'কি' প্রশ্ন কর। Objective বা কর্ম পদে হলে তাকে 'কর্ম' বা 'কি' প্রশ্ন কর। সাধারণত Nominative উদ্ভাৱের পূর্বে এবং Objective উদ্ভাৱের পরে বসে।)

3. The **possessive case** denotes ownership or possession or relationship or authorship. The possessive answers the question—**'Whose?'**

Possessive case (সম্বন্ধ পদ) অধিকার, সম্বন্ধ বা কর্তৃত্ব সম্বন্ধ বোঝায়। এটি 'কার' এই প্রশ্নের উত্তর দেয়।

যেমন—This is Ram's umbrella. (possession)

These are Shakespeare's plays. (authorship)

A Mother's love is a noble thing. (relationship)

4. **Vocative case** is practically a nominative of address. **Vocative case** বা সম্বোধন পদের দ্বারা বোঝায়।

যেমন—Come here, Ram. Come on boys.

***Note:** Possessive case এবং Vocative case—কে ইংরেজিতে কারক বলা হলেও বাংলায় এগুলিকে কারক বলা হয় না। ক্রিয়াপদের সঙ্গে এদের সম্বন্ধ না থাকায় এগুলিকে কারক না বলে যথাক্রমে সম্বন্ধপদ এবং সম্বোধন পদ বলা হয়।

The forms of nouns remains the same in the Nominative case, Objective case and Vocative case. But the form is changed only in the Possessive case.

Nominative, Objective এবং Vocative case-এ Noun-এর form অপরিবর্তিত থাকে। কেবলমাত্র Possessive case -এ Noun-এর form-এর পরিবর্তন হয়।

Formation of the Possessive case

The rules are as follows (নিয়মগুলি নিম্নরূপ) :

When the noun denotes the name of a living one, apostrophe s ('s) or apostrophe comma is used. (জীবিত প্রাণীর ক্ষেত্রে এ্যাপসট্রফি s ('s) বা এ্যাপসট্রফি কমা (',) ব্যবহৃত হয়।)

(a) When such a noun is singular, the possessive case is formed by adding 's to the noun.

(এরূপ Noun একবচন হলে Noun-এর সঙ্গে 's যুক্ত হয়)

Ram's book. The boy's pen. Father's car. Mother's purse.

***Note:** The letter s is omitted in a few words where too many s-sounds would come together. (যেখানে একাধিক স-ধ্বনি থাকে সেখানে s যুক্ত হলে শব্দগুলি একত্রে মিশে যেতে পারে।) যেমন—For justice' sake; for conscience sake Moses' laws; Keates' poem.

(b) When the noun is plural and ends in s, the possessive case is formed by adding only an apostrophe. (যেখানে noun বহুবচন হয়, এবং noun-শেষে s থাকে, সেখানে কেবলমাত্র এ্যাপসট্রফি কমা হয়।)

যেমন—Boy's club; Girl's school etc.

(c) When the noun is plural but does not end on s, the possessive case is formed by adding 's. (যেখানে noun plural হলেও শেষে s থাকে না, সেখানে 's যুক্ত হয়।) যেমন—Men's club; children's books.

Use of Possessive case

(a) The possessive ('s) is chiefly used with the names of living things. It can not be used with the names of inanimate things.

(জীবিত প্রাণীর ক্ষেত্রে 's বসে, জড় পদার্থের ক্ষেত্রে 's বসে না।)

যেমন—The boy's hand; the girl's hair.

কিন্তু The leg of the chair. [not, the chair's leg]

The cover of the book. [not, the book's cover]

The roof of the house. [not, the house's roof]

Of course, of instead of 's may be used in both the cases : The leg of the boy. The leg of the chair. (জীবিত এবং জড় উভয় ক্ষেত্রেই of বসতে পারে।)

(b) The possessive ('s) is used with the personified objects.

(ব্যক্তিগতভাবে আরোপিত হলে বস্তুর ক্ষেত্রেও 's হয়।)

Nature's laws; Fortune's smile; duty's call.

(c) The possessive ('s) is also used with the nouns denoting time, place or weight. (সময়, দূরত্ব এবং ওজন প্রকাশক noun-এর ক্ষেত্রে 's হয়।)

A day's match; a week's holiday; at a stone's throw; a foot's length; a pound's weight.

Noun in Apposition

Read the following sentence (নিচের Sentence-টি পড়।)

Kapil, our captain, made fifty runs.

এখানে Kapil এবং our captain একই ব্যক্তি। এরূপ ক্ষেত্রে captain হলো Kapil-এর apposition; এই apposition-টি Noun-এর ঠিক পাশে বসে।

Apposition means placing near.

— Wren & Martin.

Apposition কথার অর্থ হলো কাছে এসে বসা। A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains. (যদি noun -টি যে case -এ থাকে, noun in apposition-টিরও সেই case)

Further examples:

1. Ramchandra, the son of Dasharath, went to forest.

2. Kavi, the great reformer, was a weaver.

3. Yesterday I met your father, the doctor.

4. Have you read the Gitanjali, the Tagore's poems?

In sentences 1 and 2 the nouns in apposition are in the Nominative case.

In sentences 3 and 4 the nouns in apposition are in the Objective case.

APPLIED SECTION

1. Apply the following nouns in the Nominative case. The Nominative answers 'who' or 'what'?

(নিচের Noun-গুলিকে Nominative case-এ প্রয়োগ কর। Nominative case 'who' বা কে এবং 'What' বা কি এই প্রশ্নের উত্তর দেয়।)

Rabindranath, Mother Teresa, Satyajit, a boy, a man, the boy, girls.

Example:

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| Who? (Nominative) | Rabindranath | won the Nobel Prize. |
| What? (Nominative) | The book | is in the desk. |

(i)

(ii)

(iii)

(iv)

(v)

2. Apply the following nouns in the Objective case. The Objective answers 'whom' or 'what'?

(নিচের Noun-গুলিকে Objective case-এ প্রয়োগ কর। Objective case 'whom' বা কাকে এবং 'what' বা কি এই প্রশ্নের উত্তর দেয়।)

Haribabu, the boy, the man, a stone, a ball, a picture, the window.

Example:

| | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|-------------|
| I know | Whom? (objective) | Haribabu. |
| That naughty boy broke | What? (objective) | the window. |

(i)

(ii)

(iii)

(iv)

(v)

3. Apply the following noun in the Possessive case. The Possessive answers 'whose'?

(নিচের Noun-গুলিকে Possessive case-এ প্রয়োগ কর। Possessive case 'Whose' বা কারার এই প্রশ্নের উত্তর দেয়।)

Ram's, man's, girls', Shakespeare's, (of the) chair, (of the) tree, (of the) boy.

Example:

| | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| Whose? (possessive) | Ram's books. |
| Whose? (possessive) | of the chair. |

EXERCISE

1. In each of the following sentences pick out the nouns in the Nominative case. (নিচের sentence-গুলিতে Nominative case বৃত্তে বার কর।)

- Ram married Sita. (b) Milk is the best food.
- Gopal wants to go home. (d) The lazy boy was punished.
- Calcutta is the capital of West Bengal.
- The Earth moves round the Sun.

2. Pick out nouns in the Possessive case in the following sentences:

(নিচের sentence-গুলিতে Possessive case বৃত্তে বার কর।)

- Do you know the way?
- Have you taken your meal?
- Little Rabi read the Ramayana.
- The poet met a little cottage girl.
- Aladin had a wonderful lamp.
- Sir R. Ph. Rover tore his hair.

3. Pick out the nouns in the Possessive case in the following sentences:

(নিচের sentence-গুলিতে Possessive case বৃত্তে বার কর।)

- The baby's doll is lost.
- The girl's voice is sweet.
- He reads in a Boys' school.
- She reads in a Girls' school.
- The children's clothes are new.
- The ladies' sarees are beautiful.

4. Write the possessive case, singular and plural of the following nouns:

(নিচের noun-গুলির singular এবং plural form-এ Possessive case-এ লিখ।)

Man, boy, baby, lady, child, sheep, deer, ox.

5. Combine the following pairs of nouns by putting one of them in the Possessive case. (নিচের জোড়া Noun-গুলির একটিকে Possessive case-এ লিখ।)

- Parents, kindness. (b) A man, labour. (c) Books, authors.
- A student, books. (e) Crown, a king. (f) The journey, end.

6. Write in your own English.

এটা রমার কলম, ওটা অমরের বই। এতলি বালিকার বেলনা। আমি তাদের রীতিনীতি (manners and customs) জানি। লোকটা হতবুদ্ধি (wit's end) হয়ে গিয়েছিল। এস, আমর সাথ ঘিটিলে (to our heart's content) পান করি। কোন বুড়িটা তুমি ওড়াজিহল (flying)? কোন বইটি তুমি পড়ি? কেবো কোন ফুলটি ফুলেছিল (pluck)? কে কে তোমাদের ঘরে ঢুকল? বোসেদের বাড়িটি বেশ সজ্জানো (well-arranged)।

7. Write the following passage in your own English.

মাস্টার মহাশয়ের ছাত্রটি দেখিবামাত্র (As soon as I saw) ছুটিয়া অন্তঃপুরে (the inner apartment for the ladies) প্রবেশ করিলাম। মা ভবন দিদিমার সাথে মুখোমুখি হইয়া প্রনীপালোকে আস বেগিতেছিলেন। এক পাশে ভইয়া পড়িলাম। মা জিজ্ঞাসা করিলেন, "কি হইয়াছে" আমি বলিলাম, "আমার অসুখ করিয়াছে (out of sorts), আর আমি পড়িতে যাইব না।"

CHAPTER-8 MORE ABOUT PRONOUNS

A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun-equivalent.

Noun-এর বা noun জাতীয় শব্দের পরিবর্তে যে word ব্যবহৃত হয় তাকে pronoun বলে।

Pronoun means for a noun.

Wren & Martin

There are nine different kinds of pronouns. Pronoun নয় প্রকার।

| Kinds of Pronoun | How to recognise them? | Examples |
|--|---|--|
| (1) Personal Pronoun | এই pronoun কোন person বা ব্যক্তির পরিবর্তে বসে। | I, we, you, he, she, they. |
| (2) Possessive Pronoun | এই pronoun-এর দ্বারা possession বা অধিকার বোঝানো হয়। | Mine, ours, yours, his, hers, theirs. |
| (3) Reflexive Pronoun & Emphatic Pronoun | এই pronoun self বা selves শব্দে গঠিত হয় এবং কর্তা ও কর্ম একই ব্যক্তিকে বোঝায়। | Myself, ourselves, yourself, yourselves, himself, herself, themselves. |
| (4) Demonstrative Pronoun | একক pronoun কোন Noun কে বিশেষভাবে নির্দেশ করে। | This, that, these, those, it. |
| (5) Indefinite Pronoun | একক pronoun কোন নির্দিষ্ট ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুকে বোঝায়। | Any, one, anyone, some, someone, no one, anybody, somebody, nobody, many, everyone, all. |
| (6) Relative Pronoun | এই pronoun দুটি বাক্যের মধ্যে relation বা সম্বন্ধ বুঝিয়ে দেয়। এগুলি বাক্যের মাঝে বসে। | who, whose, whom, which, that. |
| (7) Interrogative Pronoun | একক pronoun প্রশ্ন করার জন্য ব্যবহৃত হয়। এগুলি বাক্যের প্রথমে বসে। | who, whose, whom, which, what. |
| (8) Distributive Pronoun | এই pronoun এক-জাতীয় একাধিক ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু মতো প্রত্যেকটিকে পৃথক করে বোঝায়। | Each, either, neither, every. |
| (9) Reciprocal Pronoun | এই pronoun একাধিক ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু মতো পারস্পরিক সম্পর্ক বুঝিয়ে দেয়। | Each other, one another. |

MORE ABOUT PRONOUNS

65

***Note:** Pronoun-এর অন্য form-গুলি my, our, your, his, her, their, এবং its. Noun-এর আগে Adjective-এর মতো বসে। সেজন্য এগুলিকে Pronominal Adjective বা Possessive Adjective বলা হয়। যেমন—My book, your house, our club ইত্যাদি। অন্যদিকে This book is mine. This house is yours. This club is ours প্রয়োগ হলে mine, yours, ours ইত্যাদিকে Possessive Pronoun বলা হয়। এদের মধ্যে ours, yours, hers, theirs—এই পদগুলিতে r এর s দুটোই থাকার জন্য এগুলিকে Double possessive বলা হয়।

PERSONAL PRONOUN IN DIFFERENT PERSONS AND CASES :

| Person | Subject | Object | Possessive |
|------------------------|---------|---------|------------|
| 1 st Person | Sing | I | me |
| | Plural | We | us |
| 2 nd Person | Sing | You | you |
| | Plural | You | you |
| 3 rd Person | Sing | He, She | him, her |
| | Plural | They | them |

লক্ষ্য কর Noun-এর মতো personal pronoun-এরও Number পরিবর্তন হয়। এর মধ্যে কেবলমাত্র Personal Pronoun-এর 3rd person Singular Number-এর ক্ষেত্রে Gender-এরও পরিবর্তন হয়। (Masculine—He, him, his, Feminine—she, her, hers) এছাড়া Reflexive Pronoun, Demonstrative Pronoun এবং Indefinite Pronoun-এরও যে Number পরিবর্তন হয় তা নিচের Table-এ দেখে—

| | Singular | Plural |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| Reflexive Pronoun | Myself Yourself Himself, Herself | Ourselves Yourselves Themselves |
| Demonstrative Pronoun | This That | These Those |
| Indefinite Pronoun | Any | Many, Some |

Formation of Reflexive pronoun:

| Singular | Plural |
|---|---|
| I—myself Your—yourself He—himself, She—herself It—itself | We—ourselves You—yourselves They—themselves |

Use of Reflexive Pronoun & Emphatic Pronoun :

(i) We use **Reflexive Pronoun** when the subject and object refer to the same person or thing. (কর্তা ও কর্ম একই হলে Reflexive Pronoun হয়।)

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) I cut myself . | (i) The prisoner hanger himself . |
| (b) She blamed herself . | (j) The refrigerator defrosts itself . |
| (c) Shirla is looking at herself . | (h) He spoke to himself . |
| (d) You have hurt yourself . | (i) She is ashamed of herself . |
| (e) You have enjoyed yourselves . | (j) They gave themselves much trouble. |

Notes: A Reflexive Pronoun is used as the **Object** of a verb or of a preposition. Hence it comes **after a verb or a preposition**. Sometimes a Reflexive Pronoun is used **emphatically**. And such an **Emphatic Pronoun** comes **after the subject or after the object**. We use a Reflexive Pronoun when an action turns back upon the subject. We use an Emphatic Pronoun to give emphasis on the subject or object.

(ii) **Emphatic pronouns** are used to emphasise that the action is done by one else. (যদি অন্য কারো দ্বারা করা হয় তবে এটি একটি বাক্যে প্রকাশ করা হয়।)

Emphatic pronoun ব্যবহার হল:

I **myself** saw him (to) do it.

He **himself** said so.

She **herself** has cooked her meal.

They **themselves** admitted their guilt.

I spoke to the Chairman **himself**.

However, all the **self-pronouns** are broadly called **Reflexive Pronouns**.

(iii) A Reflexive Pronoun is used with **by** when it means 'alone'. (যদি কেউ একা দ্বারা কোন ক্রিয়াকে সম্পন্ন করে তবে এটি একটি বাক্যে প্রকাশ করা হয়।)

She was singing **by herself**.

I was playing **by myself**.

(iv) Some verbs must take **Reflexive pronouns** as object. (কর্তৃক ক্রিয়ায় Reflexive pronoun-কে object করা হয়) — avail, exert etc.

You must **avail yourself** of the train.

He will **exert himself** in time.

Use of Demonstrative Pronouns:

We use **Demonstrative Pronouns** to point out the objects to which they refer. **These, That, This, Those, It.**

(যদি নির্দিষ্ট বস্তু বা ব্যক্তি নির্দেশ করা হয় তবে Demonstrative Pronoun ব্যবহার করা হয়।)

This is a present from my elder brother.

Darjeeling tea is better than **that** of Assam tea.

These mangoes are not as sour as **those** mangoes.

Rules for the use of 'It':

| We use It | Examples |
|---|---|
| (i) For things without life or an idea. | It is a pen. Here is your book, take it. It is the opinion of the Public. |
| (ii) For animals unless we clearly wish to speak of them as male or female. | The horse fell and broke its leg. |
| (iii) For a young child unless we clearly wish to refer to the sex. | When I saw the child it was crying. The baby has torn its clothes. |
| (iv) To refer to some statement going before. | He told a lie and he knows it. He deserved his punishment, as he knew it. |
| (v) To give emphasis the noun or pronoun following it. | It is you who are to be blamed. |

| We use It | Examples |
|--|--|
| (vi) As subject of an impersonal verb (impersonal It) | It is raining. It snows. It hails. It thunders. It seems to me. |
| (vii) For denoting weather or time (= Preliminary It) | It is winter. It is fine weather. It is 8 o'clock. It is too early. |
| (viii) As a provisional subject before the verb to be when the real subject follows it | It is easy to find fault. It is easy to say but hard to do. |

Use of Indefinite Pronouns.

We use **Indefinite Pronouns** in order to refer to persons or things in a general way, not to refer to any particular person or thing. (নির্দিষ্ট ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু নির্দেশ না করে বাক্যে Indefinite Pronoun ব্যবহার করা হয়।)

Anybody can do this easy task.

One must not praise oneself. One of the boys is wicked.

[None of the boys is / are wicked.]

[None but fools have ever believed it.]

None but the brave deserve the fair.

None of them has (have) come back yet. A.L.D.—Horibly.

[*None is a shortened form of not one, yet it is commonly used with plural verbs.] —Wren & Martin.]

Many of them were injured but a few escaped unhurt.

What is **everybody's** business in **nobody's** business.

In referring to **anybody**, **everybody**, **everyone**, **each** etc. the pronoun **he** or **she** is used according to the context. —Wren & Martin

Anybody, everybody, everyone, anyone, each প্রভৃতির ক্ষেত্রে প্রত্যেক অনুযায়ী pronoun he বা she ব্যবহার করা হয়।

I shall be glad to help **everyone** of the boys in **his** studies.

I shall be glad to help **everyone** of the girls in **her** studies.

But when the sex is not determined from the context, we use the pronoun of the **masculine gender**.

কিছু প্রসঙ্গ যেখানে যখন লিঙ্গ বোঝা যায় না, তখন আমরা এইসব ক্ষেত্রে masculine gender-এ pronoun ব্যবহার করি।

Each must do **his** best. **Everyone** likes to have **his** way.

Anyone can do this if **he** tries.

*Note: But we cannot use **he** or **she** in case of **one**.

(যদি one-এ ক্ষেত্রে আমরা he বা she ব্যবহার করতে পারি না।)

One must do **one's** duty. (not, **his**)

Use of Distributive Pronouns

We use **Distributive Pronouns** in order to refer to persons or things one at a time. For this reason they are **always singular**.

যদি এক একজন ব্যক্তি বা জিনিস বাক্যে বর্ণনাকার বস্তুকে Distributive Pronoun দ্বারা বর্ণনা করা হয় তবে Singular Number.

Each of the boys **is** healthy.

Either of the roads **leads** to the market.
Neither of the girls **was** late.

***Note 1.** **Either** means the one or the other of the two. **Neither** is the negative of **either**.

Either কথাটির অর্থ দুয়ের মধ্যে যে কোন একটি বা একজন, আর **Neither** কথাটির অর্থ দুয়ের মধ্যে কেউই না বা কোনটিই না।

***Note 2.** The pronoun **each** may have three positions. (Each-এর তিনরকম position আছে।)

(i) **Each** of the boys received a prize.

(ii) These boys received **each** a prize.

(iii) These boys received ten rupees **each**.

The third order is usually placed after a numeral. (সাধারণতঃ সংখ্যাব্যাক্ত শব্দ থাকলে **each** শেষে হলে।)

***Note 3** In the following sentences **each**, **either** and **neither** are Adjectives, not Pronouns.

Each boy got a prize. (each boy = প্রতিটি ছেলে পুরস্কারপত্র।)

There are trees on **either** side of the river. (either side = উভয় পাশে।)

Neither accusation is true. (কোন অভিযোগই সত্য নয়।)

each other, one another Use of Reciprocal Pronouns.

We use Reciprocal Pronouns in order to refer reciprocal relation.

(পারস্পরিক সম্পর্ক বোঝাতে আমরা Reciprocal Pronoun ব্যবহার করি।)

The two boys hate **each other**. They loved **one another**.

The brothers quarrelled **with each other**.

The stood **against one another**.

Use of Interrogative Pronouns :

(i) **Who, whom** and **whose** are used for indicating persons. (person - ব্যক্তি বোঝাতে **who** = কে বা কার, **whom** = কারে বা কাকে, **whose** = কার বা কাদের ব্যবহৃত হয়।)

Who are you? (তুমি কে?)

Whom do you like? (তুমি কারে চাও?)

Whose is this book? (এই বইটি কার?)

[But, **whose** book is this? = modern usage]

(Here **whose** is Interrogative Adjective.)

(ii) **Which** is used for selecting a person or a thing. (কোন কিছু বা কোন কাউকে বেছে নেওয়ার জন্য ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু উভয় ক্ষেত্রেই **which** = কোন জন বা কোনটি হয়।)

Which is your book? (কোনটি তোমার বই?)

Which is your friend? (কেন ব্যক্তি তোমার বন্ধু?)

Which of the pictures is yours? (এই ছবিগুলির মধ্যে কোনটি তোমার?)

(iii) **What** is used in general sense of asking.

(সাধারণভাবে 'কি'-এর জন্য **what** হয়।)

What is he? (তিনি কি করেন?)

What is your name? (তোমার নাম কি?)

What are you doing? (তুমি কি করছ?)

***Note :** In the following sentences **which** and **what** are not Interrogative Pronouns but Adjectives.

What book do you want? (তুমি কোন বইটি চাও?)

Which book is he reading? (কোন বইটি সে পড়ছে?)

Which way leads to the post office? (কোন রাস্তাটি পোস্ট-অফিসের দিকে?)

P.C.D. (4B)

***Note :** **Who, whom, which** এবং **what** এই Interrogative Pronoun বা Interrogative Adjective তিন সর্বনামই বাক্যের প্রথমে বসে। অর্থাৎ এই **who, whom, whose, which** এবং **what** যখন **Relative Pronoun** হয়, তখন এগুলি সাধারণতঃ বাক্যের মাঝে (Antecedent-এর পরে) বসে।
 [An Antecedent is a noun or a pronoun or a noun-equivalent to which a pronoun refers. Antecedent হলো noun বা pronoun বা noun-জাতীয় পূর্বপদ যাকে কোন pronoun refer করে।]

Use of Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns are also called 'Linking pronouns' as they link the Dependent Relative clause of a sentence to its main clause.

Relative Pronoun-কে Linking Pronoun বলে যেহেতু এগুলি বাক্যের নির্ভরশীল Relative Clause-কে Main clause বা প্রধান Clause-এর সাথে যুক্ত করে।

Read the following pairs of sentences and observe how these are joined with the help of Relative Pronouns. (নিচের Relative Pronoun যুক্ত বাক্যদ্বয়কে যুক্ত করছে দেখ।)

I know the boy. The boy came from Calcutta.

= I know the boy **who** came from Calcutta.

This is the book. This belongs to my grandfather.

= This is the book **which** belongs to my grandfather.

This is the rat. It was caught by a cat.

= This is the rat **that** was caught by a cat.

It is you. You are to be blamed.

= It is you **who** are to be blamed.

***Note :** The nouns or pronouns immediately before the Relative Pronouns are called the **Antecedents**. (Relative pronoun-এর ঠিক পূর্ববর্তী noun বা pronoun-কে Antecedent বলে।)

Here is a table to classify different uses of Relative Pronoun.

| Relative Pronoun | Used for | Example |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| Who (Subject) | Persons only (both sing. and Plural) | I know the man who is honest. He who hesitates is lost. Those who die for others are immortal. |
| Whom (Object) | Persons only (both sing. and plural) | This is the boy whom all praise. These are the boys whom all praise. |
| Whose (Possessive) | Persons and things | This is the man whose pocket was picked. A triangle whose three sides are equal is called an equilateral triangle. |
| Which (Subject) | Things without life and animal | This is the house which my uncle built. This is the cow which is milking. |

| Relative Pronoun | Used for | Example |
|------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| That | Persons. | He <i>that</i> is content is rich. |
| (Subject) | animals. | A dog <i>that</i> barks seldom bites. |
| | things. | Take anything <i>that</i> you like. |

*লক্ষ্য কর, উপরের সমস্ত Relative Pronoun গুলি বাক্যের মাঝে বসেছে। কিন্তু কখনো কখনো *what*, *who* প্রভৃতি pronoun বাক্যের প্রথমে এবং মাঝে দু'ভাবেই বসতে পারে। যখন প্রথমে বসে তখন Antecedent উহা থাকে।

What has happened is not clear.
What cannot be cured must be endured.
Who laughs last laughs best.
 I don't know *what* has happened.
 I say *what* I mean.
 I know *who* he is.

Omission of the Relative Pronoun :

The Relative pronoun is generally omitted when it is in the objective case. (Relative pronoun-টি object বা কর্তৃ হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হলে সাধারণতঃ উহা থাকে।)

The man (whom) I invited is my friend.
 The book (which) I am reading is good.
 I am the monarch of all (that) I survey.

The tendency to omit the Accusative (objective) Relative is more marked in the spoken language. In the written language its omission is often felt to be undignified. —Wren & Martin.
 Object হিসাবে Relative Pronoun উহা রাখার খেঁক spoken language-এ বেশি দেখা যায়। কিন্তু লেখ্য ভাষায় Relative Pronoun উহা রাখা সমীচীন নয়।

Omission of the Antecedent :

Sometimes the Antecedent of a Relative pronoun is left out. (কখনো কখনো Relative pronoun-এর পূর্বের Antecedent উহা থাকে।)

Who does not work shall not eat.
 = (He) *who* does not work shall not eat.
Whom the gods love, die young.
 = (Those) *whom* the gods love, die young.
What is done cannot be undone.
 = (That) *what* is done cannot be undone.

Agreement of the Relative pronoun and its Antecedent :

As The Relative pronoun refers to a Noun or a Pronoun (i.e. Antecedent), it must be of the **same number and person as its Antecedent**. (Relative pronoun তার Antecedent হিসাবে যে Noun বা Pronoun-কে বোঝায় তার number এবং person অনুযায়ী হয়।)

The boy *who* was lazy was punished.
 The boys *who* were lazy were punished.
 I am the last person *that* is to blame.
 You *who* are mighty should be merciful.
 He *that* is down needs fear no fall.
 They *who* live in glass houses should not throw stones.
 The flowers *which* grow in our garden are not for sale.

But the case of the Relative pronoun depends upon its relation to the verb in the clause in which it occurs. (কিন্তু Relative Pronoun তার Antecedent-এর case বা নিয়ে যে clause-এ এই Relative pronoun থাকে তার case গ্রহণ করে।)

Ram is the boy *who* did it. (subject)
 Ram is the boy *whom* I want. (object)
 Ram is the boy *whose* pencil I want. (possessive)

Position of the Relative Pronoun :

To remove ambiguity, the Relative pronoun should be placed as near as possible to its Antecedent. (অস্পষ্টতা এড়াতে Relative Pronoun তার Antecedent-এর যতটা সম্ভব কাছে বসে।)

(i) The boy *who* was walking in the field saw a dead man.
We cannot say—
 The boy saw a dead man *who* was walking in the field.
 (ii) The boy *who* won the first prize is the son of my friend.
We cannot say—
 The boy is the son of my friend *who* won the first prize.

Compound Relative Pronouns :

Compound Relative pronouns are formed by adding *ever* or *soever* to *who*, *which* or *what*.

Whoever (= any person who) comes is welcome.
Take whichever (= anything which) you like.
Whatever (= anything which) may happen, I'll do this.
Whosoever (= anything what) may happen, I'll do this.
Whomsoever (= anyone whom). You can call *whomsoever* you see.

Short forms of pronoun & verb :

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| I am = I'm | He is = He's |
| I shall/will = I'll | She is = She's |
| We are = We're | They are = They're |
| We shall = We'll | He will = He'll |
| You are = You're | She will = She'll |
| You will = You'll | They will = They'll |
| I have = I've | You have = You've |
| We have = We've | It is = It's |
| He has = He's | That is = That's |

*Note : *Its* = ইহার; *It's* = *It is* (ইহা হয়)

These short forms of pronoun & verb are often used in Spoken English. (Pronoun & Verb -এর এই short form গুলি Spoken English -এ প্রায়ই ব্যবহৃত হয়।)

Some Important notes

When a pronouns of different persons are joined, the verb will be plural. (বিভিন্ন person-এর pronoun যুক্ত হলে plural verb বসে।)

He and I have done it. You and Hari have idled away your time.

Good manners require to say 2nd person first; 3rd person next and 1st person at last : (অদ্রষ্টব্য অনুযায়ী প্রথমে 2nd person, তারপর, 3rd person, এবং শেষে 1st person বসে।)

You and I (not I and you); You and he (not he and you); He and I (not I and he). You, he and I (not I, you and he.)

But in admitting faults the pattern will be reverse. (দোষ স্বীকারের সময় বিপরীত ক্রম হয়) যেমন— I, he and you are guilty.

Study the following correct sentence:

The presents are *for you and me*. (not I):

Nobody will help you *but me*. (not I. Here 'but' is a preposition)

He is taller *than I (am)*.

He is taller *than me*. (This is now accepted). —Wern & Martain.

"Than whom is standard English today, admitted and blessed by the Oxford Dictionary." —Good English by G. H. Vallins.

APPLIED SECTION

1. Use appropriate pronouns in the blank spaces of the following dialogue.

(নিচের সংলাপের শূন্যস্থানগুলিতে সঠিক Pronoun ব্যবহার কর।)

- Bipin : This is friend, Rahman.
 Binay : Hallo, nice to meet
 Rahman : Nice to meet too.
 Bipin : Rahman, is an artist sister is also an artist.
 Binay : That's interesting.
 Bipin : work of art is very popular. Everyone in town knows about paintings.
 Binay : Bipin, aren't sisters artist too?
 Bipin : well, they are not artists are good musicians parents are also good musicians.
 Rahman : Bipin is good cricketer Plays cricket in school team.
 Binay : Yes, know that, but belong to a family of footballers all play football.
 Bipin : family members are different from family members. It does not matter are friends.

2. Use pronouns as object to a verb or a preposition.

Apply correct forms given in the brackets. (বন্ধনী থেকে Pronoun-গুলিকে সঠিক Object রূপে ব্যবহার কর।)

- (a) Can you pass the Salt? (I)
 (b) Please send the letter to (She)
 (c) His mother made this shirt for (He)
 (d) Have you bought tickets for ? (They)
 (e) Would you like to come with ? (We)

3. Note the difference between Possessive Adjective and Possessive pronoun. (Possessive Adjective এবং Possessive Pronoun -এর পার্থক্য লক্ষ্য কর।)

Possessive Adjective Possessive Pronoun
 This is *my* book. This book is *mine*.

We can say the same thing in three ways.

(i) This is *my* book. (ii) This book is *mine*. (iii) This book *belongs to me*.

Now re-write each of the following sentences in two other ways.

- (i) This is his ball (ii) (iii)
 (ii) That is your book (iii) (iii)
 (i) Those are our pens (ii) (iii)

4. Apply reflexive pronouns in the following sentences.

- (i) Lila makes her bed
 (ii) Her mother cooks
 (iii) I'll do the sum
 (iv) Badal washes his clothes
 (v) The boys clean the room

EXERCISE

1. How many kinds of pronouns are there? What are they?

Pronoun কয় প্রকার ও কি কি?

2. Give the various forms of personal pronoun in different persons and cases. (বিকল্প person ও case ও personal pronoun -এর রূপগুলি দাও।)

3. What is the difference between a Relative pronoun and an Interrogative pronoun though they look alike? (দেখতে একরকম হলেও Relative pronoun এবং Interrogative pronoun-এর মধ্যে পার্থক্য কি?)

4. Find out the pronouns and classify them.

(Pronoun গুলি খুঁজে বার কর এবং তাদের শ্রেণী বিভাগ কর।)

They have lost their books. Which is your book? Which books are yours? I gave him a pen but he did not return it. Any of the boys can do it. Some body will take it. I lost myself. He hurt himself. Who are you? What do you want? Each of the girls has gone home. Either of them can do it. Ahmed and Rahim love each other.

5. Fill in the blanks with appropriate pronouns in the following passage. (নিচের অনুচ্ছেদে সঠিক Pronoun বসিয়ে শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর।)

A farmer had three sons. — always quarrelled. — made the farmer unhappy. One day the farmer thought of a plan. — called in all his sons. — showed a bundle of sticks and asked — to break the bundle. All — sons tried but no one could break it.

6. Read the following passage and find out different types of pronouns used in it. (নিচের অনুচ্ছেদটি পড় এবং বিভিন্নরকম Pronoun খুঁজে বার কর।)

Once king Solomon invited the queen of Sheba to his kingdom. The queen was pleased. She said to the king's messenger, "Ours is a small kingdom and yet your great ruler wants to be our good friend. It is a great honour to me."

7. Choose the appropriate pronouns from the brackets and complete the sentences. (বন্ধনীর মধ্যে সঠিক pronoun-টি বেছে নিয়ে Sentence গুলি সম্পূর্ণ কর।)

- (a) — went to school. (me, mine, I)
 (b) — am talking with — friends (my, me, I, mine)
 (c) Can you run as fast as — (he, his, him)
 (d) The boys are taking — prizes. (our, their, your)
 (e) Lila is sitting in — room. (his, her, their)
 (f) Tell — about — school (me, our, your)

8. Find out the Relative pronouns in the following sentences. Tell the case of each and mention its antecedent. (নিচের বাক্যগুলি থেকে Relative Pronoun খুঁজে বার কর, তাদের case বল এবং তাদের antecedent উল্লেখ কর।)

- (a) The pen that you gave me is a very good one.
 (b) The answer which you gave is not right.
 (c) I know the woman whose child was burnt.
 (d) This is the boy whom I want.
 (e) Bring me the letters which the postman left.
 (f) This is the house that Jack built.
 (g) Show me the knife that you have bought.
 (h) He has not bought the knife that I asked for.

9. Fill in the blanks with appropriate Relative pronouns.

(উপযুক্ত Relative pronoun বসিয়ে শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর।)

- We always like those boys ——— speak the truth.
- He ——— does his best shall be praised.
- We saw the dog ——— worried the cat.
- I know ——— you mean.
- Most people want ——— they deserve.
- Where is the book ——— I gave you?
- God helps those ——— help themselves.
- No man can lose ——— he never had.

10. Join the pairs of sentences with Relative pronouns.

(Relative pronoun -এর সাহায্যে বাক্যদ্বয়কে যুক্ত কর।)

- This is the boy. The boy got the first prize.
- This is the building. It was built in a month.
- The letter reached me this evening. You sent the letter.
- The dog barks. The dog does not bite.
- This is the man. I want the man.
- This is the girl. The book of the girl is lost.
- I have found the umbrella. I had lost it.
- A boy came to me yesterday. He is your classmate.
- The film is about a spy. His wife betrays him.
- The boy were absent. Do you know them?

11. Join the sentences in column A to the sentences in column B using Relative pronouns—*who, which, that, whose, whom, who, which, that, whose, whom* এই Relative Pronoun গুলির সাহায্যে column-A এর বাক্যগুলির সাথে column-B এর বাক্যগুলি যুক্ত কর।

| A | B |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Here is the book | who leads to the station |
| 2. I met a lame man | head was off. |
| 3. The man is the Secretary | you lent me. |
| 4. Is this the road | you see on the chair. |
| 5. I gave the baby a dool | whom was walking in the field. |

12. Turn the statements into questions by using Interrogative pronouns or 'Wh' questions. (Int. Pronoun বা 'wh'-word এর সাহায্যে statement-কে question-এ পরিবর্তন কর।) এমনভাবে প্রশ্ন করবে যাতে Statement-গুলি উত্তর হিসাবে পাওয়া যায়।

| Statement | Question |
|--|--------------------|
| Example : I wanted his address. | What did you want? |
| A boy lived at Bhowanipur in Calcutta. | |
| His parents sent him to school. | |
| Pele is the king of football. | |
| Dipak is 14 years old. | |
| His father is a teacher. | |
| I have seen some birds in the garden. | |
| He invited some friends. | |
| He is going to buy some books. | |

13. Use the appropriate pronouns and write in your own English.

সে একটি পুস্তি নিয়ে। তোমার বাবা আমার বকে ছিলেন। অবশেষে সে নিজেকেই আমায় করিল।
অর্পণ আমার উপর কঠোর হইলেন না। আমরা তাহাকে তাহার সততার জন্য ভালোবাসি। তাহারা তাহাদের বই পড়ে। আমরা আমাদের বই পড়ি। আমি নিজেকেই অহুতি করিয়াছিলাম। তাহারা নিজেরাই চোরটিকে ধরিয়াছিলেন। মেয়েটি নিজেকে রান্না করে। ইহা নিজের করা দরকার (oneself)। তাহারা তাহাদিগকে অনুসরণ করিতে বলিল। শ্রীমতী আয়েনায় নিজেকে লেখিল। পাগলা কুকুর যাহাকে (whomsoever) হত্যা

পায়, তাহাকেই কামড়ায়। তিনি তোমাকে ডাকিয়া পাঠাইয়াছেন। এই ছোপটি কে? তুমি কাকে চাও? এটি কার সাট? সে কি চায়? কোন ছোপটি অঁঠম শ্রেণীতে পড়ে? যে কেহ (Anyone) একাজ করিলে সেই শাস্তি পাইবে।

14. Use the Relative pronouns and write in your own English.

যে ছোপটি এখানে আঁসিয়াছিল সে এই। তুমি আমাকে যে বইখানা দিয়াছিলে, তাহা একখানি পড়ের বই। সে যে কলমটি হারাইয়াছিল, তাহা আমার। যে হাট সোমনা গেল (rocks the cradle) তাহাই রাজা চালায়। যাহারা পরিশ্রমী তাহারই কৃতকার্য হয়। যাহারা সত্যবাদী তাহারই শ্রদ্ধা পায়। যে চাউল তোমরা খাও তাহা মিহি (fine)। এমন কোন বাড়ী নাই যেখানে সুড়া ঢোকে নাই। যাহা পান তাহাই নাও। যাহা কিছু (whatever) পাও তাহাই নাও। যে কেহ (whoever) একাজ করিতে পারে।

15. Write the following passage in your own English.

আমরা যে সময় ব্রেসিডেলি জেল থেকে আদিপুর জেলে স্থানান্তরিত হই, সে সময় আদিপুর জেলে আমাদের ওয়ার্ড (ward) মণুর নামে একজন কর্মসি কাজ করত। আট দশবার সে জেলখানা ঘুরেছে। কিছুদিন কাজ করার পর দেশবন্ধুর উপর মণুরের তিক্ত ও ভালবাসা জন্মিল। সে তাঁকে বানা বলে ডাকতে লাগল। মণুরের প্রতি দেশবন্ধুর সম্মোদনা ও ভালবাসা ব্যাপারিত হল। মণুর তার জীবনের সকল ইতিহাস তাঁকে বলল। মুক্তির সময় (time of release) নিকটবর্তী হলে দেশবন্ধু তাকে বললেন যে তার খাবারের পর তিনি তাকে নিজেরা খাওয়াতে রাখবেন, যেন (so that) সে অসব সবে পড়ে পুনরায় উদ্ধারিত না করে। মণুরের খাবারের দিন দেশবন্ধু লোক বাড়িতে তাকে নিজের বাড়ীতে নিতে আসেন।



CHAPTER-9 MORE ABOUT ADJECTIVES

An Adjective is a word used to qualify a noun or a pronoun.

—J. C. Nesfield.

অন্যভাবে যে word-এর দ্বারা Noun বা Pronoun-এর দোষ, গুণ, অবস্থা, সংখ্যা বা পরিমাণ বুঝানো থাকে Adjective বলে।

Adjective are mainly of two types (Adjective প্রধানত দু' প্রকার) :

Attributive Adjective and Predicative Adjective.

Adjective যখন Noun এর পূর্বে বসে তার attribute অর্থাৎ দোষগুণ প্রকাশ করে, তখন তাকে Attributive Adjective বলে। আর যখন Verb বা ক্রিয়ার পরে Predicate হিসাবে বসে Noun বা Pronoun-কে qualify করে, তখন তাকে Predicative Adjective বা বিশেষ্য বিশেষণ বলে। যেমন—

বুদ্ধিমত্তী যেহেতু পরীক্ষায় প্রথম স্থান অধিকার করেছিল—The intelligent girl stood first in the examination. (Attributive Adjective).

যেহেতু বেশ বুদ্ধিমত্তী—The girl is very intelligent. কিন্তু সে খুব অলস—But she is very lazy. (Predicative Adjective).

***Note:** Both Attributive Adjective and Predicative Adjective qualify a noun. But only Predicative Adjective qualifies a pronoun. [Attributive Adjective এবং Predicative Adjective Noun-কে qualify করে। কিন্তু কেবলমাত্র Predicative Adjective Pronoun-কে qualify করে।]

However, there are eight kinds of Adjectives in terms of nature.

অনুসৃতভাবে বিচারে Adjective আট প্রকার।

| Kinds of Adjectives | How to recognise them | Examples |
|-----------------------------|---|---|
| (1) Proper Adjectives | Proper Noun থেকে Proper Adjective হয়। | Asian, Chinese, French, English, African, Punjabi, etc. |
| (2) Adjective of quality | Noun বা Pronoun-এর দোষ, গুণ বা অবস্থা প্রকাশ করে। | good, bad, wise, noble, rich, poor, great, hot, cold, warm, etc. |
| (3) Adjective of quantity | Noun বা Pronoun-এর Quantity বা পরিমাণ বুঝায়। | much, huge, some, a little, all, any, half, full, whole, enough etc. |
| (4) Numeral Adjective | Noun বা pronoun-এর সংখ্যা বুঝায়। [one, two, three—cardinal number বা সংখ্যাব্যয়ক শব্দ; First, Second, Third—ordinal number বা ক্রমব্যাচক বা পূর্বপরাচক শব্দ।] | one, two, three, four, first, second, third, fourth, all, any, many, some, several, each, every, a few etc. |
| (5) Demonstrative Adjective | কোন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুকে বিশেষভাবে নির্দেশ করে। | this, that, these, those, such, etc. |
| (6) Distributive Adjective | একাদিক ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুকে মধ্যমোক্তাকৈ পৃথকভাবে নির্দেশ করে। | each, every, either, neither. |

MORE ABOUT ADJECTIVES

| Kinds of Adjectives | How to recognise them | Examples |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| (7) Interrogative Adjective | প্রশ্নাত্মক শব্দ (wh words) Noun-এর পূর্বে Adjective এর মতো ব্যবহৃত হয়। | whose, which, what. |
| (8) Possessive Adjective | অধিকার বা সম্বন্ধাত্মক Adjective. | my, our, your, his, her, their. |

***Note:** This is his book. My pen is lost. ইত্যাদি বাক্যে his, my, whose, which, what প্রদত্ত শব্দ Noun-এর পূর্বে বসে অধিকার বা সম্বন্ধ প্রকাশ করছে বলে এগুলিকে Possessive Adjective বলা হয়। কিন্তু my, his, her, your, our, their প্রভৃতিকে বর্তমানে Personal pronoun-এর Possessive case রূপেও ধরা হয়। যাইহোক, Demonstrative Adjective, Distributive Adjective, Interrogative Adjective এবং Possessive Adjective কে একত্রে Pronominal Adjective বলে।

এখন My, mine, our, ours, yours, her এবং hers-এর প্রয়োগ লক্ষ্য কর।

এটি আমার বই—This is my book. [Possessive Adjective]

এই বইটি আমার—This book is mine. [Possessive Pronoun]

এইভাবে, আরো কিছু Possessive Adjective এবং Possessive Pronoun দেখ।

এইটি আমাদের বাড়ি—This is our house.

এই বাড়িটি আমাদের—This house is ours.

এইটি তোমার কলম—This is your pen.

এই কলমটি তোমার—This pen is yours.

এটি তার (মেয়েটির) পুতুল—This is her doll.

এই পুতুলটি তার—This doll is hers.

Uses of Adjectives :

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| This is an <u>American</u> boy. | (Proper Adjective) |
| He likes a <u>Chinese</u> dish. | " " |
| <u>Indian</u> people do not like this. | " " |
| Lipika is a <u>clever</u> girl. | (Adjective of quality) |
| She is very <u>beautiful</u> but <u>lazy</u> . | " " |
| The rich men are not always <u>happy</u> . | " " |
| Bilas drinks <u>much</u> milk. | (Adjective of quantity) |
| The boy wants a <u>little</u> sugar. | " " |
| I ate <u>some</u> rice. | " " |
| He has lost <u>all</u> his wealth. | " " |
| I have <u>enough</u> sugar. | " " |
| Four girls are in the common room. | (Numeral Adjective) |
| The <u>first</u> boy has stood <u>third</u> this time. | " " |
| Not a <u>single</u> boy is in the classroom. | " " |
| <u>Some</u> boys are <u>clever</u> , not <u>all</u> . | " " |
| Are there <u>any</u> mango trees in the garden? | " " |
| There are <u>enough</u> spoons. | " " |
| This boy is stronger than <u>that</u> boy. | (Demonstrative Adjective) |
| <u>These</u> mangoes are sweet. | " " |
| <u>Those</u> rascals must be punished. | " " |
| <u>Each</u> boy got a prize. | (Distributive Adjective) |
| India expects <u>every</u> man to do his duty. | " " |
| You may take <u>either</u> side. | " " |
| She took <u>neither</u> side. | " " |

Whose book is this? (Interrogative Adjective)
Which Pen do you want?
What books are you reading?

*Note: Whose is this book? (Whose = Interrogative Pronoun)
Whose book is this? (Whose = Interrogative Adjective)
—Wren & Martin.

This is my book and that is your book. (Possessive Adjective)
There are two more Adjectives—Emphasizing and Exclamatory

Adjectives:

Emphasizing Adjectives:

Own and very are used as emphasizing Adjectives.

Own এবং Very এই দুটি শব্দ জোরপূর্ণক Adjective-রূপে ব্যবহৃত হয়।

He was beaten at his own game. (সে নিজের চমকানিতে নিজের পরাস্ত হল।)

He was paid back by his own coin. (তার নিজের কৌশল নিজে ফিরে পেল।)

Mind your own business. (নিজের কাজে মন দাও।)

I saw it with my own eyes. (আমি নিজের চোখেই এটা দেখেছিলাম।)

The incident happened before my very eyes. (ঘটনটা আমার চোখের সামনেই ঘটল।)

That is the very thing we want. (এই জিনিসটিই আমরা চাই।)

Exclamatory Adjectives: What folly! What a fall! What an idea!
What a blessing! What a piece of work is man!

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES

Many Adjectives are formed from Nouns:

| Noun | Adjective | Noun | Adjective |
|------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Boy | boyish | Benefit | beneficial |
| Child | childish | Education | educational |
| Fool | foolish | Devotion | devotional |
| Beauty | beautiful | Health | healthy |
| Care | careful | Dirt | dirty |
| Hope | hopeful | Ease | easy |
| Need | needful | Storm | stormy |
| Peace | peaceful | Sun | sunny |
| Play | playful | Leaf | leafy |
| Success | successful | Anger | angry |
| Use | useful | Glory | glorious |
| Wonder | wonderful | Envy | envious |
| Shame | shameless | Ambition | ambitious |
| Sense | senseless | Courage | courageous |
| Cease | ceaseless | Outrage | outrageous |
| Tire | tireless | Danger | dangerous |
| Silk | silken | Nerve | nervous |
| Gold | golden | Telegraph | telegraphic |
| Cost | costly | Laugh (হাসি) | laughable |
| Man | manly | Belief | believable |
| King | kingly | Desire | desirable |
| Life | lively (লাইভলি) | Pardon | pardonable |
| Gift | gifted | Force | forceful |
| Music | musical | Office | official |
| Crime | criminal | Voice | vocal |
| Attraction | attractive | People | popular |

| Noun | Adjective | Noun | Adjective |
|--------------|--------------|---------|-------------|
| Destruction | destructive | Hand | handsome |
| Distribution | distributive | Trouble | troublesome |
| Production | productive | Quarrel | quarrelsome |

Some Adjectives are formed from Verbs

| Verb | Adjective | Verb | Adjective |
|----------|-------------|---------|------------|
| Act | active | Move | movable |
| Attract | attractive | Rely | reliable |
| Detect | detective | Add | additional |
| Deceive | deceptive | Edit | editorial |
| Include | inclusive | Forget | forgetful |
| Instruct | instructive | Trust | trustful |
| Talk | talkative | Invent | inventive |
| Agree | agreeable | Prevent | preventive |
| Desire | desirable | Advise | advisory |
| Enjoy | enjoyable | Love | Lovely |

Some Adjectives are formed from other Adjectives

| Adjective | Adjective | Adjective | Adjective |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| Economic | economical | Black | blackish |
| Tragic | trageal | White | whitish |
| Three | threefold | Large | largely |
| Whole | wholesome | Sick | sickly |

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Read the sentences: (বাক্যগুলি পড়।)

Raju is a tall boy. (রাজু একটি লম্বা ছেলে।)

Sibu is taller than Raju. (শিবু রাজুর চেয়ে লম্বা।)

Debu is the tallest of these three. (দেবু এই তিনজনের সবচেয়ে লম্বা।)

লক্ষ্য কর, উপরের বাক্যগুলিতে tall, taller এবং tallest তিনটিই Adjective. এদের মধ্যে প্রথম বাক্যে tall Adjective-টি সাধারণভাবে বসেছে, দ্বিতীয় বাক্যে taller Adjective-টি দুজনের মধ্যে তুলনা বোঝাচ্ছে এবং তৃতীয় বাক্যে tallest Adjective-টি তিনজনের মধ্যে তুলনা বোঝাচ্ছে।

এই ভাবে সাধারণ Adjective থেকে দুই এর মধ্যে তুলনা এবং দুই-এর বেশির মধ্যে তুলনা বোঝাতে Adjective-এর যে রূপ হয়, তাকে Degree of Comparison বলে।

এইভাবে Adjective-এর তিনটি form বা রূপ হলো:

1. Positive Degree: Adjective যখন সাধারণভাবে বসে।
2. Comparative Degree: যখন দুটি ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুর মধ্যে তুলনা করা হয়।
3. Superlative Degree: যখন দুইয়ের অধিক ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুর মধ্যে তুলনা করা হয়।

Rules of Comparison

(i) Most Adjective of one syllable by adding -er and -est:
সাধারণত : এক syllable বিশিষ্ট Adjective থেকে Comparative এ -er এবং Superlative এ -est যোগ হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Bold (সাহসী) | bolder | boldest |
| Cold (ঠান্ডা) | colder | coldest |
| Old (বয়সে বড়, পুরাতন) | older | oldest |
| Old (পারিবারিক সম্পর্কে বড়) | elder | eldest |
| Clever (চতুর) | cleverer | cleverest |
| Few (অল্প কয়েকটি) | fewer | fewest |
| Great (মহান) | greater | greatest |

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Hard (কঠিন) | harder | hardest |
| High (উঁচু) | higher | highest |
| Kind (কিন্ড) | kinder | kindest |
| Low (নিচু) | lower | lowest |
| Long (দীর্ঘ) | longer | longest |
| Poor (দরিদ্র) | poorer | poorest |
| Rich (খনি) | richer | richest |
| Short (স্কেট, খাটো) | shorter | shortest |
| Small (ছোট) | smaller | smallest |
| Strong (দুর্জয়) | stronger | strongest |
| Soft (নরম) | softer | softest |
| Sweet (মিষ্টি) | sweeter | sweetest |
| Tall (দীর্ঘ) | taller | tallest |
| Weak (দুর্বল) | weaker | weakest |

*Note: Old থেকে সাধারণভাবে হয়েছে বড় বা পুরাতন আরো Comparative-এ

এবং Superlative-এ oldest হয়। কিন্তু পারিবারিক সম্পর্ক থাকলে old থেকে

Comparative-এ elder এবং Superlative-এ eldest হয়।

When the positive ends in e, only r and st are added.

Positive এর শেষে e থাকলে শুধু r এবং st যোগ হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Able (সক্ষম) | abler | ablest |
| Brave (সাহসী) | braver | bravest |
| Fine (সুন্দর, পাকা) | finer | finest |
| Late (সময় সম্পর্কে পরবর্তী) | later | latest |
| Late (ক্রমসম্পর্কে পরবর্তী) | latter | last |
| Large (বড়) | larger | largest |
| Noble (মহৎ) | nobler | noblest |
| Pale (হালকা) | paler | palest |
| True (সত্য) | truer | truest |
| Wise (জ্ঞানী) | wiser | wisest |
| White (সাদা) | whiter | whitest |

*Note: সময় সম্পর্কে পরবর্তী বলে later ও latest হয়। যেমন— This is the later/latest edition of the book. কিন্তু ক্রম, অর্থাৎ order বা position বোঝালে Latter ও last হয়। Ram and Shyam are two boys; the former is strong in Bengal and the latter in English. Amar is the last boy in the class.

(iii) When the positive ends in a consonant preceded by a Vowel, the Consonant is doubled before adding -er and -est.

Positive-এর শেষে Consonant এবং তার ঠিক পূর্বে Vowel থাকলে consonant-টি double করে -er and -est যোগ হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| Big (বড়) | bigger | biggest |
| Fat (মেটো) | fatter | fattest |
| Hot (গরম) | hotter | hottest |
| Mild (পাশল) | madder | maddest |
| Sad (দুঃখ) | sadder | saddest |
| Thin (পাতলা) | thinner | thinnest |

*Note: Positive-এর শেষে যদি দুটি consonant থাকে তবে একটি consonant-এর পূর্বে দুটি Vowel থাকে, তবে consonant-এর দ্বিগুণ হয় না।

| | | |
|-------|---------|----------|
| Thick | thicker | thickest |
| Cool | cooler | coolest |

When the positive ends in y, preceded by a consonant, the y is changed into i before adding -er and -est.

যখন Positive-এর শেষে y থাকে এবং তার পূর্বে consonant থাকে, তখন y-কে e-র পরে i-এst যোগ হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|---------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| Busy (ব্যস্ত) | busier | busiest |
| Easy (সহজ) | easier | easiest |
| Dry (তৃষ্ণ) | drier | driest |
| Happy (সুখী) | happier | happiest |
| Heavy (ভারী) | heavier | heaviest |
| Holy (পবিত্র) | holier | holiest |
| Merry (আনন্দিত) | merrier | merriest |
| Mighty (শক্তিশালী) | mightier (mightier) | mightiest |
| Ugly (বুড়ী) | uglier | ugliest |
| Wealthy (সম্পদশালী) | wealthier | wealthiest |

*Note: যখন Adjective-এর শেষে y থাকলে ও তার পূর্বে Vowel থাকে, তখন y-এর কোন পরিবর্তন না হয়ে -er এবং -est হয়।

Gay (আনন্দিত) gayet gayest

grey (গ্রে) Greyer greyest

(v) Some Comparatives and Superlatives are not formed from the Positive.

কতকগুলি Comparative এবং Superlative তাদের Positive থেকে আলাদা হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Good (ভালো) | better | best |
| Bad (মন্দ) | worse | worst |
| Far (দূর) | farther | farthest |
| Fore (আগে) | further | furthest |
| Little (কম) | less | least |
| Much (অধিক) | more | most |
| Many (অনেক) | more | most |

*Note: Calcutta is farther from Bombay than Patna. (distance)

He made no further remarks. (further = additional)

(vi) Adjectives of two or more than two syllables form the Comparative and the superlative by adding more and most before them.

দুই বা ততোধিক syllable-বিশিষ্ট Adjective-এর Comparative এবং Superlative করতে হয় more এবং most যোগ করতে হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Beautiful (সুন্দর) | more beautiful | most beautiful |
| Dutiful (কর্তব্যপরায়ণ) | more dutiful | most dutiful |
| Careful (বুদ্ধিবান) | more careful | most careful |
| Courageous (সাহসী) | more courageous | most courageous |
| Difficult (কঠিন) | more difficult | most difficult |
| Diligent (পরিশ্রমী) | more diligent | most diligent |
| Important (গুরুত্বপূর্ণ) | more important | most important |
| Intelligent (বুদ্ধিমান) | more intelligent | most intelligent |
| Industrious (অধ্যবসায়ী) | more industrious | most industrious |
| Learned (শিক্ষিত) | more learned | most learned |

(vii) There are some Latin Comparatives. (এছাড়া কিছু Latin comparative আছে) যেমন—Junior, Senior, Inferior, Superior, Minor, Major

Prior, Anterior, Posterior. প্রকৃতি। সাধারণ ভাবে Comparative -এর পর (than) হলেও এই Latin Comparative -এর পর to বসে। এদের positive এবং superlative এর কোন form নেই। এই Latin Comparative -এর ব্যবহার লক্ষ্য কর :

I am junior to him. (বয়সে ছোট বা চাকরিতে অধীন।)

He is senior to me. (বয়সে বড় বা চাকরিতে উপরতন।)

Amal is junior to Bimal in age but senior to him in service.

This type of tea is inferior (নিম্ন) to that.

This type of rice is superior (উৎকৃষ্ট) to that.

The Vedas are anterior (পূর্ববর্তী) to Puranas.

The iron age is posterior (পরেবর্তী) to the copper age.

Use of Degrees

Use of positive degree : Ram is as old as shyam.

Use of Comparative degree : Jadu is older than Madhu.

{ Jadu is the oldest of all.

Use of superlative degree : He is the oldest boy in his class.

*Note : Positive degree -র তুলনা হলে আগে as এবং পরে as হয়।

কখনো কখনো আগের as থাকে না। যেমন— He is ferocious as a tiger.

Comparative degree-র পরে than বসে।

Superlative degree-র আগে the এবং পরে of বা in বসে।

Change of Degree without any change of meaning.

অর্থ অপরিবর্তিত রেখে Degree পরিবর্তন করার পদ্ধতি :

He is ferocious as a tiger. (Positive)

= A tiger is not more ferocious than he. (Comparative)

Ram is stronger than Shyam. (Comparative)

= Shyam is not as strong as Ram. (Positive)

= Shyam is less strong than Ram. (Comparative)

Hari is the laziest boy in the class. (Superlative)

= Hari is lazier than any other boy in the class. (Comparative)

= No other boy in the class is as lazy as Hari (Positive)

Iron is the most useful metal. (Superlative)

= Iron is more useful than any other metal. (Comparative)

= No other metal is as useful as iron (Positive)

Gold is one of the most precious metals. (Superlative)

= Gold is more precious than many other metals. (Comparative)

= Very few metals are as precious as gold. (Positive)

এবার নিচের দুটি বাক্যে braver এবং more brave-এর অর্থ পার্থক্য লক্ষ্য কর :

Ram is braver than Shyam. (শ্যামের চেয়ে রাম সাহসী)

Ram is more, brave than prudent. (রাম যতটা জানী তার চেয়ে বেশী সাহসী)

An Important Note

The Superlative with most is sometimes used when there is no ideas of Comparison, but merely a desire to indicate a quality in a very high degree.

কখনো কখনো most বসিয়ে যে Superlative হয়, তাতে কোন তুলনার ভাব থাকে না, কেবলমাত্র কোন একটি বিশেষ অবস্থা বা গুণ যুব বেশি পরিমাণে আছে এরূপ বোঝায়।

This is most unfortunate. (এটি খুবই দুর্ভাগ্যজনক।)

This is a most wonderful sight. (এটি একটি খুব চমৎকার দৃশ্য।)

It was a most eloquent speech. (এটি ছিল খুব উদার ভাষণ।)

* লক্ষ্য কর, এরূপ ক্ষেত্রে Superlative degree হলেও most এর পূর্বে the বসে না।

কখনো কোন article ই থাকে না, কখনো the-র পরিবর্তে a বসে।

Some idiomatic usages of Adjectives

সূক্ষ্ম কাপড়—Fine cloth.

সূক্ষ্ম চাল—Fine rice.

সূক্ষ্ম পলি—A narrow lane.

মোটা লোক—A fat man.

মোটা কাপড়—Coarse cloth.

মোটা কাগজ—Thick paper.

মোটা বেতন—Fat salary.

মোটা বুদ্ধি—Dull intellect.

শক্ত মাটি—Hard soil.

শক্ত কাজ—Hard (difficult) task.

শক্ত প্রশ্ন—Difficult question.

শক্ত শরীর—A strong body.

শক্ত রোগ—A serious disease.

নরম মাটি—Soft soil.

নরম কথা—Soft word.

নরম মাদ—Rotten fish.

নরম মেজাজ—Mild temper.

অল্প আয়—Poor income.

অল্প দূর—Short distance.

অল্প মূল্য—Low price.

অল্প জ্বর—Slow fever.

মন্দ খবর আগে যায়—Ill news runs apace.

মন্দ মন বায়ু বইছে—A gentle breeze is blowing.

তার সময় মন্দ পড়েছে—He/She has fallen in evil days.

একদিন সোনার বাজার মন্দ—Gold market is dull now.

তোমার একটা ভাল খবর আছে—Here is a good news for you.

তোমরা সবাই ভাল আছ তো?—Are you all well?

তোমার ভাইটি আছে ভাল—Your brother is strong in Mathematics.

তার চেহারাখানা বেশ ভাল—He/She has a lovely appearance.

ছোট শিশুর যত্ন নিতে হয়—A little child needs care.

তার চুল ছোট—His/Her hair is short.

এটা অতি ছোট ব্যাপার—It is a very small (petty) affair/trifle/matter.

সে একটা ছোট ঘরে বাস করে—He lives in a small house.

রিত্বিক আমার ছোট ভাই—Ritwik is my younger brother.

তার মনটা বড় ছোট—He is very mean minded.

উপেনবাবু একজন বড়লোক—Upenbabu is a rich man.

রবীন্দ্রনাথ একজন বড় মানুষ—Rabindranath is a great man.

ধীরেন আমার বড় ভাই—Dhiren is my elder brother.

তিনি বড় বংশের ছেলে—He comes of a high family.

সে বড়লোকের মহলে ঘোরাফেরা করে—He moves in high circles.

মুড়ু বড় কথা পলা তার অভ্যাস—He is in the habit of tall talks.

তোমার কি বড় লেগেছে?—Are you much hurt?

APPLIED SECTION

An Adjective gives more information about a Noun or a Pronoun. The form is the same for the Singular and the Plural. (Adjective: Noun word used for the singular and plural. Adjective: as cat, cats, a cat, cats.)

Example:

Look at the pretty bird. He and his brother are poor.
Look at those pretty birds. But certainly they are honest.

1. Fill in the blanks with the opposite of these words:

(Here we use opposite word for the given word.)

Fat, long, big, rich, clean, easy, early, noisy, boring, sour, fierce, straight.

(a) Rama is kind. She is and.

(b) Tinku always gets up early.

(c) Some sums are really easy.

(d) Some parts of the city are rich.

(e) We all like to eat oranges.

(f) Old people like to live in places.

(g) Most of the people in the villages are poor.

(h) I read in book yesterday.

2. Put the pairs of Adjectives in the sentences in the suitable order.

(Adjective pair: rich and poor.)

(a) Mr. Roy's room is very rich and poor (clean, neat).

(b) You have a coloured T.V. but we have a rich and poor T.V. (white, black).

(c) Give something to that rich man (old, poor).

(d) Vidyaagar gave his mother a very rich and poor (cheap, broken, expensive).

(e) Nila is wearing his mother's rich (lovely, beautiful).

3. Apply the positives, comparatives and the Superlatives correctly. (Adjective: Positive, Comparative, Superlative)

as + adjective + as

Naren is as tall as Haren.

Arun is as old as Martin.

Negative comparison

not as + as

not so + as

A grape is not as big as an orange.

Rabeya weighs as much as Rahima. Does she eat Rahima too?

Comparative (-er/more) + than

Arun is older than Bipin.

Bipin is younger than Arun.

Lipika is more beautiful than Latika.

Latika is less beautiful than Lipika.

Comparative only

I think your handwriting is better.

Have you any Umbrella? (small)

the + comparative + the + comparative

MORE ABOUT ADJECTIVES

The sooner the better. The bigger the house is, the more money it will cost. The more leisure he has, the happier he is (happy).

the + superlative only.

Asia is the biggest continent.

Which is the smallest continent? (small)

Which is the longest river? (long)

4. Comparatives and Superlatives appear much stronger in the following sentences.

A Fiat is more costly than Maruti.

An Ambassador is much more costly.

A Contessa is far more costly.

A standard 2000 is by far the most costly.

Now complete the following sentences:

(i) Which place is West Bengal has the most rainfall?

(ii) The picture ever sold was painted by Van Gogh.

(iii) Did Maradona play better than he could?

(iv) Sharmila can dance better than many senior girls of her school.

(v) My brother reads English better than I can. I am rather a slow reader.

(vi) Do you feel better now?

5. Compare the climate of Calcutta and that of Darjeeling. Use comparative forms of the following words: hot, cold, wet etc.

EXERCISE

1. Pick out the Adjectives in the following sentences.

| Sentences | Adjectives |
|--|------------|
| (a) Every man has his duties. | |
| (b) Do not say the same thing twice. | |
| (c) The way was long, the wind was cold. | |
| (d) He was absent last week. | |
| (e) He died a glorious death. | |
| (f) Good wine needs no push. | |
| (g) The old man was both deaf and dumb. | |
| (h) He is a man of few words. | |
| (i) A small leak may sink a great ship. | |
| (j) The child fell down from a tall tree. | |
| (k) Neither party is quite in the right. | |
| (l) Which pen do you prefer? | |
| (m) There should not be much talk and little work. | |

2. Supply suitable Adjectives: (Adjective: rich and poor)

(a) The prize was won by Rahim.

(b) The woman lives in a wretched hut.

- (c) This is very _____ matter.
 (d) There were riots in _____ places.
 (e) Every cloud has a _____ lining.
 (f) Suddenly arose a _____ storm.
 (g) He is a man of _____ ambition.
 (h) He always walks with a _____ step.
 (i) Have you any _____ reason for leaving the country?
 (j) The battle of Waterloo ended in a _____ victory.

3. From Adjectives from the following words and place a Noun after each

Adjective.

(নিচের word ভলি থেকে Adjective গঠন কর এবং তারপর একটি Noun যোগ কর।)

act, doubt, ease, health, wealth, time, pity, heaven, love, hill, pain, wonder, peace, child, thought, hope, friend, quarrel, storm, star, leaf, sun.

Examples : / সৌন্দর্যপূর্ণ দিন—Sunny day. ঝড়ো-বিসৃষ্ট সমুদ্র—Stormy sea.
 নক্ষত্রবিশিষ্ট আকাশ—Starry sky. পাতার ফাঁক দিয়ে যে আকাশ দেখা যায়—leafy sky

4. Use each of the following Adjectives in a sentence : (নিচের প্রতিটি Adjective কে বাক্যে ব্যবহার কর।)

Lazy, big, small, tall, hard, sad, happy, rude, polite, rich, poor, young, old, long, short, healthy, clever, cruel, beautiful, ugly.

5. Change the degree of the following Adjectives :

(নিচের Adjective-গুলির Degree পরিবর্তন কর।)

| positive | Comparative | superlative |
|-------------|------------------|------------------|
| able | abler | ablest |
| easy | easier | easiest |
| early | earlier | earliest |
| busy | busier | busiest |
| strong | stronger | strongest |
| short | shorter | shortest |
| hot | hotter | hottest |
| big | bigger | biggest |
| good | better | best |
| bad | worse | worst |
| weak | weaker | weakest |
| intelligent | more intelligent | most intelligent |

6. Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of Adjectives

(Adjective-এর সঠিক form বসিয়ে শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর।)

- He is the of all in the class. (bad)
 He is than his sister. (tall)
 He is than his brother. (intelligent)
 She is than her sister. (happy)
 You are to me than life (dear)
 Iron is than gold. (cheap)
 Iron is of all metals. (useful)
 Gold is than iron. (valuable)
 Amal is as as Bimal. (old)
 She is her father's daughter. (old)
 This tree is than that. (old)
 Which do you like rain or sunshine? (good)

7. Fill in the blanks with suitable words from the brackets :

(বন্ধনীর মধ্যে থেকে সঠিক শব্দ বেছে নিয়ে শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর।)

I want a book of the edition. (last/latest)

MORE ABOUT ADJECTIVES

Reba is than her sister. (older/elder)
 She has lost blood. (much/many)
 Nikhil has friends. (much/many)
 He came than his brother. (later/latter)
 I want the former, not the (latter/later)

8. Study the table below. (নিচের Table টি পড়।)

| Description | Mr. Bose | Mr. Das | Mr. Roy |
|-------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Age | 35 years | 50 years | 55 years |
| Height | 1.7 metres | 1.5 metres | 1.6 metres |
| Weight | 52 Kg. | 48 Kg. | 50 Kg. |

Now fill up the blanks with suitable words :

(সঠিক শব্দ বসিয়ে শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর।)

Mr. Bose is not old Mr. Roy.

He has weight Mr. Das.

Mr. Roy is taller Mr. Das, but Mr. Bose is

9. Make comparison between these pairs using the words given in the brackets. They may be equal or unequal.

(বন্ধনী থেকে শব্দ নিয়ে শব্দ-যুগলের তুলনা কর। তারা সমান হতে পারে, নাও হতে পারে।)

- (a) Cricket and football (interesting/exciting)
 (b) English and Arithmetic (difficult/interesting)
 (c) A dog and cat (pretty/faithful)
 (d) The rainy season and the winter season (good/pleasant)
 (e) Delhi from Calcutta and Bombay from Calcutta (far).

10. Apply Degrees of Adjectives and write in your own English :

(Degrees of Adjectives ব্যবহার করে নিজের ইচ্ছাক্রমে লেখ।)

হেলেটি বলবান। হেলেটি তার ভাইয়ের চেয়ে বলবান। হেলেটি সবচেয়ে বলবান। তোমার বাবা সুখী। হেলেটি বলবান। হেলেটি তার ভাইয়ের চেয়ে বলবান। হেলেটি সবচেয়ে বলবান। তোমার বাবা সুখী। তোমার বাবা তোমার কাকার চেয়ে সুখী। চাউল সস্তা। চাউল গমের চেয়ে সস্তা। চাল সব খাদ্যপদার্থের মধ্যে সস্তা। আমার দান। আমার চেয়ে দুঃখের বড়। রাম হরির চেয়ে পাঁচ বছরের ছোট। গোলাপফুল জবাফুলের চেয়ে সুন্দর ফুল। চাকরটি বুদ্ধিমান। চাকরটি পাচকের চেয়ে বুদ্ধিমান। গোবরা সবচেয়ে বুদ্ধিমান চাকর। বই দুখারির মধ্যে তোমারটি কম দামী (less costly of the two)। ইহা অতি ভয়ঙ্কর (a most horrible) দুশা। ইহা খুব শক্ত কাঁজ। সে যথাসাধ্য চেষ্টা করিল। ইহা অনেক দরকারী (far more important)। পৃথিবী চন্দ্র হইতে অনেক বড় (much bigger)। সে তোমার চেয়ে বেশ সুখী।

11. Write the following passage in your own English.

আমরা সকলে ধীরে ধীরে হতে পারি না এবং লক্ষ লক্ষ (millions) মানুষকে পরিচালনা করতে পারি না অথবা নির্মমতার (oppressed) মুক্তির (freedom) জন্য সংগ্রাম করতে পারি না। কিন্তু আমরা প্রত্যেকেই আমাদের চারপাশের সকলের জীবনকে সুখী করতে পারি। আমরা আমাদের পীড়িত প্রতিবেশীর সেবা করতে পারি, নিরক্ষরকে (illiterate) শিক্ষিত করতে পারি, হতভাগ্য ব্যক্তিকে (wretched) একটি আরাম দিতে পারি, এবং আমাদের চারপাশের সবকিছুকে পরিষ্কার (clean and tidy) রাখতে পারি। আমরা সবাই সময় এবং ধৈর্যশীল (patient) হতে পারি এবং মনের মধ্যে ভালবাসা পোষণ করতে পারি। আমরা সন্তোষী, বিনয়ী (humble) এবং বশবর্তী (obedient) হতে পারি। এগুলিই জীবনের সবচেয়ে বড় ব্যাপার, কারণ এগুলি ছাড়া পৃথিবীর মানুষ কখনোই সুখী হতে পারে না।

CHAPTER-10 MORE ABOUT VERBS & MODALS

A verb is a word used for saying something about some person or thing.
—J. C. Nesfield.

Verb হলো এমন শব্দ যা কোন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু সম্বন্ধে কিছু বার্তা জানা ব্যবহৃত হয়।
A Verb is a word that tells or asserts something about a person or thing.
—Wren & Martin.

verb হলো এমন শব্দ যা কোন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু সম্বন্ধে কিছু বলে।
Verb-কে আরো শক্তিতে প্রকাশ করা যায়।

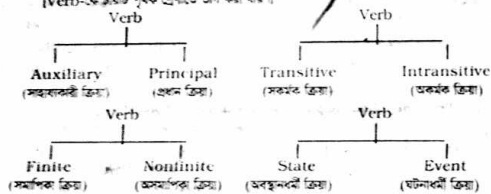
A verb is a word that denotes being, having or doing something.
Verb হলো এমন শব্দ যা কিছু হওয়া, থাকা বা করা বুঝায়।
—P. C. Das

A Verb may tell us—

- (1) What a person or thing is : (কোন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু কি হয়)
Mr. John is a teacher.
His shirt is white.
- (2) What a person or thing has : (কোন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু কি আছে)
Shila has a pet cat.
A chair has four legs.
- (3) What a person or thing does : (কোন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু কি করে)
Latif kicks the ball.
The clock strikes ten.

KINDS OF VERBS

Verbs are classified in four different ways.
(Verb-কে চারটি পৃথক প্রকারে ভাগ করা যায়।)



1. Auxiliary Verb and Principal verbs.

Study the following table. (নিচের Table-টি দেখ।)

| Auxiliary Verb | Principal Verb |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| She is writing a letter. | She is a teacher. |
| I have come to school. | I have an umbrella. |
| He does not go to school. | He does his work perfectly. |
| She will sing a song. | She will have a prize. |

An Auxiliary verb is one which helps a Principal verb to form a tense or mood or voice. Hence it is also called a Helping verb.

লক্ষ্য কর, A Section-এর বাক্যগুলিতে is writing, have come, does not go এবং will sing-এর মধ্যে is, have, does এবং will ক্রিয়াগুলির প্রত্যেকটি write, come, go এবং sing-এই মূল ক্রিয়া। Helping verb বা সাহায্যকারী ক্রিয়া।
The verbs which are used independently without help from other verbs are called Principal verbs or Main verbs.

লক্ষ্য কর, B section-এর বাক্যগুলিতে is, have, does এবং wills ক্রিয়াগুলি অন্য কোন ক্রিয়ার সাহায্যে কাজই ব্যবহৃত হয়েছে। তাই এগুলি Principal verb বা Main verb বা মূল ক্রিয়া।

Auxiliary verbs or Helping verbs are of two types. **কোন দুই ভাগে ভাগ করা যায়?**

- (1) Primary Auxiliaries or Tense Auxiliaries.
- (2) Modal Auxiliaries.

| Primary Auxiliaries or Tense Auxiliaries | Modal Auxiliaries |
|---|---|
| am, are, is, was, were, be, have, has, had, do, does, did, shall, should, will, would, may, might, can, could, must, ought to, used to, would have, should have, might have, could have, would be, should be, might be, could be, would have been, should have been, might have been, could have been, would be, should be, might be, could be, would have been, should have been, might have been, could have been | can, could, may, might, must, ought to, used to, would, would have, should have, might have, could have, would be, should be, might be, could be, would have been, should have been, might have been, could have been |

Uses of Primary Auxiliaries or Tense Auxiliaries.

am, are, is, was, were, be, have, has, had, do, does, did, shall, should, will, would, may, might, can, could, must, ought to, used to, would have, should have, might have, could have, would be, should be, might be, could be, would have been, should have been, might have been, could have been
For indicating continuous or progressive tense and passive voice. (বর্তমান, অতীত, ভবিষ্যৎ ক্রিয়াগুলিতে)

I am doing the sum. (Present Progressive)
He was sleeping at night. (past Progressive)
The work is being done by me. (passive voice)
The sum has been worked out. (")
The work will be done by him. (")

Note : 'To be' may also be used as a Principal verb. ('To be') Principal verb হিসাবেও ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে।

আমি ভাল আছি—I am well.
সে বাড়িতে আছে—He is at home.
তুমি এখানে আছ—You are here.
নিরেন (হয়) একজন ইঞ্জিনিয়ার—Niren is an engineer.
তাহারা (হয়) সাহসী সৈনিক—They are brave soldiers.

To have : For indicating Perfect tense forms, Passive voice and Nominative Absolute. (Perfect tense বোঝাতে, Passive Voice বোঝাতে এবং Nominative Absolute বোঝাতে Auxiliary 'Have' verb ব্যবহৃত হয়।)

I have done the work. (Present Perfect)
He had left the school before the class was over. (past Perfect)
It has been raining for five days. (Pr. perfect Cont.)
The work has been done. (Passive voice)
The sun having risen, darkness disappeared (Nom. Absolute)

Note : 'To have' may also be used as a Principal verb. ('To have') Principal verb হিসাবেও ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে।

তাকে একটি লাল জামা আছে—He has a red shirt.

তাকে একটি সুন্দর ছাতা ছিল—She had a nice umbrella.

তাদের কজন ছেলেমেয়ে আছে—How many children have they?

আমরা কিশেষ (কিছু) খাবো?—What shall we have for dinner?

লক্ষ্য কর, নিজে আচ্ছ, আর বা আছে বোঝাতে 'be' verb এবং কাছাকাছি কিছু আছে বোঝাতে 'have' verb principal Verb রূপে ব্যবহার হয়।
Note : British English uses both *have* and *have got* but prefers the second.

We *have/have got* a cottage in the village.
 They *have/have got* a small flat.

10.30: (i) To make an Interrogative sentence (প্রশ্নবোধক বাক্য তৈরি করতে) :

Do you like foot ball?
 Does he take tea?
 Did she write a letter?

(ii) To make a Negative sentence (না-বাচক বাক্য তৈরি করতে) :

Full forms **Shortened forms**
 I do not like him. do not = don't
 He does not go to school. does not = doesn't
 They did not play football. did not = didn't

(iii) To give a stress in a statement (বাক্যের জোর দিতে) :

I do hereby authorise you.

He did help you and you should not deny that.

***Note :** 'To do' is generally used as a Principal Verb.

('To do' সাধারণতঃ Principal verb হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়।)

আমরা নিয়মিতভাবে আমাদের বাড়ির কাজ করি—
 We do our home work regularly.

তাহারা অত্যন্ত সতর্কভাবে কাজটি করত।
 They did the work sincerely.

Uses of Modal Auxiliaries (MODALS)

Modal Auxiliaries are those helping verbs which help to express the mode or manner in which the action is done. (ক্রিয়া সম্পাদনের mode বা ধরণ বোঝানোর জন্য Modal Auxiliary ব্যবহার হয়।)

The modals are different from other Auxiliaries 'have', 'be' and 'do' in three ways.

[Modal গুলি অন্যান্য সাহায্যকারী ক্রিয়া থেকে তিন দিক দিয়ে ভিন্ন ধরনের।]

(i) The do not have s-forms, ing-forms, ed-forms or en-forms.

যেমন—do—does—did; have—having—had; be, being, been হতে পারে।

কিন্তু may—may—may; can—can—can হতে পারে না।

(ii) Modals take only the base form of Principal verbs after them.

(Modal এর পর Principal Verb এর কেবলমাত্র Base form অর্থাৎ present form বসে।)

I can do the work alone.

He may not come here today.

You must abide by the rules.

(iii) Modals modify the meaning of the main verbs. (Modal গুলি main verb-এর অর্থকে পরিবর্তিত করে।)

Does he play football? এই বাক্যে Does এই auxiliary verb-টি কেবলভাবে play-এই মূল verb-কে modify করে না; কেবল প্রশ্নবোধক বাক্য তৈরি করার জন্য Does এই auxiliary verb-টি ব্যবহৃত হয়েছে। কিন্তু যখন আমরা বলি, He can play football—তখন, সে ফুটবল খেলতে পারে অর্থাৎ তার ফুটবল খেলার ability দেখায়। এই ভাবে মূল Play verb-টিতে modify করার জন্য can এই Modal-টি ব্যবহৃত হয়েছে। এমন Modal-এর ব্যবহার দেখাঃ

| Modals | Functions | Examples |
|------------|--|---|
| | asking | Will you go to school? |
| | requesting | Would you give me a pen? |
| | asking | Shall I do the work? |
| | suggestion | You should work hard. |
| | ability | He can drive a car. |
| | ability | He could do the sum. |
| | requesting | Could you help me to do the sum? |
| May | Possibility সম্ভাবনা Permission (অনুমতি) prayer (ইচ্ছা/প্রার্থনা) | He may come here today. May I come in ? May you live long. |
| Might | Possibility সম্ভাবনা suggestion প্রস্তাব | His statement might be true. You might go there. |
| Must | certainty নিশ্চয়তা obligation বাধ্যতা | It must be good. You must do this. |
| Mustn't | Prohibition নিষেধ | You must not (mustn't) run in the sun. |
| Needn't | negation না-বাচক | I need not (needn't) want a book now. |
| Dare | bold assertion দৃঢ়-বক্তব্য | I dare say, you are a fool. |
| Dare n't | afraid to do করতে ভীত হওয়া | I dare not (daren't) follow you. He dare not (daren't) do it. [dares not হয় না।] |
| Ought (to) | moral obligation নৈতিক বাধ্যতা suggestion প্রস্তাব | We ought to love our neighbours. You ought to go to a doctor. |
| Used (to) | habit (অভ্যাস) | He used to walk early in the morning. |

Some More Examples :

Expressing ability :

ছেলেটি কবিতা লিখতে পারে।

মেয়েটি সুন্দর নাচতে পারে।

হরিণ দ্রুত দৌড়াতে পারে

P.C.D. (5A)

can পারা

The boy can write a poem.

The girl can dance gracefully.

The deer can run fast.

Expressing request :

তুমি কি আমাকে তোমার বইখানা ধার দেবে?
আমি কি এক কাপ চা পেতে পারি?

Expressing possibility :

সে আজ বাড়ী আসতে পারে।
আমি এখন বেড়াতে যেতে পারি।

Asking and giving permission :

আমি কি এখন বাড়ি যেতে পারি?
আমি কি ভেতরে আসতে পারি?

হ্যাঁ, তুমি আসতে পার।

Expressing possibility (Past tense) :

সে সহজেই কাজটি করতে পারত।
তারা বনভোজনের দলে যোগ দিতে পারত।

তারাও যেতে পারত।

Asking permission (Past tense) :

সে প্রথম পিরিয়ডের পর বাড়ি যেতে
পারে কিনা প্রধান শিক্ষককে জিজ্ঞাসা করল।

Expressing certainty/obligation :

তোমাকে তোমার কর্তব্য অবশ্যই করতে হবে।
তাকে অবশ্যই ক্লাস ছেড়ে যেতে হবে।

Expressing advice :

তোমার প্রতিদিন সকালে বেড়ানো উচিত।
সকাল ৯ টায় তোমার এখানে থাকা উচিত।

Use of Auxiliaries in short answers :

To avoid repetition of the main verb, the auxiliary verbs 'do', 'have', 'can', 'may', 'be', etc. are used in short answers.

Main verb-এর পুনরাবৃত্তি না করে সংক্ষেপে প্রশ্নের উত্তর দেবার জন্য do, have, can, may, be প্রভৃতি auxiliary verb ব্যবহার করা হয়।

Do you take tea in the morning? Yes, I do.

Have you got your umbrella? Yes, I have.

Can you drive a car? No, I can't.

Is he going to school? Yes, he is.

May I go out, sir? Yes, you may.

Principal verbs are of two types :

- 1. Transitive Verb (সকর্মক ক্রিয়া)
- 2. Intransitive Verb (অসকর্মক ক্রিয়া)

A verb is Transitive if the action does not stop with the agent, but passes from the agent to something else.

A verb is Intransitive when the action stops with the agent, and does not pass from the agent to something else.

—J. C. Nesfield.

কোন ক্রিয়ার কর্ম সম্পাদনের জন্য যদি কর্তা ছাড়াও অন্য কাউকে বা অন্য কিছুকে প্রয়োজন হয়, তাহলে তাকে Transitive Verb বা সকর্মক ক্রিয়া বলে।

P.C.D. (5B)

কোন ক্রিয়ার কর্ম সম্পাদনের জন্য যদি কর্তা ছাড়া আর কারো প্রয়োজন না হয়, তাহলে তাকে Intransitive Verb বা অসকর্মক ক্রিয়া বলে।
সেজন্য Transitive verb-এর object বা কর্ম থাকে, কিন্তু Intransitive verb-এর Object বা কর্ম থাকে না।

Study the following table :

| Transitive (সকর্মক ক্রিয়া) | Intransitive (অসকর্মক ক্রিয়া) |
|---|--|
| We are preparing breakfast. We have caught a thief. They have bought a bicycle. The beggar wanted some money. | The girl is smiling. Why are you weeping? They old man is coughing. |

So we can say :

Transitive verbs need an object to completed their meaning.
Intransitive verbs need no object to complete their meaning.

What is an object ?

If we ask a verb "Whom" or "What", the answer we get is an object.

Most Transitive verbs take a single object. But such Transitive verbs as give, ask, offer, promise, tell etc. take two objects after them—as Indirect object which denotes the person to whom something is given or for whom something is done, and a direct object which is usually the name of something. —Wern & Martin.
বেশির ভাগ Transitive verb একটি মাত্র object গ্রহণ করে। কিন্তু give, ask, offer, promise, tell ইত্যাদি কিছু কিছু Transitive verb দুটি object গ্রহণ করে। Indirect object যা কোন ব্যক্তিকে কি-কেন্দ্রীয়া হয়েছে বা কোন ব্যক্তির জন্য কি করা হয়েছে বোঝায় এবং একটি Direct object যা সাধারণতঃ কোন বস্তুকে বোঝায়।

Examples : (Single object)

I want a book. He got a letter.

Double Object

His father gave me a book.
Ind. obj. Direct obj.

He told us a secret.
Ind. obj. Direct obj.

The teacher asked him a question.
Ind. obj. Direct obj.

Cognate Object (সমধাতুজ কর্ম) :

Some Intransitive verbs take after them an object similar to the verb. Such an object is called the Cognate object.

কিছু Intransitive verb সেই verb-এর অনুরূপ বা সমরূপ একটি Object গ্রহণ করে, তাকে বলে Cognate Object.

আমি তোকা ঘুম ঘুমলাম—I slept a sound sleep.

সে দারুণ যুদ্ধ করেছে—He has fought a good fight.

সে অদ্ভুত স্বপ্ন দেখেছিল—She dreamt a strange dream.

ধীরা মিষ্টি গান গেয়েছিল—Dhira Sang a sweet song.

শীলা অন্তরঙ্গভাবে হেসেছিল—Shila laughed a hearty laugh.

যুগ্মে পিঠী কী কাটাই না কঁপলেন—Mrs Mukherjee cried a bitter cry.
(অথবা) যুগ্মে পিঠী কী কাটাই না কঁপলেন—What a bitter cry Mrs Mukherjee cried!

Most verb can be used both as Transitive and as Intransitive verbs.
—Wren & Martin.
বহুভঙ্গ্য Verb (ক্রিয়া) Transitive এবং Intransitive উভয়ভাবেই ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে।

| Used Transitivity | Used Intransitively |
|---|--|
| Ring the bell He spoke the truth. The driver stopped the train The horse kicked the man. I feel a severe pain in my head. | The bell rang loudly. He spoke haughtily. The train stopped suddenly. This horse never kicks. How do you feel? |

Sometimes a Reflexive Pronoun used as an object is expressed or omitted.

কখনো কখনো একটি Reflexive Pronoun object হিসেবে ব্যবহৃত হয় বা উহা থাকে।

The man killed himself. (Reflexive Pronoun used as an object)

The bubble burst [itself]. (Reflexive Pronoun omitted)

Please keep [yourselves] quiet. (Reflexive Pronoun omitted)

Intransitive Verbs as Transitives :

(i) When an Intransitive verb is used in a causative sense it becomes a Transitive.

যখন কোন Intransitive verb causative sense-এ বা প্রয়োজক ক্রিয়া রূপে ব্যবহৃত হয়, তখন তা Transitive verb হয় :

The girl ran down the street. The girl ran a needle into her finger.
পক্ষীরা উড়ে-Birds fly. ছেলেরা খুঁড়ি উড়ায়-The boys fly their kites.

(iii) A few Verbs in common use are distinguished as Transitive or Intransitive by their spelling.

কয়েকটি Verb-এর Transitive এবং Intransitive form এ বনামের পরিবর্তন হয়।

| Intransitive | Transitive |
|--|---|
| Lie still on bed Rise early with the lark Sit there idly Many trees fall the storm. | Lay the basket there (Lay=cause to lie) Raise your hands (Raise=cause to rise) Set the lamp on the table (Set=cause to sit) The woodcutters fell trees. (fell=cause to fall) |

(iii) Some Intransitive verbs may become Transitive by having a preposition added to them.

কিছু Intransitive verb-এর পর Preposition যুক্ত হলে Transitive হয়। এগুলিকে Prepositional verb বা Group verb বলে।

All his friends laughed at him. Please look into the matter.
He will soon run through his fortune. The teacher asked for his name.
We talked about the affair several times. I wish for nothing more.

(iv) Sometimes the Preposition is prefixed to the verb and the verb becomes Transitive. [কখনো কখনো verb-এর পূর্বে preposition যুক্ত হয়ে Transitive হয়।]

Shivaji overcame the enemy. He bravely withstood the attack.
The river overflows its banks. They determined to withdraw the strike.

Verbs of Incomplete Predication :

(i) Some Intransitive verbs e.g. come, go, fall, die, sleep, lie, can never be used transitively. Hence these Verbs do not require any word to make the sense complete. But some Intransitive verbs e.g. be, become, seem, grow, taste require a word to make the sense complete. Such a verb is called a Verb of Incomplete Predication.

কিছু Intransitive verb যেন come, go, fall, sleep, lie ইত্যাদি কখনোই Transitive হয় না। কিন্তু কিছু Intransitive verb যেন be, become, seem, grow, taste ইত্যাদি অব্যয় সম্পূর্ণ করার জন্য একটি word চায়।

এই verb-কে Verb of Incomplete Predication বলে।

Tom is a dog. The earth is round.
John became a soldier. The man seems tired.
Sharmila looks happy. She has grown old.
She appears pleased. Roses smell sweet.
Honey tastes sweet. The man has fallen asleep.

Note : Such complements describe the subject. Hence these are called subjective complement. এই complement গুলি Subject-কে বর্ণনা করছে। তাই এগুলিকে Subjective complement বলে।

(ii) Some Transitive verbs require, besides an object, a complement to complete their predication. কিছু Transitive verb অব্যয় সম্পূর্ণ করার জন্য object ছাড়া একটি complement চায়।

We considered him honest. The players made Kapil Captain.
People elected him president. The jury found him guilty.
They chose him their leader. His parents named him Bholu.
Dipen called his cousin a liar. We consider the man trustworthy.

Note : Such complements describe the object. Hence these are called Objective complement. এই complement গুলি Object-কে বর্ণনা করছে। তাই এগুলিকে Objective Complement বলে।

Finite and Non-finite Verbs

A Finite verb is limited by person and number of the subject and changes its forms according to tenses.

Finite verb বা সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া Subject বা কর্তার person এবং number-এর দ্বারা সীমাবদ্ধ এবং tense অনুসারে তার রূপের পরিবর্তন হয়।

A Non-finite Verb is not limited by person and number as a verb that has a subject and is, therefore, called the Verb Infinitive or simply the Infinitive.

—Wren & Martin.

একটি Non-finite verb কোন Finite verb-এর মতো subject এর Person এবং number দ্বারা সীমাবদ্ধ হয় না। তাই একে Infinitive Verb বা Infinitive বলে। Infinitive এর কোন tense -ও হয় না।

Note : Finite verb বা সমাপিকা ক্রিয়ার দ্বারা বাক্যের কাজ শেষ হয়। কিন্তু সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া না বসিয়ে কেবলমাত্র Infinitive বা অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়ার দ্বারা বাক্যের কাজ শেষ হয় না। বাংলায় 'বাইতে' বাইতে ইত্যাদি অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়ার ইংরেজিতে to + verb হয়।

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Bimal goes to school. | Bimal does not like to go to school. |
| He attended three meetings. | He had three meeting to attend. |

| Finite verb (সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া) | Infinitive (অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়া) |
|--|--|
| We can save India by patriotism. | Patriotism is the way to save India. |
| He is so ill that he can not bear the strain of journey. | He is too ill to bear the strain of journey. |

Some more examples of Infinitives :

সে কাজটি করতে সিদ্ধান্ত করল—He decided to do the work.
সে আর চেষ্টা করতে চাইল না—He did not want to try again.

The word 'to' is often used with the Infinitive. But 'after certain Verbs (bid, let, make, need, dare, see, hear) we use the Infinitive without 'to'.

—Wren & Martin.

Infinitive -এর সঙ্গে **বাহ্যিক** to ব্যবহৃত হয়। কিন্তু **bid, let, make, need, dare, see, hear** verb -এর পর Infinitive করতে হলে to ব্যবহৃত হয় না।
আমি তাকে যেতে জোরপূর্বক করলাম—I **bade** him go.
তাকে সেখানে বসতে দাও—Let him sit there.
আমি তোমাকে যেতে দেব না—I will not let you go.
তাকে গাছ কাটতে দাও—Make him stand.
আমি তাকে গুলিতে বাধ্য করলাম—I **made** him run.
তোমার আর যাওয়ার প্রয়োজন নেই—You need not go today.
আমরা তাকে কাজ করতে দেখলাম—We **saw** him do the work.
আমি তাকে কান্নাকাতি শুনেছি—I **heard** her cry.
তোমার এটি করতে সাহস করা উচিত নয়—You **dare** not do it.

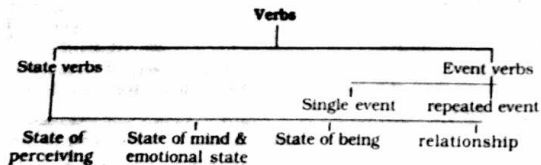
Sometimes an Infinitive is used as a noun and hence it becomes a subject. (Infinitive কখনো কখনো Noun হিসেবে Subject রূপে ব্যবহৃত হয়।)
To see is to believe. To give is better than (to) receive.

দেখা হল বিশ্বাস করা। দান করা ভালো।
সিঁরে দেখিলাম আমি পলাইত লোক—Seeing the lion I felt away.
সেই হইয়া সে কিছুক্ষণ বিশ্রাম করিল—Being tired he took rest for a while.

State verbs and Event verbs

In Modern English Grammar **Finite verbs** are classified in two broad categories. They are **state verbs** and **Event verbs**.

State verb এবং **Event verb**. (অবস্থাবর্ণী ক্রিয়া ও ঘটনাবর্ণী ক্রিয়া)



Examples of sentences with State Verb (অবস্থাবর্ণী ক্রিয়া)

| Verb | Sentences |
|------|-------------------------|
| see | I see. You are a fool! |
| hear | I hear a buzzing sound. |

| Verb | Sentences |
|-------|--|
| feel | I feel tired. She feels ashamed at your behaviour. |
| smell | The rose smells sweet. |
| taste | Honey tastes sweet. |

State of mind & emotional state (আবেগবশীল)

| Verb | Sentences |
|---------|---|
| love | Everybody loves his mother. |
| hate | You should not hate the poor. |
| like | Sharmila likes to wear White saree. |
| believe | I believe that you are telling the truth. |
| forget | I often forget his name. |
| appear | The dog appears to be mad. |

State of being (হওয়া-বাচক)

| Verb | Sentences |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| be | He is a very brave boy. |
| | We are Indians and they are Chinese. |
| remain | I remain silent in such cases. |
| | He remains dumb all along. |

State of relationship (সম্বন্ধ বাচক)

| Verb | Sentences |
|---------|--------------------------------|
| have | I have a brother and a sister. |
| own | Do you own a motor car? |
| owe | You owe your own house? |
| belong | This book belongs to me. |
| deserve | The brave boy deserves praise. |

Examples of sentences with Event Verbs : (ঘটনাবর্ণী ক্রিয়া)

| Verb | Sentences |
|------|---|
| buy | I bought an orange from the market. (single event) |
| buy | I buy oranges from the market regularly. (repeated) |

Difference between State Verbs and Event Verbs :

State Verbs are used only in Non-Progressive forms. But Event Verbs are used in both Progressive and Non-Progressive forms.

State Verb কেবলমাত্র Non-Progressive form-এ ব্যবহৃত হয়, কিন্তু Event Verb Progressive এবং Non-Progressive উভয় form-এ ব্যবহৃত হয়।

| Progressive | Non-Progressive |
|--|------------------------------------|
| State verb I am believing you হয় না। | State verb I believe you. (হয়) |
| Event verb He is going to school. | Event verb He goes to school |

Note: Sometimes State Verbs may be used in Progressive forms, but then the verbs are changed into Event Verbs and don't remain the State Verbs. *उदा. उदा. State verb Progressive form - 4 सपना है, सोय रहा था। State Verb सपना, Event Verb - 4 नींद है।*

Examples :

- He *has* a dog. (State verb)
 He *is having* his lunch. (Event verb)
 I *forgot* your name. (State verb)
 I *am forgetting* names now-a-days. (Event verb)
 Honey *tastes* sweet. (State verb)
 He *is tasting* honey. (Event verb)

Note : There are Some State Verbs which change their meanings when used in Progressive form.

सोय State Verb Progressive form - 4 सो रहा हूँ। सो रहा है।

Examples :

सो रहा हूँ। सो रहा है। सो रहे हैं। सो रही हैं।
सो रहा हूँ। सो रहा है। सो रहे हैं। सो रही हैं।
सो रहा हूँ। सो रहा है। सो रहे हैं। सो रही हैं।
सो रहा हूँ। सो रहा है। सो रहे हैं। सो रही हैं।

APPLIED SECTION1. Pronouns used with the verb **be** (full and short forms)

| FULL FORM | | | SHORT FORM | | |
|-----------|----------|--------------------------------|------------|----------|------------------------------|
| Person | Number | Pronoun & Verb | Person | Number | Pronoun & Verb |
| 1st | Singular | I am (not) | 1st | Singular | I am (not) |
| | Plural | We are (not) | | Plural | We're (not) We aren't |
| 2nd | Singular | You are (not) | 2nd | Singular | you aren't |
| | Plural | You are (not) | | Plural | You aren't |
| 3rd | Singular | He/She is (not) It is (not) | 3rd | Singular | He/She isn't It isn't |
| | Plural | They are (not) | | Plural | They aren't They're (not) |

Past form : 'was' with singular Pronouns (I, He, She, It)
 'were' with plural Pronouns (we, they) and
 with you (both singular and plural)

2. Pronoun used with the verb **have** (full and short forms)

| FULL FORM | | SHORT FORM | |
|-----------|------------|------------|--------------------|
| I | have (not) | I | haven't / ve (not) |
| We | | We | |
| You | | You | |
| They | | They | |
| He | has (not) | He | hasn't / s (not) |
| She | | She | |
| It | | It | |

Past form = had (not) hadn't

3. Pronoun used with the verb **do** (full and short forms)

| FULL FORM | | SHORT FORM | |
|-----------|------------|------------|---------|
| I | do (not) | I | don't |
| We | | We | |
| You | | You | |
| They | | They | |
| He | does (not) | He | doesn't |
| She | | She | |
| It | | It | |

4. Pronouns with 'shall'/'will'

| FULL FORM | | SHORT FORM | |
|-----------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| I | shall (not) | I | 'll won't |
| We | | We | |
| You | | You | |
| He | Will (not) | He | 'll Won't |
| She | | She | |
| They | | They | |
| It | | It | |

USE OF BE :

The verb **be** in the present form (am, is, are) is used in the following way :

These men are carpenters.

I am twelve.

These men are carpenters.

They are Chinese.

You are British.

I am twelve.

They are Chinese.

You are British.

Tapan is intelligent.
He is ambitious.

The Weather is fine in February.

The Tajmahal is in Agra.

Grass is usually green.

He is hungry. Give him some food.

Note that 'be' is one of the most common verbs in English. It states present facts / truths.

Now use *be* + one of the words from the list to complete the sentences. Write the short form of *be* where possible.

'Be' Verb-এর সঙ্গে নিজের ভালিকা ছুট একটি শব্দ ব্যবহার করে বাক্য সম্পূর্ণ কর। যেখানে সম্ভব 'be' verb-এর short form লেখ।

- (i) I'm going to have some 'muri' (puffed rice).
I am hungry / I'm hungry.
- (ii) I'm going to bed. I
- (iii) The sums not very You can do them if you
- (iv) The clown makes us laugh. He very
- (v) Don't ask a child, "What are you going to be?" It a question to ask a child.

List : hungry, difficult, sleepy, silly, careful, funny.

HAVE :

Study the use of the verb *have* in the following sentences :

(নিচের বাক্যগুলিতে *have* verb-এর প্রয়োগ দেখ) :

- (i) 'Have' with meals, food and drink (খাদ্য-পানীয়) :
What do you usually *have* for breakfast?
Do you *have* lunch at home at 12 noon?
What shall we *have* for dinner?
- (ii) 'Have' with bath, shower (স্নানাদি) :
I'm going to *have* a shower / bath.
- (iii) 'Have' or 'have got' with possessions (অধিকার) :
They *have* / *have got* their own house.
We *have* / *have got* a beautiful garden.
- (iv) 'Have' or 'have got' with physical or mental Characteristics.
(দেহিক বা মানসিক বৈশিষ্ট্য) :
Has she (got) blue eyes? (British usage)
Does she *have* black eyes? (American usage)
He *hasn't* a good memory.

- (v) 'Have' with relations (স্বজন) :
Nita *has* three brothers and one sister.
She *hasn't* many friends here.
How many children *have* they?
- (vi) 'Have' with obligations (বাধ্যতা) : [*have* + to + any other verb]
I *have to go* to school today. (আমাকে আজ স্কুলে যেতেই হবে।)
We *have to listen* to our teachers. (শিক্ষকমশায়দের কথা আমাদের শুনতেই হবে।)

Now complete the sentences. One has been done for you.
(বাক্যগুলি সম্পূর্ণ কর। একটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।)

You can have a cup of tea.

You a cold drink.

You an idea.

You a lesson.

You an outing.

You a break during school hours.

You a good / bad / dull / happy time.

Ask and answer :

x : Has Amal (got) brothers?

y : Yes, he has. He's got two brothers.

x : Has he (got) any sisters?

y : No, he hasn't.

[He's = He has. He hasn't = He has not]

Now answer the questions :

S₁ : Does Biman have English on Tuesdays?

S₂ :

S₁ : Does he have Bengali everyday?

S₂ :

S₁ : When does he have games?

S₂ :

OTHER VERBS :

The 'S' form : (with do, go, play, sing etc.).

It is used when the subject is a singular noun or the pronouns, *he she* or *it*. It is never used with *I, We, you* or *they*.

Lata *does not go* to school. She *studies* at home.

Rita *loves* chocolate, but she *does not take* it much.

Ramen *plays* football every afternoon.

Ask and answer :

x : Does Lipika write everyday?

y : Yes, she writes everyday / Yes, she does.

x : Does her sister sing in the evening?

y : No, she doesn't sing in the evening / No, she doesn't.

***Note :** Answers in the dialogue may be given in full form or in the short form. In the short form '*do*' verb is used instead of any verb.

লক্ষ্য কর, সংলাপের মধ্যে উত্তরগুলি পূর্ণবাক্যে দেওয়া যায়, আবার বাক্যের সংক্ষিপ্ত রূপ (তথ্য কর্তা এবং ক্রিয়া) দিয়েও করা যায়।

Request etc.**Making requests or giving instructions with Intransitive verbs.**

(Intransitive verb-এর সাহায্যে অনুরোধ করা বা নির্দেশ দেওয়া) :

| Verb | Where |
|------------|--------------------------|
| Go | there/to the blackboard. |
| Come | here/to my desk. |
| Walk | to the windows. |
| Jump | ..... |
| Run | ..... |
| Don't sit | on the chair. |
| Don't run | ..... |
| Don't talk | ..... |

Making request or giving instructions with Transitive verbs

(Transitive verb-এর সাহায্যে অনুরোধ করা বা নির্দেশ দেওয়া)

| Verb | What / Whom (+ what) | Where |
|---------|----------------------|------------------------|
| Open | the door. | ..... |
| Bring | me your book. | ..... |
| Clean | ..... | ..... |
| Shut | ..... | ..... |
| Show | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | her my pen. | ..... |
| ..... | your pulse. | ..... |
| Verb | What | Where |
| Draw | a map | in your exercise book. |
| Put | the book | ..... |
| ..... | Your name | ..... |
| ..... | your bag | down on the floor. |
| Throw | ..... | ..... |
| Verb | What | to/from/for +whom |
| Give | the book | to Mr. Roy, please. |
| Take | the pencil | from your friend. |
| Bring | a glass of water | for me. |
| Pick up | the piece of chalk | ..... |
| ..... | a letter | ..... |

EXERCISE**1. Choose the correct alternative from the Auxiliaries :**

- I don't think I (shall, should, can) be able to go.
 - He (shall, will, dare) not pay unless he is compelled.
 - You (should, would, ought) be punctual.
 - I wish you (should, would, must) be punctual.
 - You (should, would, ought) to pay your debts.
 - (shall, should would) you please help me with this?
 - You (needn't, mustn't, won't) light a match; the room is full of gas.
 - She (can, will, used to) play badminton before her marriage.
- 2. Name the verbs in the following sentences and say in each case whether the verb is Auxiliary or Principal.**
- The hunter killed a tiger.
 - Do you know the fact?
 - He did a remarkable deed.

- She has passed the examination.
- He is an intelligent boy.
- He is now going to the play ground.
- Don't laugh at the poor man.

3. Name the verbs in the following sentences and say in each case whether the verb is Transitive or Intransitive. If the verb is Transitive, name the object.

- The sun shines brightly.
- The fire burns dimly.
- The policeman blew his whistle.
- The wind is blowing hard.
- An old beggar stood by the gate.
- Her new watch does not keep correct time.
- I shall bring my camera with me.
- She has won a reward for an act of bravery.
- She easily lifted the heavy weight.
- Sometimes a child can speak two languages fluently.

4. Point out in the following sentences which verbs are Finite and which are Non-finite.

- Please teach me how to swim.
- We made him run in the field.
- She wants to go to Agra to visit the Tajmahal.
- Putting a cap, he went to see the cricket match.
- It being a rainy day, we did not go out.

5. Combine together the following pairs of sentences by using Infinitives.

- [Example: He had no money. He could not buy his text books. = He had no money to buy his text books.]
- Every cricket team has a captain. He directs the other players.
 - His father went to Delhi. His object was to visit Rajghat.
 - You must part with your purse. On this condition only you can save your money.
 - The robber took out a knife. He intended to frighten the man.
 - He wants to earn his livelihood. He works hard for that reason.
 - He has four children. He must provide them.

6. Choose the best alternative of the State verbs and Event verbs and rewrite the sentences.

- The soldier — (be/is/ is being) angry and he — shouts/is shouting/ shouted) at his enemy.
- You should stop before you — (get/ will get/ are getting) into trouble.
- By the time he — (receives/ will receive/ will have received) this letter, I — (am/ will be) in Japan.
- The population of the world — (increased/ was increased/ is increased) and we must — (produced/ produce) more food.
- This — (belongs/ is belonging) to me and you can not — (demand/ are demanding) it.

Write in your own English using 'be'/'have' verb :

(a) নিজে আছি বা আছে বোঝালে 'be' verb হয়।

আমরা ছাত্র। আমি ভালো আছি। সে বাড়ীতে আছে। সূর্য আকাশে আছে। ঘরের মধ্যে ব্যাগটি আছে। পুরাতন মাদুরটি বিছানায় আছে। সে অসুস্থ ছিল। আমরা কলকাতায় ছিলাম। আমি ছাত্র নই। সে বাড়িতে নাই। তারা সচিব নয়। যেটা যেমিটে ছোট ঘরে নাই।

(b) কাহারো কিছু অধিকার আছে (possession) বোঝালে 'have' verb হয়।

আমার একটি কলম আছে। তার একটি মাকড়সি পাড়ী আছে। মেয়েটির একটি পুতুল আছে। হেলেটির একটি কুকুর আছে। আমাদের একটি সুন্দর বাগান আছে। লোকটির একটি মেঘশাবক (lamb) আছে। সূরী মেয়েটির একটি সুন্দর ছাড়া আছে। গরীব লোকটির একটি নৌকা আছে।

8. Use different verbs and write in your own English :

কোনকালে কবিতা না (make a noise)। সে কারো ইচ্ছা সিদ্ধিতে পারে। সব্যসাচী সত্যের দিকে
নীলী পান হতে পারে (swim across the river)। নদীটা এটা জায়গায় কয়েক মিনিট
কি অক্ষয়কে একদিনের জন্য একজন বই হার দিতে পারে। প্রত্যেকেরই যত্নে বড় লওয়া উচিত
(ought to)। কোনো প্রতিনিয়ত সকল সত্যের ওয়া উচিত (should)। তাকে জরিমানা দিতেই
হবে। সে এবার পরীক্ষার পাস করতে পারে। কল হাতে কৌশলী মেটেই মুকাবে পারে নি। আজ
তারা এখানে আসতে পারেন। দুই হস্তে তাড়াতাড়ি দেখে থাকতে পার (might have seen)।
তোমার ফুলে ফাটা উচিত ছিল (should have or ought to have)। তিনি অনর্থক
(fluently) ইংরেজি করতে পারেন। আমরা তাকে অবশ্যই বুঝে বার করব। তাইবোনদের
পদাঙ্গত বর্ণনা করা উচিত নয়।

9. Write the following passage in your own English :

আমেরিকা যুক্তরাষ্ট্রের চূড়ান্ত (former) প্রেসিডেন্ট অক্সফোর্ড লিঙ্কেন পরিচয়ের ঘরে জন্মগ্রহণ
করেন। পরবর্তীকালে এই নবিত্র ব্যক্তির আশ্রয় চরিত্র ও প্রতিভা (by virtue of character
and talent) আমেরিকা যুক্তরাষ্ট্রের সভাপতি নির্বাচিত হয়েছিলেন। ইংরেজের পালায়মেতির
বিখ্যাত সন্ন্যাসী বহু বড় বোটা (big loads) বহন করতেন। দুইদিক ঠপনানিত ভিতরে
কালকালে কলকালে সন্ধ্যার প্রভাতের কাল করতেন। বিলাসবহুল মহাশয়ের পিতা অত্যন্ত দক্ষিণ
ছিলেন। একটা এই সন্ন্যাসী মহাশয়ের কলকালে প্রভাত হইল (lose the respect of the
world)।

CHAPTER-11

SYNTAX

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

The Verbs agree with the Subjects in Number and Person.

[Subject বা কর্তার Number ও Person অনুযায়ী Verb হবে।]

'Be' verb-এর কয়েক 1st Person Singular এবং 3rd Person Singular

কর্তা অন্য সংক্ষেপে একইরকম রূপ হয়।

| | | | | |
|------------|-----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| 1st Person | — I am | We are | I was | We were |
| 2nd Person | — You are | You are | You were | You were |
| 3rd Person | — He is | They are | He was | They were |

'Be' verb ছাড়া অন্যান্য verb-এর কয়েক 1st Person Singular এবং 3rd Person Singular
Number এবং Simple Present Tense ছাড়া অন্য কোথাও Subject-এর Number

এক person-এর জন্য কোন রূপ পরিবর্তন হয় না।

| | | | | |
|------------|-----------|---------|---------|----------|
| 1st Person | — I do | We do | I did | We did |
| 2nd Person | — You do | You do | You did | You did |
| 3rd Person | — He does | They do | He did | They did |

Now study some important Subject-Verb Agreement rules.

1. A singular subject takes the verb in singular and a plural subject takes the verb in plural.

He is happy. They are happy.
But a singular subject takes a plural verb in the subjunctive mood:
পত্র যদি সত্যি হত, তাহলে কি হত? If the story were true, what would it
matter?

An uncountable noun, though plural in sense takes a singular
verb : [যে সব Noun গোনা যায় না, সেগুলি অর্থের দিক থেকে বহুবচন হলেও singular
verb নেয়।] Her hair is grey. The grass is getting long.

1. (B) We can use the + Adjective with a plural verb to refer to some
group of people in society : (সমাজের কোন বিশেষ শ্রেণী বোঝাতে The +
Adjective-এর পর plural verb হবে।)

বৃদ্ধরা সাধারণতঃ সম্মানিত হন—The old are generally respected.
দরিদ্ররা সর্বদা অসৎ হয় না—The poor are not always dishonest.

2. Two or more singular subjects connected by 'and' usually take a
verb in the plural.

When a subject is followed by a negative word as no, not, the verb agrees
with the word preceding not. (And ছাড়া যুক্ত দুটি subject-এর একটিতে no বা
not থাকলে no বা not-এর পূর্ববর্তী subject অনুযায়ী verb হয়।)

রাম ও শ্যাম দুই ভাই—Ram and Shyam are two brothers.

সে ও তার বন্ধু এখানে এসেছে—He and his friend have arrived here.

আমার ভাই নয়, আমিই কাজটি করেছি—I, and not my brother, have done this.

বালিকারা নয়, কেবল বালকরাই দোষী—Only boys and no girl are guilty.

3. If two singular nouns refer to the same person or thing, or
two subjects together express one idea, the verb must be singular.

কিছু, বিদ্যালয়ের সভাপতি ও প্রধান শিক্ষক (আশাঙ্গা ব্যক্তি) আসিতেছেন—

The Headmaster and the President of the school are coming.

রুটি ও মাখন তার প্রিয় খাদ্য—Bread and butter is his favourite food.

ধীর ও স্থির গতিতে জালান্ড করেন—Slow but steady wins the race.

সকাল সকাল ভাতে ঘাওয়া এবং সকাল সকাল ওঠা একজন লোককে স্বাস্থ্যবান, সম্পদশালী ও জানী করে—Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

Titles and names of plural form also take a singular verb when they refer to one thing:

'Star Wars' was a very successful film.

A phrase of measurement, though plural in form, takes a singular verb: Two hours is a long time to wait. Five miles is too far to walk.

4. We use a singular verb after a subject with every, each, any, everyone, someone, anything and nothing. (Each বা every-যুক্ত sub. sing. verb লয়।)

Every pupil has a book. Each boy was wicked. Someone is waiting at the door. Nothing happens in this place.

Note: When 'each' follows a plural subject, the verb is plural.

The pupils each have to take a test.

—Oxford guide to Eng. Grammar by John Eastwood.

5. If two or more singular subjects preceded by 'each' or 'every' are connected by 'and', the verb is usually Singular. (যদি দুটি বা তার বেশি Singular Subject-এর পূর্বে each বা every থাকে এবং সে দুটি and দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়, তাহলে verb Singular হয়।)

প্রতিটি ছেলে এবং প্রতিটি মেয়ে নতুন পোষাকে সজ্জিত ছিল—

Each boy and each girl was dressed with a new dress.

প্রতিটি নর, নারী ও শিশু মুগ্ধ হয়ে গিয়েছিল—

Every man, woman and child was charmed.

প্রায়ের প্রতিটি নরনারী উৎসবে উপস্থিত ছিল—

Every man and woman in the village was present at the festival.

প্রতিটি ঘণ্টা ও মিনিট কর্তব্যের আহ্বান নিয়ে আসে—

Every hour and minute brings its call for duty.

6. Two or more singular subjects connected by 'or', 'nor', 'either...or', 'neither...nor' take a verb in the singular (দুই বা ততোধিক Singular Subject 'or', 'nor', 'either...or' বা 'neither...nor' দ্বারা যুক্ত হলে verb Singular হয়।)

ছেলোট বা মেয়েটি উভয়েই মিষ্ট পছন্দ করে—The boy or the girl is fond of sweets.

হয় অমল না হয় বিমল আমটি খেয়েছে—Either Amal or Bimal has eaten the mango.

তুমি বা আমি কেউই সেখানে ছিলাম না—Neither you nor I was there.

7. When the subjects joined by 'or', 'nor', 'either...or', 'neither...nor' are of different numbers, the Plural subject comes the last and the verb must be Plural. (যখন Singular এবং Plural number-এর subject 'or', 'nor', 'either...or', 'neither...nor' দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়, তখন Plural subject শেষে আসে এবং verb Plural হয়।)

নিখিল বা তার বন্ধুরা এই কাজটি করেছেন—Nikhil or his friends have done this work.

আজকের বা তার তারেরা কেউই আহত হয়নি—Neither Akbar nor his brothers were hurt.

8. When the subjects joined by 'or', 'nor', 'either...or', 'neither...nor' are of different persons, the verb agrees in Person with the one nearest to it.

যখন বিভিন্ন Person-এর subject 'or', 'nor', 'either...or', 'neither...nor' দ্বারা যুক্ত হয় তখন শেষে যে Person-এর subject বসে, verb সেই Person অনুযায়ী হয়।)

হয় সে করেছে, না হয় আমি করেছি—Either he or I have done this.

তোমারও দোষ নেই, তারও দোষ নেই—Neither you nor he is to blame.

হয়, তুমি, না হয় সে, না হয় আমি বাজারে যাব—Either you or he or I shall go to market.

Note: Person অনুযায়ী Subject বসাবার সাধারণ নিয়ম—প্রথমে 2nd Person.

পরে 3rd Person ও শেষে 1st Person হয়। কিন্তু দোষ স্বীকারের ক্ষেত্রে বিপরীত পদ্ধতি হয়। যেমন— I he and you have done the mischief. Either I or you are to blame.

9. When subjects differing in number or person, or both are connected by 'and', the verb must always be in the Plural though the placing of Persons would be according to the above note. (যদি বিভিন্ন number অথবা person-এর subject 'and' দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়, তাহলে উপরের Note অনুযায়ী Person সাজাবার নিয়ম হলেও verb-টি Plural হয়।)

তুমি, সে ও আমি পরস্পর বন্ধু—You, he and I are friends.

তুমি ও সে একই গোত্রের—You and he are birds of the same feather.

আমি ও তুমি টি. ভি. দেখব—You and I (not, I and you) would enjoy the T.V.

10. A collective noun takes a Singular verb when it is thought of as a whole and takes a Plural verb when the individuals are separately thought of.

(Collective noun সমষ্টিগত অর্থে singular verb নেয়, কিন্তু পৃথক পৃথক সত্তা বোঝালে plural verb নেয়।) The army was defeated. Fifty rupees is enough for me. There is a large audience.

(কিন্তু) The audience are requested to take their seats. (separately) বিচারক মণ্ডলী লোকটিকে ফাঁসিতে ঝোলাবার আদেশ দিয়েছেন—The jury has ordered to hang the man.

বিচারকমণ্ডলী ভিন্ন ভিন্ন মত দিয়েছেন—The jury are divided in their opinions.

কমিটি সর্বসম্মত সিদ্ধান্ত নিয়ে রাজী হয়েছে—The committee has agreed to take unanimous decision.

গুটিনাটি দ্বন্দ্বিত্তে কমিটির সদস্যরা ভিন্নমত হয়েছেন—The committee are divided in respect of details.

A lot of/A group of/A number of:

মাঠে প্রচুর ছেলে একত্র হয়েছে—There is a lot of boys on the ground.

মাঠে প্রচুর ছেলে (ভিন্ন ভিন্ন সত্তা) খেলা করছে—A lot of boys are playing in the field.

এইভাবে—Here is a group of boys. A group of boys are enjoying a picnic.

There is a large number of boys in his class.

A number of boys were caught copying.—Wren & Martin.

Special Note from 'Oxford Guide To English Grammar'

(Published in 1994)—John Eastwood.

"When a plural noun follows *number of*, *majority of*, or *a lot of*, we normally use a plural verb.
A large number of letters were received. The Majority of people have complained. A lot of people have complained.
Here a number of etc. expresses quantity.
(a) But, when *number* means 'figure', it agrees with the verb.
The number of letters we receive is increasing.
(b) The word *amount* agrees with the verb. A large amount of money was collected. Large amounts of money were collected."

11. Some nouns which are singular in form but plural in meaning, take a plural verb. (কিছু noun যেগুলি আকারে singular হলেও অর্থের দিক থেকে Plural, সেগুলি Plural verb নেয়।) The police are questioning a man. But, the policeman is watching outside the house.

জনসাধারণকে আইন মেনে চলতে হয়—People have to obey the rules.
দু ডজনে চব্বিশটি হয়—Two dozen (not dozens) make twentyfour.

একডজন ডিমের দাম আঠারো টাকা—One dozen of eggs cost eighteen rupees.

12. Some nouns which are plural in form but singular in meaning, take a Singular verb. (কিছু noun যেগুলি আকারে plural হলেও অর্থের দিক থেকে singular, সেগুলি Singular verb নেয়।)

সংবাদটি সত্য—The news is true.

পাপের বেতন মৃত্যু—The wages of sin is death.

পদার্থবিদ্যা বিজ্ঞানের একটি শাখা—Physics is a branch of science.

রাজনীতিই তার জীবনের কাজ—Politics is the business of his life.

A chemical works (factory) causes a lot of pollution.

[But, Chemical works (factories) cause a lot of pollution.]

*Note But some nouns are always plural and take a plural verb.—
The goods were found to be defective. My belongings have been destroyed.

13. When a plural noun is placed with a real singular subject such as *one*, *each* etc. with the help of 'of', the verb must be singular, not plural. In such cases plural verb is often wrongly used. (*one of*, *each of*, *either of*, *neither of* etc. take a singular verb.)

(যখন প্রকৃত singular subject-এর সঙ্গে কোন plural noun 'of' দিয়ে যুক্ত হয়, তখন verb-টি Singular হয়, plural হয় না। এরূপ ক্ষেত্রে প্রায়ই ভুল করে plural verb বসানো হয়।)

ছেলেদের মধ্যে একজন অসুস্থ ছিল—One of the boys was ill. (not were)

প্রত্যেকটি মেয়েই চালাক—Each of the girls is clever. (not are)

প্রতিটি ছাত্রকে একটি পুরস্কার দেওয়া হয়েছিল—Each of the students was given a prize. (not were)

এই বইগুলির মধ্যে একটি চুরি হয়েছে—Either of the books is stolen.

কোন বইটিই চিত্তাকর্ষক ছিল না—Neither of the books was interesting. (not were)

কমলালেবুগুলির মান ভালো নয়—The quality of the oranges is not good. (not are)

*Note: After 'None of' and 'None but' we can use either a singular or a plural verb. 'None of the pupils has/have failed the test.'

—Eastwood.

"None is a shortened form of *not one*: it is commonly used with plural verbs."
None of them has (have) come back yet.

"None but the brave deserves the fair."
—A.L.D. Hornby.

"None but fools (has) have ever believed it."
—COD.

[Also, Wren & Martin]

'More than one' takes a singular verb; but 'More than two/three or more' takes a plural verb.

('More than one' singular verb নেয়; কিন্তু 'More than two/three' ইত্যাদি plural verb নেয়।)

More than one boy is guilty. [But] More than two boys are guilty.

Some Notes from 'Modern English Usage by Fowler and 'Current English Usage' by F.T. Wood.

(a) 'More than one' is treated as compound of one and agrees with a singular noun and a singular verb. But, 'More than two' is treated as a compound of two and agrees with a plural noun and a plural verb.

More than one man was present there.

More than two men were present there.

(b) Half, heaps, lots, two-thirds, three-fourths etc. take singular verbs when they are followed by singular nouns with 'of' but plural verbs when followed plural nouns with 'of'.

Half of the work is done.

Half of the apples are bad.

There is lots of work to do.

Lots of people think so.

(c) After *one and a half* we use plural nouns and singular verbs: One and a half lemons was enough.

(d) The greater / greatest part is singular when it refers to amount or quantity, plural when it refers to number.

The greater part of the land is uncultivated.

The greater part of the apples are bad.—F. T. Wood.

(e) None—"It is a mistake to suppose that the pronoun (None) is singular only and must at all costs be followed by singular verbs, etc: the Oxford Dictionary explicitly states that plural construction is commoner."—MEU

None of the letters have been opened yet. (Plural, because, none has the meaning 'not any').—F. T. Wood.

14. When words joined by 'with', 'together with' or 'as well as' etc. the verb agrees with the first subject (with, together with বা as well as যারা কোন word যুক্ত হলে verb-টি প্রথম subject অনুযায়ী হয়।)

প্রধানমন্ত্রী তাঁর ক্যাবিনেটের সমস্ত সদস্যদের সঙ্গে উপস্থিত হয়েছেন—The Prime Minister with all the members of his cabinet has arrived.

তাদের পিতার সঙ্গে তারাও প্রশংসার দাবী রাখে—The with their father were punished.

বিভার সঙ্গে নিজাও প্রশংসার শক্তি পেয়েছিল—Bibha as well as Nibha deserves praise.

জুঁনি নয়, সে পুরস্কার পেয়েছে—He, and not you. (used parenthetically). has won the prize. [বাক্যের মধ্যে যে অংশ মূল বাক্যের গঠনের সঙ্গে যুক্ত নয়, তাকে parenthesis বলে।]

কিটার দ্বিধা তাঁর কয়েকজন বন্ধুর সঙ্গে কিছু বই কিনেছেন—Mr. Smith together with some of his friends is buying some books.

15. After Not only ... but also, the verb agrees with the nearest phrase. (Not only ... but also-এর ক্ষেত্রে শেষের Subject অনুযায়ী verb হয়।)

Not only George but also his friends are buying books.

16. When the subject of the verb is a Relative Pronoun, care should be taken to see that the verb agrees in number and person with the antecedent of the Relative Pronoun.

[Relative Pronoun Subject হলে তার antecedent-এর (অর্থঃ তার পূর্ববর্তী Noun বা Pronoun-এর) number এবং person অনুযায়ী verb হয়।]

I who am your friend should stand by you.

He who is my friend should stand by me.

You who are my friend should stand by me.

This is the boy who is my friend. These are the boys who are my friends.

I am the man who has lost his pen. Those are the men who have lost their belongings.

* [লক্ষ্য কর, who-এর পর is, am বা are বসেছে এদের antecedent He, You, I the boy, the boys, the man বা the men অনুযায়ী।]

17. In referring to anybody, everybody, anyone, everyone, each etc., the pronoun of the masculine or the feminine gender is used according to the context.

[anybody, everybody, anyone, everyone, each প্রভৃতির ক্ষেত্রে এসকল অনুসারে masculine gender বা feminine gender-এর pronoun ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

I shall help each of the girls in her studies.

Each of the boys will do his duty.

But when the sex is not determined, we use the pronoun of the masculine gender. [Each, anybody ইত্যাদির sex যখন অনিশ্চিত থাকে, তখন masculine gender ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

Each must do his best.

Anyone can do this if he likes.

Everyone likes to have his way.

If anybody knows the truth, let him tell it.

18. The Indefinite pronoun one should be used throughout.

[One-এর পরিবর্তে সর্বদা one-ই বসে।]

One should be careful of one's (not his/her) duties.

One cannot be too careful about what one (not he) says.

19. The case of a pronoun following than or as is determined by the sense of the context and that can be done by mentally supplying the verb in the given context.

[Than বা as-এর পর pronoun-এর case নির্ণীত হয় প্রসঙ্গের অর্থ অনুসারে এবং সেই প্রসঙ্গে মনে মনে verb বসিয়ে তা নির্ণয় করতে হয়।]

রামের বাড়ী যদুর বাড়ীর চেয়ে ভালো—Ram's house is better than Jadu's (house) or, Ram's house is better than that of Jadu.

সে আমার চেয়ে লম্বা—He is taller than I (am).

সে তোমাকে যতটা ভালবাসে, সে তুলনায় আমি তোমাকে বেশি ভালবাসি—I like you better than he (likes you).

আমি তাকে যতটা ভালবাসি, সে তুলনায় আমি তোমাকে বেশি ভালবাসি—I like you better than (I like) him.

আমি তাকে যতটা দিয়েছিলাম, তারাও তাকে ততটা দিয়েছিল—They gave him as much as I (gave him).

তারা আমাকে যতটা দিয়েছিল, তাকেও ততটা দিয়েছিল—They gave him as much as (they gave) me.

"However, 'He is taller than me' is now accepted."—Wren & Martin.

20. Many a/Many an before a noun is singular in form and the verb is usually singular.

[যখন কোন Noun-এর পূর্বে Many a / Many an যুক্ত হয়, তখন তা Singular form হয় এবং verb-টিও Singular হয়।]

কত গোলাপ ফুটেই তকিয়ে যায়—Many a rose is born to blush unseen.

কত প্রশংসাকারীই না তাকে প্রশংসা করেছিল—Many an admirer praised him.

*Note: But when 'A great many'/'A good many'/'Too many' is used instead of 'Many a'/'Many an' it is plural in form and the verb is also plural.

[কিছু যখন Many a / Many an-এর পরিবর্তে A great many / A good many Too many ব্যবহৃত হয়, তখন তা Plural form হয় এবং verb-টিও Plural হয়।]

অনেক রাধুনি মিলে খোলটাই নষ্ট করে ফেলে—Too many cooks spoil the broth.

অনেক ছেলেই ক্লাসে অনুপস্থিত ছিল—A great many / A good many boys were absent in the class.

21. Pair Noun :

A Pair Noun is plural in form and takes a plural verb. (ট্রেজার, কাঁচি, চুপরা প্রভৃতি Pair Noun-এর পর Plural Verb বসে।)

Three trousers need cleaning.

Your new glasses (চপমা) are very nice.

Here are the scissors (কাঁচি)

We can not use "a or numbers" before the Pair Nouns.

"Not a trouser and Not two trousers."

We can use "pair (s) of" such Pair Noun with a singular or a plural verb.

This pair of trousers needs cleaning. How have three pairs of scissors managed to disappear? —John Eastwood.

22. A single Auxiliary may serve two Principal verbs if the construction allows it. (একটি Auxiliary verb গঠন রীতি যেমন দুটি Principal verb-এর সঙ্গে অধিত হতে পারে।)

I have lost the pen but (have) got the book.

[common Auxiliary for the same subject and same tense.]

But when the subjects and tenses are different, common Auxiliary will not serve the purpose. (Subject এবং tense আলাদা হলে common Auxiliary হয় না।)

You have retired, but your brother has resigned.

I have resigned and a new man has been appointed.

23. A clause or a phrase as a subject takes a singular verb. (একটি clause বা phrase subject হলে singular verb নেয়।)

মানুষমাত্রেরই ভুল করে—To err is human.

সে যে সৎ তা আমি জানি—That he is honest is known to me.

06-10-87

EXERCISE

1. In each of the following sentence supply a verb in agreement with its subject. (নিচের sentence-গুলিতে subject-এর agreement অনুসারে verb বসান।)

- (i) One and one — two.
 - (ii) No news — absolutely good news.
 - (iii) Neither of the girls — quite at her ease.
 - (iv) The jury — divided in their opinion.
 - (v) Each of the robbers — arrested.
 - (vi) Twenty rupees — too much for this article.
 - (vii) Two-thirds of the book — been lost.
 - (viii) Shakespear is one of the greatest dramatists that — ever lived.
 - (ix) Which one of these books — yours?
 - (x) Two tons of coal — here.
 - (xi) None of the boys — done the sum.
 - (xii) Iron as well as copper — found in India.
 - (xiii) The cost of all the necessary articles — arisen.
 - (xiv) The chief with his followers — arrived.
 - (xv) "The Arabian Nights" — delighted many generations.
 - (xvi) None of the girls — present in the class.
 - (xvii) There — a large number of boys in the field.
 - (xviii) A number of boys — found copying.
 - (xix) Here — a group of boys.
 - (xx) A group of boys — going on the road.
2. Fill in the blanks. (স্থানগুলি পূরণ কর।)
- (i) Time and tide — for none.
 - (ii) Early to bed and early to rise — a man healthy, wealthy and wise.
 - (iii) Each man and each woman — given a prize.
 - (iv) I, and not my brother, — done this.
 - (v) No man, no woman and do child — saved.
 - (vi) Only men and no child — allowed to enter the room.
 - (vii) Two books only and no pen — required.
 - (viii) Each boy and each girl — present.
 - (ix) He as well as his friends — guilty.
 - (x) The boys as well as their leader — running away.
 - (xi) The king with his guards — been killed.
 - (xii) Mr. Roy together with his children — buying some sweets.
 - (xiii) If I — a king, I would ban examinations.
 - (xiv) Either you or he — done this.
 - (xv) Neither life nor property — for ever.
 - (xvi) Either you or your friends — guilty.
 - (xvii) You are the man who — done this.
 - (xviii) The Headmaster and Secretary of the school — coming.
 - (xix) Not only he but also his friends — come here.
 - (xx) One of the boys — a liar.

3. Write in your own English keeping the Subject verb agreement rules.
 রাস ও প্যাম দুইজনেই: কবি ও দার্শনিক (একই ব্যক্তি) আসিয়াছে। কবি ও মাখন তাহাদের প্রধান
 নাম। সে ও তাহার ভাই উভয়েই আসিয়াছে। সে তাহার বন্ধুবান্ধব লইয়াই (together with)
 আসিয়াছে। রেনা ও তাহার লম্বুরা (as well as) এখানে আছে। কবি ও রেনা উভয়েই মারা
 গিয়াছে। হয় কবি, না হয় সে এখানে এসে। সে বা তাহার ভাই কেইই আসে নাই। দুনি আমাকে যে
 (which) বইটি দিয়েছিল তা একটি পত্রের বই। সে ছাত্তাগুলি তাহা এনেছিল, সেগুলি সবই
 পুরাতন। সে যেসেটি কাল এখানে এসেছিল সে আমার জাই। সে স্যাকগুলি সজায় দিলিত হয়েছিল,
 জার্সি পরিষ্কার। এমন কেউ নাই সে বড়শেক হতে চায় না।

CHAPTER-12

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

There are two main kinds of Conjugation of verbs—the strong and the weak.

Verb-এর Conjugation অর্থ ক্রিয়ার রূপান্তর পরিবর্তন দৃষ্টব্য।

(i) The strong forms of the Past tense and Past Participle are done by changing the inside vowel of the present, as bear—bore—born.

Strong verb-এর Past tense ও Past Participle কেবল ভিতরের Vowel পরিবর্তন করে হয়।

(ii) The weak forms of the Past tense and Past Participle are done by adding -d, -t, or -ed to the present, as love—loved—loved; bend—bent—bent.

Weak Verb-এর Present form-এর সঙ্গে -d, -t, বা -ed যোগ করে Past ও Past Participle হয়।

Weak Verbs are also called Regular Verbs as they are changed in a regular way and Strong Verbs are called Irregular Verbs as they are changed not in a regular way.

Weak Verb যেগুলি -d-ed বা -t যোগ করে পরিবর্তন হয়, সেগুলিকে Regular verb এবং Strong Verb যেগুলি কোন regular way নির্দিষ্ট নিয়মে পরিবর্তিত না হয়ে বিভিন্নভাবে ভিতরের Vowel পরিবর্তন করে হয়, সেগুলিকে Irregular verb বলে।

Verbs that form their Past Tense by adding -ed, -d or -t to the Present, with or without any inside vowel-change, are called Weak Verbs.

Verbs that form their Past Tense by merely changing the vowel in the body of the Present, without adding an ending are called Strong Verbs.

—Wern & Martin.

Weak Verbs or Regular Verbs

নিয়ম ১: বেশির ভাগ verb-এর শেষে ed যোগ করে —*(verb + ed)

| Present tense | Past tense | Perfect tense = has / have / had + Past Participle |
|------------------------|------------------|--|
| Present (Base form) | Past form | |
| add (যোগ করা) | added | added |
| allow (অনুমতি দেওয়া) | allowed | allowed |
| appear (উপস্থিত হওয়া) | appeared | appeared |
| ask (জিজ্ঞাসা করা) | asked | asked |
| boil (ফোটানো) | boiled | boiled |
| borrow (দান করা) | borrowed | borrowed |
| cheer (উৎসাহিত করা) | cheered | cheered |
| clean (পরিষ্কার করা) | cleaned | cleaned |
| climb (আগ্রহণ করা) | climbed | climbed |
| delay (সেরি করা) | delayed | delayed |
| discuss (আলোচনা করা) | discussed | discussed |
| dream (বিশ্ব দেখা) | dreamed / dreamt | dreamed / dreamt |
| end (শেষ করা) | ended | ended |
| enjoy (উপভোগ করা) | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| fail (ব্যর্থ হওয়া) | failed | failed |
| fill (পূর্ণ করা) | filled | filled |

Weak verb হক Regular verb বলা হয়।

strong verb হক Irregular verb বলা হয়।

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past Participle |
|----------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| fix (ফিক্স করা) | fixed | fixed |
| flow (ফ্লো করা) | flowed | flowed |
| hang (হ্যাং করা) | hanged | hanged |
| help (হেল্প করা) | helped | helped |
| jump (জাম্প করা) | jumped | jumped |
| kill (কিল করা) | killed | killed |
| laugh (লাফ করা) | laughed | laughed |
| load (লোড করা) | loaded | loaded |
| lock (লক করা) | locked | locked |
| look (লুক করা) | looked | looked |
| mend (মেন্ড করা) | mended | mended |
| need (নিড করা) | needed | needed |
| obey (ওবাই করা) | obeyed | obeyed |
| own (ওন করা) | owned | owned |
| pass (পাস করা) | passed | passed |
| paint (পেইন্ট করা) | painting | painting |
| play (প্লে করা) | played | played |
| pull (পুল করা) | pulled | pulled |
| push (পুশ করা) | pushed | pushed |
| punish (পাশ করা) | punished | punished |
| rain (রেন করা) | rained | rained |
| reach (রিচ করা) | reached | reached |
| rear (রিয়ার করা) | reared | reared |
| sew (সিউ করা) | sewed | sewed |
| sow (সো করা) | sowed | sowed |
| show (শো করা) | showed | showed |
| stay (স্টে করা) | stayed | stayed |
| stroke (স্ট্রোক করা) | stroked | stroked |
| thank (থ্যাংক করা) | thanked | thanked |
| wait (ওয়েট করা) | waited | waited |
| wash (ওয়াশ করা) | washed | washed |
| wish (ওইশ করা) | wished | wished |
| work (ওর্ক করা) | worked | worked |
| walk (ওল্ক করা) | walked | walked |

নিয়ম : মূল Verb-এর শেষে e থাকলে শুধু-d যোগ হয়।

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| agree (আগ্রি করা) | agreed | agreed |
| advise (অডভাইজ করা) | advised | advised |
| arrive (আর্রাইভ করা) | arrived | arrived |
| arrange (আর্রাংজ করা) | arranged | arranged |
| care (কেয়ার করা) | cared | cared |
| change (চ্যাংজ করা) | changed | changed |
| charge (চার্জ করা) | charged | charged |
| close (ক্লোজ করা) | closed | closed |
| compare (কম্পার করা) | compared | compared |
| compete (কম্পিট করা) | competed | competed |
| complete (কম্প্লিট করা) | completed | completed |
| dare (ডার করা) | dared | dared |

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| dance (ড্যান্স করা) | danced | danced |
| die (ডাই করা) | died | died |
| divide (ডাইভ করা) | divided | divided |
| gaze (গেজ করা) | gazed | gazed |
| hate (হেট করা) | hated | hated |
| hope (হোপ করা) | hoped | hoped |
| live (লিভ করা) | lived | lived |
| lie (লিআ করা) | lied | lied |
| loose (লুস করা) | loosed | loosed |
| love (লভ করা) | loved | loved |
| move (মুভ করা) | moved | moved |
| place (প্লেস করা) | placed | placed |
| sleep (স্লিপ করা) | slept | slept |
| have (হ্যাভ করা) | had | had |
| hear (হিয়ার করা) | heard | heard |
| sell (সেল করা) | sold | sold |
| tell (টেল করা) | told | told |

নিয়ম : Verb-এর শেষে একটি Consonant এবং তার পূর্বে একটি Vowel থাকলে Consonant double করে-ed যোগ হয়।

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| beg (বেগ করা) | begged | begged |
| cancel (ক্যান্সেল করা) | cancelled | cancelled |
| drop (ড্রপ করা) | dropped | dropped |
| hop (হপ করা) | hopped | hopped |
| emit (ইমিট করা) | emitted | emitted |
| nod (নড করা) | nodded | nodded |
| pat (প্যাট করা) | patted | patted |
| plan (প্লান করা) | planned | planned |
| refer (রিফার করা) | referred | referred |
| rub (রুব করা) | rubbed | rubbed |
| stop (স্টপ করা) | stopped | stopped |
| travel (ট্রাভেল করা) | travelled | travelled |
| quarrel (ক্বারেল করা) | quarrelled | quarrelled |

নিয়ম : Verb-এর শেষে y থাকলে y = i + ed/d

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| bury (বুরি করা) | buried | buried |
| carry (ক্যারি করা) | carried | carried |
| cry (ক্রি করা) | cried | cried |
| dry (ড্রি করা) | dried | dried |
| fry (ফ্রি করা) | fried | fried |
| try (ট্রি করা) | tried | tried |
| hurry (হ্যুরি করা) | hurried | hurried |
| marry (মারি করা) | married | married |
| lay (লেআ করা) | laid | laid |
| pay (পেআ করা) | paid | paid |
| say (সেআ করা) | said | said |
| enjoy (ইন্জয় করা) | enjoyed | enjoyed |

নিম্নের Verbs-এর কিছু পরিবর্তন করে এবং যেরূপে হইবে

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| bend (নেত্রণে) | bent | bent |
| build (নির্মাণ করা) | built | built |
| burn (সেপ্তন করা) | burnt | burnt |
| buy (কেনা) | bought | bought |
| catch (করা) | caught | caught |
| fight (যুদ্ধ করা) | fought | fought |
| deal (স্বত্বদান করা) | dealt | dealt |
| dream (স্বপ্ন দেখা) | dreamt | dreamt |
| dwell (বাস করা) | dwelt | dwelt |
| feel (স্পর্শ করা) | felt | felt |
| keep (রক্ষা করা) | kept | kept |
| knelt (হাঁটু গেড়ে বসা) | knelt | knelt |
| learn (শিক্ষা করা) | learnt | learnt |
| leave (ত্যাগ করা) | left | left |
| lend (ঋণ দেওয়া) | lent | lent |
| lose (হারা) | lost | lost |
| mean (অর্থ প্রকাশ করা) | meant | meant |
| seek (খোঁজা) | sought | sought |
| send (পঠানো) | sent | sent |
| sleep (সুমনো) | slept | slept |
| smell (ব্রাণ নেওয়া) | smelt | smelt |
| spell (যাদু করা) | spelt | spelt |
| spend (ব্যয় করা) | spent | spent |
| sweep (সোঁচ দেওয়া) | swept | swept |
| teach (শিক্ষা দেওয়া) | taught | taught |
| think (চিন্তা করা) | thought | thought |
| weep (কঁদা) | wept | wept |

Strong Verbs or Irregular Verbs

নিম্নের ভিতরের Vowel পরিবর্তন করে

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| abide (মেলে চলা) | abode | abode |
| arise (উঠা) | arose | arisen |
| awake (জাগা) | awoke | awaken |
| be (am, is, are-হওয়া) | was, were | been |
| bear (বহন করা) | bore | borne (বোর্ন) |
| bear (প্রদান করা) | bore | born (বর্ন) |
| become (হওয়া) | became | become |
| begin (আরম্ভ করা) | began | begun |
| behold (দেখা) | beheld | beheld |
| beat (প্রহার করা) | beat | beaten |
| bid (আদেশ করা) | bade | bidden/bid |
| bite (কাটানো) | bit | bitten/bit |
| bind (বাঁধা) | bound | bound |
| bleed (রক্তক্ষরণ হওয়া) | bled | bled |
| breed (জন দেওয়া) | bred | bred |
| blow (প্রবাহিত হওয়া) | blew | blown |

CONJUGATION OF VERBS

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| break (ভাঙা) | broke | broken |
| chide (ভিকার করা) | chid | chidden/chid |
| choose (নির্বাচন করা) | chose | chosen |
| cling (সেপে ধরা) | clung | clung |
| come (আসা) | came | come |
| welcome (স্বাগত জানানো) | welcomed | welcomed |
| creep (কড়ি দেওয়া) | crept | crept |
| dig (কন করা) | dug | dug |
| do (করা) | did | done |
| draw (টানা) | drew | drawn |
| drink (পান করা) | drank | drunk |
| drive (চালানো, ডাকানো) | drove | driven |
| eat (খাওয়া) | ate | eaten |
| fall (পতিত হওয়া) | fell | fallen |
| feed (খাওয়ানো) | fed | fed |
| fight (যুদ্ধ করা) | fought | fought |
| find (খোঁজা) | found | found |
| fly (ওড়া) | flew | flown |
| forbid (নিষেধ করা) | forbade | forbidden |
| forgive (ক্ষমা করা) | forgave | forgiven |
| forget (ভুলে যাওয়া) | forgot | forgotten |
| forfeit (ত্যাগ করা) | forsook | forsaken |
| freeze (ঠাণ্ডায় জমে যাওয়া) | froze | frozen |
| get (পাওয়া) | got | gotten/got |
| give (দেওয়া) | gave | given |
| go (যাওয়া) | went | gone |
| grow (জন্মানো) | grew | grown |
| hang (ঝোলা, ঝোলানো) | hung | hung |
| hide (লুকানো) | hid | hidden/hid |
| hold (ধরা) | held | held |
| know (জানা) | knew | known |
| lie (শোওয়া, থাকা) | lay | lain |
| make (তৈরি করা) | made | made \| cons. পরিবর্তন |
| meet (সাক্ষাৎ হওয়া) | met | met |
| mistake (ভুল করা) | mistook | mistaken |
| ride (যোড়ার চড়া) | rode | ridden |
| ring (বাজানো) | rang | rung |
| rise (উঠা) | rose | risen |
| run (দৌড়ানো) | ran | run |
| see (দেখা) | saw | seen |
| sit (বসা) | sat | sat |
| sing (গান গাওয়া) | sang | sung |
| sink (ডুবে যাওয়া) | sank | sunk |
| shrink (সঙ্কুচিত হওয়া) | shrank | shrunk |
| spring (সাকানো) | sprank | sprung |

*Note: 'Welcome' is also an Adjective. "You are welcome to it." As a Noun—"They gave a warm welcome." As a Verb—"I welcome you to our house." As an Interjection—"Welcome to England!"

A.L.D.—Hornby

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|---------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| spin (সূতা কাটা) | spun | spun |
| speak (কথা বলা) | spoke | spoken |
| shake (শোকা দেওয়া) | shook | shaken |
| shine (কিরণ দেওয়া) | shone | shone |
| shoot (শুটি করা) | shot | shot |
| slay (হত্যা করা) | slew | slain |
| smite (জোরে আঘাত করা) | smote | smote |
| stand (দাঁড়া) | stood | stood |
| steal (চুরি করা) | stole | stolen |
| stick (লেশে থাকা) | stuck | stuck |
| strike (আঘাত করা) | struck | struck |
| strive (চেষ্টা করা) | strove | stroven |
| swear (শপথ দেওয়া) | swore | sworn |
| swim (সিঁতার কাটা) | swam | swum |
| take (লওয়া) | took | taken |
| tear (ছিঁড়ে ফেলা) | tore | torn |
| throw (নির্দেশ করা) | threw | thrown |
| tread (পায়ে মাড়ানো) | trod | trodden |
| wake (জাগা) | woke | woken |
| wear (পরিধান করা) | wore | worn |
| weave (জড়ানো) | wove | woven |
| win (জয়লাভ করা) | won | won |
| write (লেখা) | wrote | written |
| withhold (হুগিত থাকা) | withheld | withheld |
| withdraw (প্রত্যাহার করা) | withdrew | withdrawn |

নিয়ম : কোনরূপ পরিবর্তন না করে

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|--------------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| bet (বাকী রাখা) | bet | bet |
| bid (নিলাম ডাকা) | bid | bid |
| burst (ফেটে পড়া) | burst | burst |
| cast (নির্দেশ করা) | cast | cast |
| cost (দাম লাগা) | cost | cost |
| cut (কাটা) | cut | cut |
| hit (আঘাত করা) | hit | hit |
| hurt (আঘাত করা) | hurt | hurt |
| let (অনুমতি দেওয়া) | let | let |
| put (রাখা) | put | put |
| quit (হেঁফে মাওয়া) | quit | quit |
| read (পড়া) | read (রেড) | read (রেড) |
| set (স্থাপন করা) | set | set |
| shut (বন্ধ করা) | shut | shut |
| spread (ছড়িয়ে পড়া) | spread | spread |
| spit (বুখ ফেলা) | spit | spit |
| thrust (জোর করে ঢালা) | thrust | thrust |
| broadcast (সংবাদ করা) | broadcast | broadcast |
| telecast (দূরদর্শন প্রচার করা) | telecast | telecast |

Verb that are often confused (যে verb-গুলি বিভ্রান্ত হয়)

| Present (Base form) | Past form | Past participle |
|---------------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| beat (ধাক্কা দেওয়া) | beat | beaten |
| bite (কাঁদামো) | bite | bitten/bite |
| bore (বহন করা) | bore | bore (বোর) |
| bore (বোর করা) | bore | born (বর্ন) |
| compete (প্রতিযোগিতা করা) | competed | competed |
| complete (সম্পূর্ণ করা) | completed | completed |
| fall (পতিত হওয়া) | fell | fallen |
| feel (অনুভব করা) | felt | felt |
| fill (পূর্ণ করা) | filled | filled |
| fail (ব্যর্থ হওয়া) | failed | failed |
| leave (পরিভ্রমণ করা) | left | left |
| live (বাস করা) | lived | lived |
| lie (ভুলে থাকা) | lay | lain |
| lie (নিথরা থাকা বলা) | lied | lied |
| lay (শোভানো, রাখা) | laid | laid |
| lose (আলগা করা) | loosed | loosed |
| lose (হারানো) | lost | lost |
| raise (তোলা) | raised | raised |
| rise (ওঠা) | rose | risen |
| sew (সেলাই করা) | sewed | sewed |
| sow (বীজ বোনা) | sowed | sowed/sown |
| show (দেখানো) | showed | shown |
| strike (আঘাত করা) | struck | struck |
| stroke (ঘুঁ আঘাত করা) | stroked | stroked |

Spelling rules of verbs which have -ing forms.

[Verb + ing বানানের কিছু নিয়ম]

| -ing spelling rules | Examples | |
|--|----------|-------------|
| | come | coming |
| | give | giving |
| | have | having |
| | love | loving |
| | make | making |
| | write | writing |
| (b) কিছু Verb-এর শেষে দুটি e থাকলে e লোপ হয় না। | agree | agreeing |
| | see | seeing |
| (c) Verb-এর শেষে consonant-এর আগে যদি একটি vowel থাকে, তাহলে consonant-টি double হয়ে -ing হয়। মনে রাখা সরকার, এরকম Verb-এর ক্ষেত্রে যে কোন suffix যোগ হলেই consonant-টি double হয়। যেমন—beg + ed = begged, bat + ed = batted, beg + er = beggar, run + er = runner. | beg | begging |
| | bat | battling |
| | get | getting |
| | run | running |
| | sit | sitting |
| | stop | stopping |
| | hop | hopping |
| | pat | patting |
| | admit | admitting |
| | begin | beginning |
| | forget | forgetting |
| | refer | referring |
| | quarrel | quarrelling |
| | travel | travelling |

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| (d) last syllable-এ stress না পড়লে সাধারণত consonant-এর আগে Vowel থাকলেও consonant double হয় না। | listen visit remember | listening visiting remembering |
| (e) Verb-এর শেষে ie থাকলে। পরিবর্তিত হয়ে y হয় ও e লোপ হয়, তারপর -ing যোগ হয়। | die lie tie | dying lying tying |
| (f) এছাড়া বেশির ভাগ Verb-এর বানানে কোন পরিবর্তন না হয়ে -ing যোগ হয়। | be do say fry try buy keep stand carry enjoy | being doing saying frying trying buying keeping standing carrying enjoying |

PRONUNCIATION NOTE

আমরা দেখেছি, verb-এর Base form-এর সঙ্গে গ্রাইট -d বা -ed যুক্ত হয়ে verb-এর Past ও Past Participle form গঠিত হয় এগুলির উচ্চারণ ভিন্নরকম হতে পারে। এগুলি সতর্কভাবে অভ্যাস করা উচিত। সঠিক উচ্চারণ রীতির জন্য **English Pronouncing Dictionary** by D.L. Jones অথবা **Advance Learner's Dictionary** by A. S. Hornby প্রচেষ্টা।

১ নং নিয়ম :

| যদি verb-এর last sound যদি 'ড'/'ক'/'স'/'শ' হয় তবে -ed-এর উচ্চারণ হয় id/ইড। | ed = id (ইড) | |
|--|---------------------|------------------------|
| Present | Past | Past Participle |
| aid (এইড) | aided (এইডিড) | aided (এইডিড) |
| decide (ডিসাইড) | decided (ডিসাইডিড) | decided (ডিসাইডিড) |
| end (এন্ড) | ended (এন্ডিড) | ended (এন্ডিড) |
| mend (মেন্ড) | mended (মেন্টিড) | mended (মেন্টিড) |
| hate (হেইট) | hated (হেইটিড) | hated (হেইটিড) |
| paint (পেইন্ট) | painted (পেইন্টিড) | painted (পেইন্টিড) |
| nod (নড) | nodded (নড্টিড) | nodded (নড্টিড) |
| start (স্টার্ট) | started (স্টার্টিড) | started (স্টার্টিড) |
| enjoy (এনজয়) | enjoyed (এনজয়িড) | enjoyed (এনজয়িড) |
| die (ডাই) | died (ডাইড) | died (ডাইড) |
| carry (কারি) | carried (কারিড) | carried (কারিড) |

২ নং নিয়ম :

| যদি verb-এর last sound যদি 'ক'/'ফ'/'স'/'শ' হয় তবে -ed-এর উচ্চারণ হয় t/টি। | ed = t (টি) | |
|---|-------------------|-------------------|
| ask (আস্ক) | asked (আস্ক্টি) | asked (আস্ক্টি) |
| kick (কিক্) | kicked (কিক্টি) | kicked (কিক্টি) |
| look (লুক্) | looked (লুক্টি) | looked (লুক্টি) |
| drop (ড্রপ্) | dropped (ড্রপ্টি) | dropped (ড্রপ্টি) |
| help (হেল্প্) | helped (হেল্প্টি) | helped (হেল্প্টি) |
| laugh (লাফ্) | laughed (লাফ্টি) | laughed (লাফ্টি) |
| pass (পাস্) | passed (পাস্টি) | passed (পাস্টি) |
| push (পুশ্) | pushed (পুশ্টি) | pushed (পুশ্টি) |
| fix (ফিক্স্) | fixed (ফিক্স্টি) | fixed (ফিক্স্টি) |
| wash (ওয়াশ্) | washed (ওয়াশ্টি) | washed (ওয়াশ্টি) |
| wish (উইশ্) | wished (উইশ্টি) | wished (উইশ্টি) |

| যদি verb-এর last sound যদি আগের দুটি নিয়মের sound না হয়ে অন্য sound হয় তাহলে verb-এর শেষের 'd'/'-ed'-এর উচ্চারণ হয়। d/ড। | | ed = d/ড |
|--|--------------------|------------------------|
| Present | Past | Past Participle |
| allow (আলাউ) | allowed (আলাউড) | allowed (আলাউড) |
| boil (বাইল) | boiled (বাইলড) | boiled (বাইলড) |
| clean (ক্লিন) | cleaned (ক্লিনড) | cleaned (ক্লিনড) |
| climb (ক্লাইম্) | climbed (ক্লাইমড) | climbed (ক্লাইমড) |
| close (ক্লোজ্) | closed (ক্লোজড) | closed (ক্লোজড) |
| delay (ডিলে) | delayed (ডিলেইড) | delayed (ডিলেইড) |
| dance (ডান্স্) | danced (ডান্সড) | danced (ডান্সড) |
| fall (ফেইল্) | failed (ফেইলড) | failed (ফেইলড) |
| fill (ফিল্) | filled (ফিলড) | filled (ফিলড) |
| flow (ফ্লো) | flowed (ফ্লোড) | flowed (ফ্লোড) |
| play (প্লে) | played (প্লেইড) | played (প্লেইড) |
| pull (পুল্) | pulled (পুলড) | pulled (পুলড) |
| obey (ওবে) | obeyed (ওবেইড) | obeyed (ওবেইড) |
| love (লভ্) | loved (লভড) | loved (লভড) |
| move (মুভ্) | moved (মুভড) | moved (মুভড) |
| rub (রাব্) | rubbed (রাবড) | rubbed (রাবড) |
| sow/show (সো) | sowed/showed (সোড) | sowed/showed (সোড) |

EXERCISE

1. Write the following verbs in English and conjugate them. (নিচের ক্রিয়াপদগুলিকে ইংরেজিতে লেখ এবং সেগুলির present, past এবং past participle রূপ লেখ) :
One has been done for you.

| Verbs | Present | Past | Past participle |
|--------------|---------|-------|-----------------|
| যোগ করা | add | added | added |
| জিজ্ঞাসা করা | | | |
| শেষ করা | | | |
| বার্ষ হওয়া | | | |
| পূর্ণ করা | | | |
| অনুভব করা | | | |
| সাহায্য করা | | | |
| হত্যা করা | | | |
| আলোচনা করা | | | |
| হারানো | | | |
| বেলা করা | | | |
| পৌছানো | | | |
| ত্যাগ করা | | | |
| বাঁ করা | | | |
| তয়ে থাকা | | | |
| পোড়ানো | | | |
| সেলাই করা | | | |
| বীজ বোনা | | | |
| চিন্তা করা | | | |
| দেখানো | | | |
| দেখা | | | |

| Verbs | Present | Past | Past participle |
|------------------|---------|------|-----------------|
| करना | | | |
| देना | | | |
| पढ़ना | | | |
| लिखना | | | |
| चलना | | | |
| बैठना | | | |
| उठना | | | |
| कटना | | | |
| फिट करना | | | |
| मरना | | | |
| जिती | | | |
| नहीं जाना | | | |
| सुझाना | | | |
| काटना | | | |
| आवाज़ देना | | | |
| गहरा करना | | | |
| निष्कार करना | | | |
| निष्कार देना | | | |
| विद्या करना करना | | | |
| आवाज़ देना देना | | | |

2. Give the resulting forms of the following verbs + ing in correct spelling with their meaning. (যিকোনো verb + ing যোগ করে সঠিক রূপকে লেখ এবং অর্থ লেখ) :

One has been done for you

| Verb + ing | resulting forms | meaning |
|----------------|-----------------|---------|
| bite + ing | biting | engigit |
| come + ing | | |
| abide + ing | | |
| arise + ing | | |
| advise + ing | | |
| loose + ing | | |
| care + ing | | |
| change + ing | | |
| charge + ing | | |
| close + ing | | |
| compare + ing | | |
| compete + ing | | |
| complete + ing | | |
| dare + ing | | |
| dance + ing | | |
| die + ing | | |
| lie + ing | | |
| agree + ing | | |
| see + ing | | |
| be + ing | | |
| have + ing | | |
| give + ing | | |
| make + ing | | |
| take + ing | | |
| run + ing | | |

| CONJUGATION OF VERBS | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| Verb + ing | resulting forms | meaning |
| sit + ing | sitting | to be sitting |
| get + ing | getting | to be getting |
| emit + ing | emitting | to be emitting |
| drop + ing | dropping | to be dropping |
| hop + ing | hopping | to be hopping |
| plan + ing | planning | to be planning |
| cancel + ing | cancelling | to be cancelling |
| travel + ing | travelling | to be travelling |
| quarrel + ing | quarrelling | to be quarrelling |
| cry + ing | crying | to be crying |
| play + ing | playing | to be playing |
| pay + ing | paying | to be paying |
| fly + ing | flying | to be flying |
| shake + ing | shaking | to be shaking |
| strike + ing | striking | to be striking |
| write + ing | writing | to be writing |

CHAPTER-13
TIME AND TENSE

Tense denotes the 'time of a verb'. (ক্রিয়া সম্বন্ধে হওয়ার সময়কে Tense বলে।)
[The word tense comes from the Latin tempus or time.]

ইংরেজিতে Tense প্রধানত তিনটি।

(i) Present Tense (বর্তমান কাল)

(ii) Past Tense (পূর্বে কাল)

(iii) Future Tense (ভবিষ্যৎ কাল)

এই তিনটি Tense-এর প্রত্যেকটিতে আবার চার ভাগে ভাগ করা যায়—

(i) Indefinite (ii) Continuous (iii) Perfect (iv) Perfect continuous.

| Present | Past | Future |
|------------|------------|--------------------|
| Indefinite | Continuous | Perfect |
| | | Perfect continuous |

এখন নিচের Table-এ বাংলা ও ইংরেজি Tense-এর সাদৃশ্যমূলক চিহ্নগুলি দেখ।

TABLE

| Tense | Indefinite | Continuous -or- Progressive | Perfect | Perfect Continuous |
|---------|--|--|--|--|
| Present | বাংলার মূল ক্রিয়া। do, do ইত্যাদি মূল verb | বাংলার ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'তেছি', 'তেছ', 'তেছ'। ইংরেজিতে is / am/are এবং verb + ing. | বাংলার ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'ইয়াছি', 'ইয়াছ', 'ইয়াছ'। ইংরেজিতে has/have এবং verb এর Past participle | কিছুকাল ধরে কোন কাজ চলছে। ইংরেজিতে has been /have been এবং verb + ing |
| Past | বাংলার ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'ন'। ইংরেজিতে verb-এর past form | বাংলার 'তেছিল', 'তেছিলে', 'তেছিলাম'। ইংরেজিতে was/were এবং verb + ing | অতীতে দুটি কাজের মধ্যে যেটি আগে ঘটেছে। ইংরেজিতে had এবং verb-এর past participle | কিছুকাল ধরে কোন কাজ চলছিল। had been এবং verb + ing |
| Future | বাংলার ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'ব'। ইংরেজিতে shall/will এবং মূল verb | কোন কাজ চলতে থাকবে। ইংরেজিতে shall be/ will be এবং verb + ing | কোন কাজ হয়ে থাকবে। ইংরেজিতে shall have/ will have এবং verb এর past parti- ciple | কোন কাজ কিছুকাল ধরে চলতে থাকবে। ইংরেজিতে shall have been/will have been এবং verb + ing |

Forms of Tenses

| Tense | Indefinite | Continuous | Perfect | Perfect Continuous |
|---------|------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Present | I do | I am doing | I have done | I have been doing |
| Past | I did | I was doing | I had done | I had been doing |
| Future | I shall do | I shall be doing | I shall have done | I shall have been doing |

Present Indefinite Tense (Simple Present)

Present Indefinite tense denotes an action in the present time or habitual truth or eternal truth.

কোন কাজ বর্তমানে হয় বোঝালে বা অভ্যাসগত সত্য বোঝালে বা চিরসত্য বোঝালে Present Indefinite বা Simple Present Tense হয়।

এই Tense-এ বাংলায় মূল ক্রিয়া ব্যবহৃত হয় এবং ইংরেজিতেও তদু মূল verb ব্যবহৃত হয়। তবে Subject Third Person Singular number হলে verb এর শেষে 's' বা 'es' যোগ হয়।

[Subject + Verb (verb + s/es)]

আমি বই পড়ি—I read a book.

আমরা বই পড়ি—We read a books.

তুমি/তোমরা বই পড়—You read a book (books)

সে বই পড়ে—He/She reads a book.

তাহারা বই পড়ে—They read books.

সূর্য পূর্ব দিকে ওঠে—The sun rises in the east.

জল শূন্য ডিগ্রি সেন্টিগ্রেডে জমাট বাঁধে—Water freezes at 0° centigrade.

Different forms of Simple Present :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|--|---|---|
| I write. We write. You write. He/She writes. They write. | Do I write? Do we write? Do you write? Does he /she write. Do they write. | I do not write. We do not write. You do not write. He/ She does not write. They do not write. |

Present Continuous (Present Progressive)

Present continuous tense is used when an action is continued or going to be continued in near future.

বর্তমানকালে কোন কাজ চলছে বা নিকট ভবিষ্যতে চলবে বোঝালে Present Continuous Tense হয়। বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'তেছি', 'তেছ', 'তেছে' ইত্যাদি।

[Subject + am/is/are + (verb + ing)]

আমি বই পড়িতেছি (পড়ছি)—I am reading a book.

আমরা বই পড়িতেছি (পড়ছি)—We are reading books.

তুমি/তোমরা বই পড়িতেছ (পড়ছ)—You are reading a book (books)

সে বই পড়িতেছে (পড়ছে)—He/She is reading a book.

তাহারা (তারা) বই পড়িতেছে (পড়ছে)—They are reading books.

আমি আজ রাতে দিল্লী যাব—I am going to Delhi tonight. (near future.)

আমি কাকা আগামীকাল এখানে আসছেন—My uncle is arriving here tomorrow.

আপনি কি আজ বিকালে মিটিং-এ আসছেন?—Are you coming to the meeting this afternoon?

***Note :** The following verbs are not normally used in the continuous form. —Wren & Martin.

নিচের verb গুলি সাধারণত continuous form -এ ব্যবহৃত হয় না।

(1) Verbs of Perception, e. g., see, hear, smell, notice, recognize.

(2) Verbs of appearing, e. g., appear, look, seem.

(3) Verbs of emotion, e. g., want, wish, desire, feel, like, love, hate, hope, refuse, prefer.

(4) Verbs of thinking, e. g., think, suppose, believe, agree, consider, trust, remember, forget, know, imagine, mean, mind, understand.

(5) have (=possess), own, possess, belong to, contain, consist of, be (except when used in the passive)

So we must say, "I see an aeroplane", not "I am seeing an aeroplane."

অনুরূপভাবে : আমি একটি সুন্দর পাখী দেখতেছি/দেখছি—I see a nice bird.

আমি তাহার (তার) মাড়ী দেখতেছি/দেখছি—I feel very pulse

আমি খুব শীত অনুভব করিতেছি/করছি—I feel very cold.

অবশ্য see, feel, think ইত্যাদি verb-এর সাধারণত Present Continuous Tense

না হলেও কিছু ক্ষেত্রে হয়।

আমি দেখছি তো দেখছি—I am seeing and seeing. (I see and see নয়)

I am seeing him tomorrow = I have an appointment with him.

—Thomson & Martinet.

তুলনা বোঝালে 'feel' verb -এর Continuous Tense হয়।

আমের থেকে এখন ভালো বোধ করছি কি?—Are you feeling better now?

হ্যাঁ, আমি আমার চেয়ে ভালো বোধ করছি—Yes, I'm feeling better.

(Vide 'Learning English' Step 2 page. 97)

অবশ্য comparative degree না হয়ে positive degree হলে 'feel' verb -এর Simple Present Tense হয়।

How do you feel now? I feel quite well/rather tired/dizzy.

এরূপ বিশেষ ক্ষেত্রে ছাড়া ওপরের verb-গুলির সাধারণত Simple Present Tense

হয়, Present Continuous Tense হয় না। যেমন—

তুমি তার সম্বন্ধে কি ভাবছ?—What do you think of him?

These verbs may, however, be used in the continuous tense with a change of meaning. —Wren & Martin.

I am thinking of (=considering the idea of) going to America.

Mr. Ghosh is minding (=looking after) the baby as his wife is out of home.

Different forms of Present Continuous (progressive) :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|---------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| I am writing. | Am I writing? | I am not writing. |
| We are writing. | Are we writing? | We are not writing. |
| You are writing. | Are you writing? | You are not writing. |
| He/She is writing. | Is he/she writing? | He/She is not writing. |
| They are writing. | Are they writing? | They are not writing. |

Present Perfect Tense

Present Perfect tense is used when the work has been done but its effect lasts.

কোন কাজ শেষ হয়েছে অথচ তার ফল বর্তমান আছে বোঝালে Present Perfect tense হয়।

*বাক্যের ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'ইয়াছি', 'ইয়াছ', 'ইয়াছে' ইত্যাদি।

[Subject + has/have + (past participle of verb)]

আমি কাজটি করিয়াছি (করেছি)—I have done the work.

আমরা কাজটি করিয়াছি (করেছি)—We have done the work.

তুমি/তোমরা কাজটি করিয়াছ (করছ)—You have done the work.

সে কাজটি করিয়াছে (করেছে)—He/She has done the work.

তাহারা (তারা) কাজটি করিয়াছে (করেছে)—They have done the work.

তারা এইমাত্র কাজটি করেছে—They have just done the work.

সে ঘন্টার পর ঘন্টা পড়েছে—He has studied for hours.

সে এখানে সোমবার থেকে আছে—He has been here since (from) Monday.

Just, already, since, for, yet are generally used with the Present

Perfect.

***Note :** Present perfect tense is never used with adverbs of past time. We should not say, for example, "He has gone to Calcutta yesterday". In such cases the simple past should be used "He went to Calcutta yesterday."

—Wren & Martin.

অনুরূপ ভাবে : আমি গতকাল তোমার চিঠি পাইয়াছি (পেয়েছি)—I received your letter yesterday. (I have received your letter yesterday হয় না।)

গত রবিবার সে এখানে আসিয়াছে (এসেছে)—He came here last Sunday. (He has come here last Sunday হয় না।)

Different forms of Present Perfect :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| I have written. | Have I written? | I have not written. |
| We have written. | Have we written? | We have not written. |
| You have written. | Have you written? | You have not written. |
| He/She has written. | Has he/she written? | He/She has not written. |
| They have written. | Have they written? | They have not written. |

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

The Present Perfect Continuous tense is used for an action which began at some time in the past and is still continuing.

কোন কাজ পূর্বে আরম্ভ হয়ে এখনও চলছে এরূপ বোঝালে Present Perfect continuous tense হয়।

[Subject + has been/have been + (verb + ing)]

আমি দুই দিন ধরিয়া কাজটি করিতেছি—I have been doing this work for two days.

আমরা পাঁচ বৎসর যাবৎ এখানে বাস করিতেছি—We have been living here for five years.

সে তিন বৎসর যাবৎ এই কলে পড়িতেছে—He/She has been reading in this school for three years.

তাহারা সাত দিন ধরিয়া এই কাজটি করিতেছে—They have been doing this work for a week.

ছেলেবেলা হইতে সে এখানে বাস করিতেছে—He has been living here from his boyhood.

নীলু গত রবিবার হইতে জ্বরে ভুগিতেছে—Nilu has been suffering from fever since Sunday last.

গত সোমবার হইতে বৃষ্টি হইতেছে-It has been raining from (since) Monday last.

১৯৯০ সাল হইতে তিনি এখানে কাজ করিতেছেন-He has been working here from (since) 1990.

লিপিকা তোমার জন্য অনেকক্ষণ অপেক্ষা করিতেছে-Lipika has been waiting for you for a long time.

তাহারা সকাল ৭টা হইতে কঠিন কাজ করিয়া যাইতেছে-They have been working hard from (since) 7 a. m.

আমরা দিনের শুরু হইতেই কাজ করিয়া যাইতেছি-We have been doing our work from (since) day-break. ["from day-break"-Nesfield]

***Note:** "Both (since and from) denote a point of time, not a space or period. But 'since' is preceded by a verb in some perfect tense, while 'from' can be used with any form of tense. Another difference is that 'since' can be used only in reference to past time, whereas 'from' can be used for present and future tense."

-Nesfield.

সহজ কথায় Point of time বোঝাতে Present Perfect Tense, Present Perfect Continuous Tense-এ এবং Past Tense-এ since এবং সময় tense-এ from ব্যবহৃত হয়। আর period of time বোঝাতে অর্থাৎ কোন সময় থেকে কোন সময় পর্যন্ত সময়ের ব্যাপ্তি বোঝাতে for ব্যবহৃত হয়। [Preposition chapter-এ page 177-178 চুটকি।]

Different forms of Present Perfect Continuous :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| I have been working | Have I been working? | I have not been working. |
| We have been working. | Have we been working? | We have not been working. |
| You have been working | Have you been working? | You have not been working. |
| He/She has been working | Has he/she been working? | He/She has not been working. |
| They have been working. | Have they been working? | They have not been working. |

Past Indefinite Tense (Simple Past)

Past Indefinite tense is used to denote an action completed in the past or a past habit.

অতীতকালে কোন কাজ ঘটেছিল বা অতীতের কোন অভ্যাস বোঝাতে Past Indefinite Tense বা Simple Past tense হয়।

* বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'দ' হয়।

[Subject + Past form of verb]

আমি কাজটি করিয়াছিলাম (করেছিলাম)-I did the work.

আমরা কাজটি করিয়াছিলাম (করেছিলাম)-I did the work.

তুমি/তোমরা কাজটি করিয়াছিলে (করেছিলে)-You did the work.

সে কাজটি করিয়াছিল (করেছিল)-He/she did the work.

তাহারা (তারা) কাজটি করিয়াছিল (করেছিল)-They did the work.

তার ছেলেকেলা লন্ডনে কেটেছিল-He spent his boyhood in London.

সে দশ বছর বয়স থেকে ইংরেজি শেখা শুরু করেছিল-He began learning English since (from) the age of ten.

***Note :** Past habit বা অতীতকালে অভ্যাস বোঝালে বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'দ' না হয়ে 'ত' হয়। তখন এই ধরনের Habitual Past বোঝাতে would বা used to ব্যবহার হয়।

সে প্রতিদিন নদীতে বান করিত (করত)-He would (used to) bathe in the river everyday.

অপূর্ব প্রতিদিন বিকালে ক্রিকেট খেলিত (খেলত)-Apurba would (used to) play cricket every afternoon.

used to/would + verb

1. He would sit by the window and watch people at the pond.

2. The servants used to tell them stories.

These verbs tell us about past habits.

The first one is often used in writing and the second in speech.

[Vide Learning English, Step-2]

এই verb-গুলি (used to/would+verb) past habit বা অতীতকালের অভ্যাস বোঝায়। তবে প্রথমটি (used to) ইংরেজি লেখায় এবং দ্বিতীয়টি (would) ইংরেজি কথায় বেশি ব্যবহৃত হয়।

Moreover these verbs express a discontinued habit.

"I used to ride a lot" means that "I rode a lot at one period of my life but that I do not ride a lot now" -A. J. Thomson and A. V. Martine.

However, in a given context would/used to may not be repeated and simple past may also be used to denote past habits.

"He used to sit there and look out at the little pond. He watched the people come to bathe in the pond." (Learning English, Step-2).

Simple Past may also be used with 'often', 'always', 'usually', 'regularly' etc. to denote past habits.

অতীতকালের অভ্যাস বোঝাতে often, always, usually, regularly ইত্যাদি যোগ করে Simple Past -ও ব্যবহার করা যায়।

The Servants usually looked after him. He watered the plants regularly.

Different forms of Simple Past :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|---------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| I played | Did I play? | I did not play. |
| We played | Did we play? | We did not play. |
| You played | Did you play? | You did not play. |
| He/She played | Did he/she play? | He/She did not play. |
| They played | Did they play? | They did not play. |

Past Continuous (Past Progressive)

Past Continuous Tense is used when the action was continued for some time in the past.

অতীতকালে কোন কাজ কিছুক্ষণ ধরে চলছিল বোঝালে Past continuous tense হয়।

* বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'তেছিল', 'তেছিলে', 'তেছিলাম' ইত্যাদি।

[Subject + was/were + (verb + ing)]

আমি ফুটবল খেলিতেছিলাম (খেলছিলাম)-I was playing football.

আমরা ফুটবল খেলিতেছিলাম (খেলছিলাম)-We were playing football.

তুমি/তোমরা ফুটবল খেলিতেছিলে (খেলছিলে)-You were playing football.

সে ফুটবল খেলিতেছিল (খেলছিল)-He/She was playing football.

তাহারা (তারা) ফুটবল খেলিতেছিল (খেলছিল)-They were playing football.

গত সন্ধ্যায় সে কি করছিল-What was she doing in the last evening?

***Note:** Past Progressive is often used together with a simple Past when two clauses in the past tense are joined with 'when' or 'while' অতীতকালের দুটি clause যখন when বা while দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়, তখন প্রায়ই একটিতে Past Progressive এবং অন্যটিতে simple past হয়।

অর্থাৎ, অতীতকালে একই বস্তু দুটি কাজ হলে একটিতে simple past এবং অন্যটিতে past continuous হয়। কিন্তু অতীতকালে দুটি কাজের মধ্যে একটি আগে এবং একটি পরে হলে আগেরটিতে past perfect এবং পরেরটিতে simple past হয়।

তুমি যখন মাঠে খেলাছিলে, আমি তোমাকে দেখেছিলুম-I saw you while you were playing in the field.

আমি যখন বাড়ী পৌঁছলাম, তখন বৃষ্টি হচ্ছিল-It was raining when I reached home.

সে যখন প্রাতরাশ খাচ্ছিল, আমি তার সাথে দেখা করতে গিয়েছিলুম-When he was having his breakfast, I went to see him.

Different forms of Past Continuous :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|--|--|--|
| I was playing. We were playing. You were playing. He/She was playing. They were playing. | Was I playing? Were we playing? Were you playing? Was he/she playing? Were they playing? | I was not playing. We were not playing. You were not playing. He/She was not playing. They were not playing. |

Past Perfect Tense

Past perfect tense is used in the former action between two completed actions of the past. Simple Past is used in the later action. অতীতকালের দুটি কাজ সম্পন্ন হয়ে থাকলে তাদের মধ্যে যেটি আগে ঘটেছিল তার Past Perfect tense হয় এবং যেটি পরে ঘটেছিল তার Simple past tense হয়।

[Subject + had + (past participle of verb)]

অমিত বাড়ি আসিবার পূর্বে নীলিমা চলিয়া গেল-Nilima had gone out before Amit came home.

আমি ট্রেনে পৌঁছিবার পূর্বে ট্রেনটি ছাড়িয়া গেল-The train had started before I reached the station.

যদি পড়ার পূর্বে তারা স্কুলে পৌঁছান-They had reached the school before the bell rang.

বিছানার তক্তে যাবার পূর্বে আমি দরজা বন্ধ করলাম-I had shut the door before I got into bed.

ডাক্তার আসিবার পূর্বে রোগীটি মারা গেল-The patient had died before the doctor came. (or) The doctor came after the patient had died.

ডাক্তার আসিবার পরে রোগীটি মারা গেল-The doctor had come before the patient died. (or) The patient died after the doctor had come.

[Note:] বাক্যের দুটি অংশে 'before' বা 'after' যারা যুক্ত হলে 'before'-এর পূর্বে এবং 'after'-এর পরে past perfect tense হয় এবং অন্যটিতে Simple past হয়।

আবার 'when' দিয়ে ও বাক্যের দুটি অংশ যুক্ত হলে আগের কাজটিতে past perfect tense হয়।

I had done my exercise when Hari came to see me.

—Wren & Martin.

Hardly বা **Scarcely** (Semi-negative word) দিয়ে বাক্য তৈরি হলে **Hardly** বা **Scarcely**-র পূর্বে had বসে।

Hardly/Scarcely had we started when it began to rain.

অথবা We had hardly started when it began to rain.

আবার **No sooner.... than** দিয়েও বাক্যের দুটি অংশ যুক্ত হতে পারে। তবে সেক্ষেত্রে **No sooner**-এর ঠিক পরেই had বসে।

No sooner had we left the house than it began to rain. (আমরা বাড়ী থেকে বেরোতে না বেরোতেই বৃষ্টি শুরু হল।) (এরূপ ক্ষেত্রে No sooner we had left the house.... হয় না।) অথবা No sooner did we leave এরূপ প্রয়োগ হয়।

Different forms of Past perfect :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|--|--|--|
| I had opened. We had opened. You had opened. He/She had opened. They had opened. | Had I opened? Had we opened? Had you opened? Had he/she opened? Had they opened? | I had not opened. We had not opened. You had not opened. He/She had not opened. They had not opened. |

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

Past perfect continuous tense is used for an action that began before a certain point in the past and continued upto that time.

অতীতকালে কোন কাজ কোন বিশেষ সময়ের পূর্বে আরম্ভ হয়ে সেইসময় পর্যন্ত চলছিল বোঝালে Past perfect continuous tense হয়। এখানেও যদি দুটি ক্রিয়ার উল্লেখ থাকে তাহলে যে কাজটি আগে থেকে চলছিল তার Past perfect continuous এবং যেটি পরে ঘটেছিল, তার Simple tense হয়।

[Subject + had been + (verb + ing)]

ট্রেনটি ছাড়বার পূর্বে আমরা খেলা করছিলাম-We had been playing before the train started.

আমি যখন তার সঙ্গে দেখা করতে গেলুম তখন সে উপন্যাস পড়ছিলেন-She had been reading a novel when I went to meet her.

ঐ সময় নিখিল দুমাস ধরে উপন্যাস লিখছিলেন-At that time Nikhil had been writing a novel for two months.

যখন আমি ছেলোটিকে দেখলুম তখন সে কয়েক ঘণ্টা ধরে কাঁদছিলেন-When I met the boy, he had been crying for several hours.

তুমি যখন তোমার বড়ুর বাড়িতে গিয়েছিলে, তখন তোমার মা তোমার জন্য অপেক্ষা করছিলেন-Your mother had been waiting for you when you went to your friend's house.

মিটার রায় সেখানে পাঁচবছর যাবৎ শিক্ষকতা করছিলেন-Mr. Roy had been teaching there for five years.

তখন বেলা ১০টা, অমল জোর থেকে কাজ করে ক্লান্ত হয়ে পড়েছিল-It was 10 a. m. and Amal was tired as he had been working since dawn.

Different forms of Past Continuous :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|--|--|--|
| I had been playing. We had been playing. You had been playing. He/She had been playing. They had been playing. | Had I been playing? Had we been playing? Had you been playing? Had he/she been playing? Had they been playing? | I had not been playing. We had not been playing. You had not been playing. He/She had not been playing. They had not been playing. |

Future Indefinite Tense (Simple Future)

Future Indefinite tense is used when an action will be done or will happen in future.

ভবিষ্যৎকালে কোন কাজ ঘটবে বোঝালে Future Indefinite tense হয়।

* বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'ব' থাকে।

[Subject + shall/will + verb]

আমি বিদ্যালয়ে যাব (যাব)-I shall go to school.

আমরা বিদ্যালয়ে যাব (যাব)-We shall go to school.

তুমি/তোমরা বিদ্যালয়ে যাবে (যাবে)-You will go to school.

সে বিদ্যালয়ে যাবে (যাবে)-He/She will go to school.

তাহারা (তারা) বিদ্যালয়ে যাবে (যাবে)-They will go to school.

*Note-1 We use 'will' instead of 'shall' and 'shall' instead of 'will' when we talk about **strong intention or promise**.

দৃঢ় ইচ্ছা বা প্রতিজ্ঞা (must) অর্থে যেখানে shall বসার কথা সেখানে will এবং যেখানে will বসার কথা সেখানে shall হয়।

আমি বিদ্যালয়ে যাবই-I will go to school.

তুমি কিছুতেই সিনেমা যাবে না-You shall not go to the cinema show.

সে অবশ্যই কাজটি করবে-He shall do the work.

*Note-2 When an action is **planned or arranged** to take place in the **near future, present continuous tense is used** instead of simple future tense.

যখন নিকট ভবিষ্যতে কোন কাজের পরিকল্পনা বা ব্যবস্থা থাকে, তখন simple future tense-এর পরিবর্তে present continuous tense হয়।

আমার বাবা আগামীকাল বাড়ী আসবেন (আসছেন)-My father is coming home tomorrow.

আমি আজ বিকেলে সিনেমা দেখতে যাব-I am going to the cinema this afternoon.

Simple Future Tense generally expresses pure or colourless future. **When the future is coloured with intention, the going to + infinitive construction is preferred**; e. g., He is going to build a new house. But, I shall see him tomorrow.

Tomorrow will be Sunday.

—Wren & Martin.

সাধারণ ভবিষ্যতে future tense হয়, কিন্তু ভবিষ্যৎকালে যখন কোন ইচ্ছা প্রকাশিত হয়, তখন going to + infinitive হয়।

Different forms of Future Indefinite (Simple Future) :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| I shall do. | Shall I do? | I shall not do. |
| We shall do. | Shall we do? | We shall not do. |
| You will do. | Will you do? | You will not do. |
| He/She will do. | Will he/she do? | He/She will not do. |
| They will do. | Will they do? | They will not do. |

Future Continuous Tense

Future continuous tense is used when an action is thought to be going on in the future.

ভবিষ্যৎকালে কোন কাজ হতে থাকবে বোঝালে Future Continuous tense হয়।

[Subject + shall be/will be + (verb + ing)]

আমি কাজটি করিতে থাকিব-I shall be doing the work.

আমরা কাজটি করিতে থাকিব-We shall be doing the work.

তুমি/তোমরা কাজটি করিতে থাকিব-You will be doing the work.

সে কাজটি করিতে থাকিব-He/She will be doing the work.

তাহারা কাজটি করিতে থাকিব-They will be doing the work.

তখন আমি বইটি পড়িতে থাকব-I shall be reading the book then.

Different forms of Future Continuous :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| I shall be doing. | Shall I be doing? | I shall not be doing. |
| We shall be doing. | Shall we be doing? | We shall not be doing. |
| You will be doing. | Will you be doing? | You will not be doing. |
| He/She will be doing. | Will he/she be doing? | He/She will not be doing. |
| They will be doing. | Will they be doing? | They will not be doing. |

Future Perfect Tense

Future Perfect tense is used to indicate the completion of an action by a certain time in the future.

ভবিষ্যৎকালে কোন নির্দিষ্ট সময়ের মধ্যে কোন কাজ হয়ে যাবে বোঝালে বা দুটি কাজের মধ্যে একটি আগে হবে বোঝালে Future Perfect Tense হয়। অবশ্য ভবিষ্যৎকালের দুটি কাজের মধ্যে যে কাজটি আগে হবে তার Future Perfect tense এবং যে কাজটি পরে হবে তার Simple Present tense হয়।

[Subject + shall have/will have + (past participle of verb)]

ঐ সময়ের মধ্যে আমি চিঠিটি লিখে রাখব-I shall have written the letter by that time.

যদি আসবার আগে আমি কাজটি শেষে রাখব-I shall have done the work before my father comes.

তুমি তার সঙ্গে দেখা করতে যাওয়ার পূর্বে সে জায়গাটি ছেড়ে চলে যাবে-Before you go to see him, he will have left the place.

Different forms of Future Perfect :

| Affirmative হ্যাঁ-বাচক | Question প্রশ্ন | Negative না-বাচক |
|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| I shall have done. | Shall I have done? | I shall have not done. |
| We shall have done. | Shall we have done? | We shall have not done. |
| You will have done. | Will you have done? | You will have not done. |
| He/She will have done. | Will he/she have done? | He/she will have not done. |
| They will have done. | Will they have done? | They will have not done. |

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

Future Perfect Continuous tense is used when the doer will have been doing the work by a certain future time.

ভবিষ্যৎকালে কোন সময়ের মধ্যে কোন কাজ চলতে থাকবে বোঝালে Future Perfect Continuous tense হয়। ভবিষ্যৎকালে দুটি কাজের মধ্যে যে কাজটি আগে চলতে থাকবে তার Future Perfect Continuous এবং যেটি পরে হবে তার Simple Present tense হয়।

[Subject + shall have been/will have been + (verb + ing)]
 জানারী দু'দাই পড়ি আমরা এখানে ডিগ্রি পাস করবে থাকবে-By next July we shall have been living here for three years.
 মাঝে আসবার আগে আমি কাজটি করতে থাকব-*I shall have been doing the work before my father comes.*
 সে ডিগ্রি পাওয়ার পূর্বে চার বছর অক্সফোর্ডে পড়তে থাকবে-*He will have been studying at Oxford when he gets his degree.*

Different forms of Future Perfect Continuous :

| Affirmative আ-ধাতক | Question প্র | Negative না-ধাতক |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| I shall have been doing. | Shall I have been doing? | I shall not have been doing. |
| We shall have been doing. | Shall we have been doing? | We shall not have been doing. |
| You will have been doing. | Will you have been doing? | You will not have been doing. |
| He/She will have been doing. | Will he/she have been doing? | He/She will not have been doing. |
| They will have been doing. | Will they have been doing? | They will not have been doing. |

APPLIED SECTION

Look at the figures of different tenses :

1. Simple present, Simple Past and Simple Future.

| Past | Present | Future |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| [an action that was done] | [an action that goes on] | [an action that will be done] |

2. Present continuous may be used :

(i) To describe a limited period (not a long term or permanent activity) or to describe a period around now.
 [এখন সর্বত্র সময়ে] বা ঘটছে]

Now.....Now

(ii) To describe present plans for the near future.
 [শীঘ্রই ঘটবে এমন পরিকল্পনা বর্তমানে প্রকাশ করতে]

Now.....Near future

3. Present Perfect may be shown :

Earlier.....Now

We often want to look back from now (the moment of speaking) to something that has happened earlier. We use this present perfect form to connect the earlier event with the present moment (now).

আমরা অনেক সময় বর্তমান মুহূর্ত থেকে সামান্য পূর্বে বা ঘটছে তার দিকে ফিরে তাকাতো চাই। তখন বর্তমান মুহূর্তের সঙ্গে সামান্য পূর্বের ঘটনার যোগ দেখাতে Present Perfect form ব্যবহার করি।

4. Present Perfect Continuous Tense may be shown :

Earlier.....Now

This form is used to denote an action which began at some time in the past and is still continuing.
 [পূর্বে আরম্ভ হয়ে এখনও চলছে]

Now study the usage of tenses :

1. Simple Present is used

(i) to express present actions or events or facts (বর্তমান কাজ বা ঘটনা বা বস্তু প্রকাশ করতে)

I get up at 6 a. m.

The train leaves at 7 p. m.

Lipika looks very beautiful.

Rabin goes to school.

I don't like tea, but I prefer coffee.

(ii) to express a habitual action (অভ্যাস বোঝাতে) :

I get up everyday at 6 a. m.

He takes milk every morning.

(iii) to express general truth or eternal truth (সাধারণ সত্য বা চিরসত্য বোঝাতে) :

The earth moves round the sun.

Fortune favours the brave.

(iv) in Imperative sentences. (আদেশ অনুপ্রেরণাদূলক বাক্যে) :

Draw a straight line.

Don't run in the sun.

Stop writing and hand over the answer-scripts.

(v) in Exclamatory sentences beginning with here and there (here এবং there দিয়ে Exclamatory sentence বা আবেগদূলক বাক্যে) :

Here comes the bus!

There goes the bell!

(vi) in quotations and reporting (উদ্ধৃতি ব্যবহার বা পত্রাক উদ্ধৃতি) :

Keats say, "A thing of beauty is a joy for ever." (Quotation)

They tell me that you are a fool. (Reporting)

(vii) to indicate a future event that is a part of a present plan or arrangement (ভবিষ্যতের কোন ঘটনা যদি বর্তমান কোন পরিকল্পনা বা ব্যবস্থার অঙ্গ হয়) :

They leave for London by the next mail.

His father sails for America next Sunday.

When does the school reopen?

(viii) to use verbs of perception, verbs of appearing and verbs of emotion like see, hear, look, seem, feel etc.

(see, hear, look, seem, feel প্রভৃতি কয়েকটি verb-এর ক্ষেত্রে) :

I see, you are a fool. I hear the buzzing sound.

You can't feel her sentiment.

(ix) in clauses of time and condition (সময় বা শর্তবোধক clause-এ) :

I shall wait till you finish your lunch.

If it rains we shall get wet.

2. Present progressive/continuous is used :

(i) for an action going on at the time of speaking.

(কাজ এখন হচ্ছে তখন কোন কাজ চলছে বোঝাতে) :

Lila is dancing now.

The boys are playing hockey.

(ii) imagining an unseen activity (কোন কাজ চলছে কল্পনা করতে) :

I think, Subhendu is *lying* on bed at home.

His friends *are doing* Mathematics now.

(iii) for an action that is planned or arranged to take place in the near future (দিকটী ভবিষ্যতে কোন কাজের পরিকল্পনা বা স্থগত থাকলে) :

Dipu and his friends *are leaving* Calcutta to night.

Bela and her friends *are arriving* her tomorrow.

(iv) for giving information about a third person's whereabouts. (কোন ব্যক্তির যাকিছু ঘটনান কাজের সন্ধান দিতে) :

Where is Debika?

She's (=she is) *watering* the plants in her garden.

(v) for explaining what one is doing. (একজন কি করছে তা বোঝাতে) :

What are you *doing*?

I'm (=I am) *drawing* a picture.

(vi) for describing (কর্ণনা দিতে) :

Which girl is Nipa? What is she *wearing* today?

She is slim and handsome. she is *wearing* a white sari today.

3. Present Perfect is used :

(i) to indicate completed action in the immediate past.

(অনুর ভবিষ্যতে যে কাজ সম্পন্ন হয়েছে) :

He *has just gone* out.

The clock *has struck* ten.

I *have cut* my finger and it is bleeding now.

(ii) to express past actions whose time is not definite.

(অতীতের কোন কাজের সময় নির্দিষ্ট না হলে) :

Mr. Roy *has been* to Japan.

I *have never known* him to be angry.

Have you ever been to Delhi?

Have you read 'Gulliver's Travels'?

(iii) to denote an action beginning at some time past and continuing up to the present moment. —Wren & Martin.

(আগে থেকে আরম্ভ হয়ে বর্তমান মুহূর্ত পর্যন্ত চলছে) :

I *have known* him for a long time.

We *have lived* here for ten years.

We *haven't seen* Padmini for several months.

He *hasn't finished* his work yet.

***Note :** We see that these adverbs or adverbials can be used with the present perfect : *just, often, so far, till now, already, since, for, never, ever* (in questions only), *yet* (in negatives and questions).

4. Present Perfect Continuous is used :

(i) for an action which began at some time in the past and is still continuing. (আগে থেকে আরম্ভ হয়ে এখনও ঘটে চলেছে) :

She *has been sleeping* for six hours.

He *has been playing* since 4 p. m.

They *have been building* the bridge for several years.

***Note :** This tense is sometimes used for an action already finished. In such cases the continuity of the activity is emphasized as an explanation of something.

—Wren & Martin.

Why are your clothes wet? —'I *have been watering* the garden.'

5. Simple past is used to talk about a past event as a simple fact. (অতীতকালে অতীতের কোন ঘটনা বলতে) :

(i) It often occurs with adverbs or adverb phrases.

(এটি প্রায়ই Adverb বা Adverb phrase -এর সঙ্গে ব্যবহৃত হয়) :

Haradhan *left* school last year.

The steamer *sailed* a week ago.

I *received* his letter yesterday.

(ii) Sometimes it is used without an adverb of time. In such cases

the time may be either implied or indicated by the context.

(কোন কোন ক্ষেত্রে adverb of time উহা থাকে। সেই ক্ষেত্রে এসব দ্বারা সময় সূচিত হয়) :

I *didn't sleep* well (i. e. last night)

'Where did he learn Hindi?'

'He *learnt* Hindi in patna.' (i. e. in some time past.)

(iii) Simple past is also used for past habits (অতীতের অভ্যাস বোঝাতে) :

He *used to study* many hours every day.

My grandmother *would bathe* in the Ganga in her old age.

She *always carried* an umbrella.

—Wren & Martin.

***Note :** 'used to' and 'would' are very often used in the above cases.

6. Past Continuous is used :

(i) to talk about any continuing process of doing something in the past. (অতীতে কোন কিছু করা হচ্ছিল বোঝাতে) :

The train was late and they *were waiting* at the station for three hours.

(ii) to describe a background action. (পটভূমির কোন কাজ বর্ণনা করতে) :

x. What *were you doing* in the evening yesterday?

y. I *was listening* to the radio all evening.

x. You took a long time to answer the phone. Were you *sleeping*?

y. Yes, I *was (sleeping)*

7. Past Perfect is used :

(i) to describe an action completed before a certain moment in the past. (অতীতে সম্পূর্ণ হয়ে গেছে এমন কাজের বর্ণনা দিতে) :

I met him in New Delhi in 1980. I *had seen* him last four years before.

(ii) If two actions happened in the past, it may be necessary to show which action happened earlier than the other. The past perfect is mainly used in such situations. (অতীতে দুটি ঘটনা ঘটলে কোনটি আগে ঘটেছে সেটা দেখাতেই প্রধানত : Past Perfect ব্যবহৃত হয়) :

I *had written* the letter before she arrived.

8. Past perfect continuous is used to express an action that continued in the past for a given period of time. (অতীতে কোন ঘটনা কিছু কাল ধরে ঘটছিল বোঝাতে) :

At that time he *had been reading* a novel for two weeks.

9. Ways of talking about the Future :

There are four different ways to talk about the near future

(i) by using *going to*,

(ii) by using present continuous,

(iii) by using simple present,

(iv) by using *will*, 'I, won't, shall.

Look at this table. They give the same facts.

| | | |
|---------|---|-------------------|
| Mr. Roy | (i) is going to leave (ii) is leaving (iii) leaves (iv) will leave | tomorrow morning. |
|---------|---|-------------------|

Note : 1 Such type of nature is coloured with intention or arrangement. (এরূপ Future কোন ইচ্ছা বা ব্যবস্থার সঙ্গে জড়িয়ে থাকে।)

But to express pure or colourless future we use only Simple Future tense. (বিশেষ ইচ্ছা বা ব্যবস্থার বৃত্ত না থাকলে কেবলমাত্র Simple Future (shall/will + verb) হয়।)

I shall do this work.

I'll have my dinner at 9 p. m. tonight.

There won't be any ceremonial party this year as We've lost a member of the club.

Note : 2 If two future actions are joined by *when*, the one will be in the future tense (any form) and the other will be in Simple Present tense.

(যদি দুটি ভবিষ্যৎ কালের কার্য *when* দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়, তাহলে একটিতে Future Tense এবং অন্যটিতে Simple Present Tense হয়।)

I shall leave the place when she comes.

Some Important usages :

সে কাল এখানে আসিয়াছে—He came here yesterday. (has come নয়)

সভাপতি একটি সুন্দর বক্তৃতা দিলেন—The president made (delivered) a nice speech. (gave নয়)

আমার ভাই পরীক্ষা দিতে না—His brother will not appear at the examination. (will not give নয়)

আমরা আসিতে রাজী হইল না—They refused to come. (denied নয়)

সে আমার দোষ অস্বীকার করিল—He denied his guilt. (refused নয়)

আমরা আপনার নিমন্ত্রণ প্রত্যাখ্যান করিলাম—We declined his invitation. (denied নয়)

সে আমার সঙ্গে দেখা করিতে আসিয়াছে—He has come to see me. (for seeing নয়)

সে কলকাতায় পাঁচদিন থাকবে—He will stay in Calcutta for five days. (live নয়)

আমরা কলকাতায় বাস করি—We live in Calcutta. (stay নয়)

তুমি কি আমার উপদেশে কান দিবে—Will you listen to his advice? (here নয়)

আমরা ভুল করিয়াছি—They are mistaken. (have mistaken নয়)

জাহাজ নদীতে ডুবিয়া গেল—The man was drowned in the river. (sank নয়)

জাহাজ নদীতে ডুবিয়া গেল—The boat sank in the river. (drowned নয়)

EXERCISE

1. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of tense of the verbs given in brackets. (বন্ধনীর মধ্যে দেওয়া verb-এর সঠিক tense বসিয়ে সূচ্যস্থান পূরণ কর।)

(i) The earth ——— (move) round the sun and the sun ——— (give) us light.

(iii) He always ——— (buy) lottery tickets but never ——— (win) any prize.

- (iii) Are you ——— (go) to school now?
(iv) Have you ——— (do) your homework?
(v) I have ——— (know) him for several years.
(vi) I ——— (get) your letter yesterday.
(vii) He ——— (come) here last Sunday.
(viii) She ——— (not buy) anything from the shopkeeper.
(ix) I ——— (wash) my hands when the telephone rang.
(x) I shall telephone you when she ——— (come) back.

2. Choose the correct verb form from those in brackets.
(বন্ধনীর মধ্যে থেকে সঠিক verb form নির্বাচন কর।)

- (i) He ——— when my uncle entered the room. (was studying, has studied, had studied)
(ii) I must stay here because I ——— a parcel. (have expected, expect, am expecting, I)
(iii) I see the price of petrol ——— up again recently. (was gone, has gone, went)
(iv) The birds ——— in the sky before it started raining. (flew, were, flying, had flown, had been flying, I)
(v) I ——— for a suitable job before I got this one. (looked, had been looking, was looking, I)

3. Complete the following passages with the correct forms of verbs given within brackets. (বন্ধনীর মধ্যে দেওয়া verb-এর সঠিক form বসিয়ে Passage গুলি সম্পূর্ণ কর।)

- (a) While I ——— (walk) back home yesterday, some one ——— (snatch) the bag from my hand and ——— (run) away. The police ——— (not catch) him yet. I ——— (wonder) how such things ——— (happen) nowadays.
(b) Every particle of matter ——— (attract) or ——— (pull) every other particle. That ——— (be) the law of gravitation. The sun ——— (attract) the earth and the earth in turn ——— (attract) the moon.
(c) We ——— (expect) him here yesterday. He ——— (not come) till today. No one ——— (know) what ——— (happen) to him. Perhaps he ——— (reach) here tomorrow. You ——— (see) him then.

4. Complete these sentences with the following verbs. Use the simple present for one and the present continuous for the other. (বাক্যগুলি সম্পূর্ণ কর। একটিতে Simple present এবং অন্যটিতে Present continuous ব্যবহার কর।)

- (i) Have we usually ——— dinner at about 10 p. m.
I ——— a birthday party on Friday. Are you free?
(ii) Do Biltu always ——— his homework as soon as he goes to school. Today he ——— his homework before going to school.
(iii) See Dipika ——— her brother off at the railway station this afternoon. Now I ——— what she means.
(iv) Get Tuhina has been thoroughly drenched. I think, she ——— a cold. She ——— colds in the rainy season.

(v) Speak Bipin ——— Bengali well, but no Hindi.
He ——— to his friend. Let's wait for him.
5. Use the appropriate future verb forms to complete the following conversations. (নিচের কথোপকথনগুলি সম্পূর্ণ করার জন্য সঠিক future verb form ব্যবহার কর।)

P.C.D. (7A)

(i) At the ticket counter [go, get, arrive, save, take, travel]

- Passenger : Could you help me ? I ... to Delhi tomorrow.
Can you tell me when the Delhi Mail ... in ?
Booking Clerk : Let me see. You ... it early in the morning.
It ... about eleven hours.
Passenger : What about the Rajdhani Express ?
Booking Clerk : That's a faster train. You ... at least four hours of your time.
Passenger : Then I ... not by the Delhi Mail.
I ... by the Rajdhani Express.

(ii) Offering help [be, call, give]

- Abdul : I don't feel quite well today.
Ayesha : I in a doctor ?
Abdul : No. I think I all right. you me a cup of coffee please ?
Ayesha : Certainly. Do you take sugar ?
Abdul : Yes, one spoon (= one spoonful).

(iii) A letter from the landlord [sell, do, find, write, be]

- Man : Look at this letter from the landlord. He this house.
Wife : But what we ? We have nowhere to go.
Where we a place to live in ?
Man : Don't worry. We a place. I to my friend.
he able to help us.

6. Write in your own English :

(a) Simple present [Verb-To be]

[বাংলায় 'হই', 'হও', 'হয়' প্রকৃতি ক্রিয়াপদ প্রায়ই উহ্য থাকে। কিন্তু ইংরেজিতে অনুবাদ করার সময় এই সকল ক্রিয়াপদের (be verb) উদ্বেগ করতে হয়। যেমন-আমি অসুস্থ-আমি হই অসুস্থ-I am ill.]
আমার নাম অনুপম। আমার বয়স এগারো বছর। সুশীল আমার ভাই। আমি পীড়িত। আমার বাস। অর্পণ ধনবান। সে দরিদ্র। তাহার অনুপস্থিত। লোকটি দরিদ্র কিন্তু সৎ। তুমি একজন ভালো খেলোয়াড়। ছেলেকে খুবই পছন্দ। ও বাহুল্য। আমি আপনার নিকট কৃতজ্ঞ (grateful)। ধনীরা সবসময় সুখী নয়। সত্যতঃ কেউ উপায়। মানুষ মরণশীল। (mortal)। বৃহত্তর প্রভুত্ব। পৃথিবী একটি গ্রহ (planet)। আমি অসহায়ী নই (নই=হইনা)। একজন ছুস মাটির এবং একজন টেনশন মাটির মর্গ তফাৎ (key)।

(b) Simple Present [Verb-To be-অর্থাৎ, আছে ইত্যাদি অর্থে]

[নিয়ে আছি, আছে, আছে ইত্যাদি অর্থে 'be' verb-এর প্রয়োগ হয়। যেমন-আমি বাড়ীতে আছি-I am at home.]

আমি এখানে আছি। আমরা ভালো আছি। লোকটি এখানে আছে। তুমি ঘরের ভিতর আছ। বইগুলি এখানে আছে। তিনি ভালো আছেন। মেয়েটি এখন কোথায় আছে? আমার ভাই এখন বাড়ীতে আছে। তোমার বাবা এখন দিল্লীতে আছেন।

(c) Simple Present [Verb-To have-আরও কিছু অধিকারে আছে]

[কারও কিছু অধিকারে (possession-এ) আছে বোঝালে 'have' verb ব্যবহার হয়। যেমন-আমার একটি কলম আছে-I have a pen.]

আমার একশানা সুন্দর ঘর আছে। তাহার একটি বহুতল বাড়ী (multi-storied) আছে। তোমার একটি সৌহার্দিক (iron-chest) আছে। তাহার একটি দোতলা (two-storied) বাড়ি আছে। আমার একটি ভাই ও একটি পোন আছে। রমেশবাবুর একটি পুরা আছে। হরিবাবুর একটি কন্যা আছে। বৃকুবের একটি লেজ আছে। দময়ন্ত তাহার একটি দোতলা আছে। আমাদের কোন চাকর নাই।

(d) Simple Present [Verbs other than 'To be' or 'To have']

[কর্তা Third person singular number হলে ক্রিয়ার শেষে 's' বা 'es' যোগ হয়।]
ছেলেটি গ্রামে বাস করে। তার ভাই শহরে বাস করে। শ্যামল মাঠে ফুটবল খেলে। আমি তাহাকে চিনি (Know)। তাহার ভাই তাহাকে সাহায্য করে। তোমরা আমাদের পূজা কর (hate)। তিনি তোমাদিগকে আশীর্বাদ করেন (bless)। বালিকাটি সুন্দর (sweetly) গান করে। সাদা শাড়িতে (with white sari) তাকে বেশ দেখায় (look)। তার শীত (cold) বেশ হচ্ছে (feel)। সত্য প্রত্যয় স্থলে যায়। পৃথিবী সর্বত্র।

P.C.D. (7B)

চারণার ঘোরে। আমি প্রত্যয় চা খাই কিন্তু আমার বোন চা খায় না। সে তাজ্জাজ্জি পড়ে। মেয়েটি ভাত জাজে হাঁট। সে প্রায়ই (often) এখানে আসে। তিনি আমাকে পুর ভালবাসেন। সে কঠোর পরিশ্রম করে। তোমার ছোট বোন উপন্যাস পড়ে। পূর্ব পূর্বদিকে ওঠে এবং পশ্চিমদিকে অস্ত যায়। একজন স্থলযাত্রীর মনকে তৈরি করেন (trains the mind) এবং একজন টেনশন মাস্টার ট্রেনকে মনে রাখেন (minds the train).

(c) Present Progressive (continuous) [is/am/are + (verb + ing)]

[বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'তৈরি', 'হচ্ছে', ইত্যাদি থাকলে Present progressive tense হয়। যেমন-বালিকাটি কানিতেছে-The girl is crying.]

যেহেঁতু বিদ্যালয়ে ঘাইতেছে (যাচ্ছে)। তিনি আমাকে ডাকিতেছেন। (ডাকছেন)। আমরা খুঁড়ি উড়াইতেছি (flying kites)। মেয়েটি ধীরে ধীরে হাঁটতেছে (হাঁটছে)। আমি এক কবিতা লিখিতেছি (writing a sonnet)। তোমরা সপদ্য করিতেছ (করছ)। ঠাকুরমা গল্প বলিতেছেন। মেয়েটি গাছে জল দিতেছে (watering)। আমি আমার বন্ধুর কাছে চিঠি লিখিতেছি (লিখছি)। সময় দ্রুত চলিয়া গাইতেছে (fleeing)। ফুলগুলি ফুটিতেছে (blooming)। বাতাস বহিতেছে (blowing)। মলী ছুটিতেছে (flowing)। কৃষকেরা শস্য কাটিতেছে (reaping)। ছেলেরা মাঠে খেলিতেছে (খেলেছে)।

(d) Present perfect [has/have + past participle of verb]

[বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'ইয়াছি', 'ইয়াছে' ইত্যাদি থাকলে Present Perfect tense হয়। যেমন-আমি ভাত খাইয়াছি-I have eaten rice.]

আমি এইমাত্র (just) তোমার চিঠি পাইয়াছি (পেয়েছি)। ট্রেনটি কেশন ছাড়িয়া গিয়াছে। (ছেড়ে গেছে)। তাহার নাম লেখিয়াছে (লেখছে)। সে বাড়ি গিয়াছে (গেছে)। আমি বইটি পড়িয়াছি (পড়েছি)। পুলিশ চোরটিকে গ্রেফতার করিয়াছে (করেছে)। বাবা চাকরি হইতে অবসর লইয়াছেন (retired)। যুদ্ধ বাদিয়াছে (broken out)। পলীকার ফল বাহির হইয়াছে (come out)। পাখিটিতে ফুল ধরিয়াছে (come into flowers)। আমি ঘরখনা ওয়াইয়া রাখিয়াছি (done the room)। প্রবীরবাবু বাড়িখানা ভাড়া দিয়াছেন (let out the house)। সুধামাষ্ট্রী আলি বছরে পদার্পন করিয়াছেন (stepped into)।

(e) Present Perfect Continuous [has been/have been + (verb + ing)]

[কিছুকাল ধরে কোন কাজ চলাছে এরূপ বোঝায়। যেমন-সন্ধ্যা সাড়ে আট থেকে বৃষ্টি হচ্ছে-It has been raining since 7 a. m. সে আজ চারদিন ধরে সর্দিকাশিতে ভুগছে। (= ভুগিতেছে)। [সর্দিকাশি-cold and cough]। শর্মিলা গত ১৯৯০ সাল থেকে এই স্থলে পড়ছে। (= পড়িতেছে)। [পড়িতেছে]। আমরা গত হরিবার থেকে এই কাজটি করছি। (=করিতেছি)। অপর পাঁচ বছর ধরে এই কর্মটি ব্যবহার করছি। (=করিতেছি)। মেয়েটি গত রাত থেকে মাথা ধরায় ভুগছে। (= ভুগিতেছে)। [ভুগিতেছে=suffering] আমি তিন ঘণ্টা যাবৎ বইটি পড়ছি। (=পড়িতেছি)।

(f) Simple Past [Verb-To be]

[নিজের ছিল বোঝাতে 'be' verb এর past tense-এ একসময় was এবং বহুবচনে were হয়। কেবল you কর্তী হলে একবচন বা বহুবচন উভয়ই ফোরেই were হয়। যেমন-ছেলেটি খুব দুদ্ধিমত ছিল-The boy was very intelligent.]

আমি পীড়িত ছিলাম। আমরা উপস্থিত ছিলাম। তুমি বড় দুর্ভল ছিলে। তোমরা অনুপস্থিত ছিলে। তিনি মন্ত্রী ছিলেন। তাহার শান্ত ও মৃদু (gentle) ছিল। সে এই গ্রামের অধিবাসী ছিল। লোকটি গরীব হইলেও সৎ (poor but honest) ছিল। মেয়েটির বয়স মাত্র পাঁচ বছর ছিল। শরৎচন্দ্র একজন বিখ্যাত ঔপন্যাসিক ছিলেন।

(g) Simple Past [Verb-To have]

[কাহারও কিছু অধিকারে ছিল বোঝাতে 'have' verb-এর past tense 'had' হয়। যেমন-আমার একটি আলমারি ছিল-I had an almirah]।
অপর একটি বন্ধু ছিল। বীমুর অনেকগুলি খেলনা ছিল। দীপু একটি সুন্দর বাগান ছিল। তাহার একটি চলতি ব্যবসা (running business) ছিল। মেয়েটির একজোড়া সুন্দর জুতা (a pair of nice shoes) ছিল। তাহার অনেক চাকর ছিল।

(h) Simple Past [Verbs other than 'To be' or 'To have']

[বাংলায় ক্রিয়ার সঙ্গে 'ল' থাকে। ইংরেজিতে verb-এর past tense হয়। যেমন-আমি বাড়ি গিয়াছিলাম-I went home. ক্রিয়ার শেষে 'ত' থাকলে 'would' বা 'used to' ব্যবহার হয়। যেমন-সে এখানে আসিত-He would (used to) come here.]
আমি কাজটি করিয়াছিলাম। আমরা সকলে খেলার মাঠের দিকে ছুটিলাম। তাহার বেশ ভালো খেলিয়াছিল। সে আমাকে বইটি দিয়াছিল। ঘড়িতে দশটা বাজিয়াছিল। গতকাল সে এখানে আসিয়াছিল।

Present Perfect & past Perfect

| | I | have done the work | had done the work |
|------------|------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1st person | we | ..... | ..... |
| 2nd person | you | ..... | ..... |
| 3rd person | Debu | ..... | ..... |
| | Mini | ..... | ..... |
| | He | ..... | ..... |
| | She | ..... | ..... |
| | They | ..... | ..... |

Simple Future

| | I | shall do the work |
|------------|-------|-------------------|
| 1st person | we | ..... |
| 2nd person | you | ..... |
| 3rd person | Shibu | ..... |
| | Shila | ..... |
| | He | ..... |
| | She | ..... |
| | They | ..... |

Now take some other Verbs and complete such tables. (এরকম আরো কিছু Verb নিয়ে অনুরূপ Table অঙ্কন কর)।

CHAPTER—14

VERBAL NOUN, GERUND & PARTICIPLE**Verbal Noun**

All verbal nouns are not gerund, but all gerund are verbal nouns.
(সব verbal noun-ই gerund নয়, কিন্তু সমস্ত gerund-ই verbal noun).

A verbal noun is formed in two ways : (verbal noun দুভাবে গঠিত হয়)

(i) by adding suffixes. (suffix যোগ করে) e.g., *refuse* + *al* = *refusal* ;
accept + *ance* = *acceptance*; *judge* + *ment* = *judgement/Judgment*
etc.

[*Judgement/Judgment; acknowledgement/acknowledgment*—Both forms are correct—C.O.D.]

(ii) by adding *-ing*. e. g., *love* + *ing* = *loving*, *sleep* + *ing* = *sleeping*;
walk + *ing* = *walking* etc.

এইভাবে কোন verb + *ing* এর অংশে the এবং পরে of বসে, তখন Verbal Noun হয়.
Gerund হয় না : যেমন—I like the reading of Geography.

এখানে 'reading' এই verbal nounটি (verb থেকে তৈরি হলেও) single part of speech.

"A verbal noun is noun and nothing more."—Nesfield.

কিন্তু I like reading Geography—এখানে 'reading' double part of speech—"A noun and verb combined."—Nesfield. সেজন্য 'I like reading geography' বাক্যে 'reading' Gerund.

তবে Verbal Noun Verb থেকে তৈরি হলেও এতে কেবল Noun-এর force থাকে।
কিন্তু Gerund-এ Verb এবং Noun-দুটিরই force থাকে।

Gerund

A gerund is that form of the verb which ends in *-ing* and has the force of a Noun and verb
—Wren & Martin.

Gerund হলো verb + *ing* যার মধ্যে একই সঙ্গে Noun এবং Verb-এর force আছে। এজন্য একে Double part of speech বলে।

A gerund is a double part of speech—a noun and verb combined.
—Nesfield.

Use of the Gerund

A gerund being a verb-noun may be used as—
[Verb-noun হিসেবে gerund নির্দিষ্ট উপায়ে ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

(1) Subject of a verb :

Swimming is a good exercise.
Sleeping is necessary to life.

(2) Object of verb :

We enjoyed *swimming* in the river.
He enjoyed *sleeping* in the open air.

(3) Complement of a verb :

What he likes best is *swimming*.
His constant habit was *sleeping*.

(4) Object of a preposition :

May I request the favour of your *granting* me leave of absence ?

He was rebuked for 'swimming' in a dirty pond.

He is tired of sleeping over hours.

She is fond of reading novels.

I think of retiring soon from service.

We are looking forward to seeing you again. —Hornby.

(5) **As a Compound Noun** : Walking stick (= a stick for walking), a frying pan (= a pan for frying).

***Note** : When a gerund is preceded by a noun or a pronoun, it must be in the possessive form as the gerund is finally a noun.

[Gerund এর শেষে কোকটি noun এর দিকে হওয়ার জন্য এর পূর্বে কোন noun বা Pronoun ব্যবহৃত হলে তার possessive form (karim's, my, your etc.) হয়।]

I hope you will excuse my leaving early. (correct)

I hope you will excuse me leaving early. (incorrect)

Remember, therefore, to use the **possessive case of nouns and pronouns before gerunds**. [Gerund-এর পূর্বে noun বা pronoun-এর possessive case ব্যবহারের বিষয়টি মনে রাখ।]

All depends on Urmila's passing the examination.

We rejoiced at her being promoted.

I ask the favour of your granting my prayer.

I insist on your being present there.

We left the place without any one's knowing.

Gerund & Infinitive

As both the **Gerund** and the **Infinitive** have the force of a Noun and Verb, they have the same uses. Thus in many sentences either of them may be used without any special difference in meaning.

—Wren & Martin.

যেহেতু Gerund এবং Infinitive উভয়েরই None এবং Verb-এর force আছে, সেজন্য তাদের একইরকম ব্যবহার হয়।

Note : In modern Grammar the difference between Simple Infinitive and Gerundial Infinitive is not stressed as both of them may be transformed into a Gerund.

Infinitive

To walk is good for health.

To find fault is easy.

He likes to play cards.

Figs are good to eat.

Gerund

Walking is good for health.

Finding fault is easy.

He likes playing cards.

Figs are good for eating.

Participle

A **participle** is that form of the verb which is partly a Verb and partly an Adjective

—Wren & Martin.

Participle হলো Verb এর সেই form যা কিছুটা Verb এবং কিছুটা Adjective. এজন্য একে Double part of speech বলে।

A participle is a double part of speech—a verb and adjective combined.

—Nesfield.

Use of the participle

Let us now see the uses of the participle.

[এখন participle-এর ব্যবহার দেখা যাক।]

Present Participle : (verb + ing)

(1) **A participle can qualify a noun**. (বাংলায় 'মান' বা 'জন্ত' প্রত্যয় যুক্ত বিশেষণ)

A rolling stone gathers on moss. (rolling = ঘূর্ণমান)

Don't try to get into a running train. (running = চলন্ত)

A blooming flower is beautiful to look at. (blooming = ফুটন্ত)

[The participle rolling, running and blooming qualify the noun stone, train and flower.]

(2) **Like an Adjective it can admit of degrees of comparison**.

Primary Education is the most pressing need of our time.

[The participle pressing is compared by preceding most.]

(3) **It may govern a noun or a pronoun** : (বাংলায় 'ইয়া' জন্ত অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়া)

Hearing the noise the boy woke up. (গোলমাল শুনিয়া ছেলটি জাগিয়া উঠিল।)

[The noun noise is governed by the participle hearing.]

Seeing him fall from the tree, I rushed towards him.

(তাহাকে গাছ হইতে পড়িতে দেখিয়া আমি তাহার দিকে ছুটিয়া গেলাম।)

[The pronoun him is governed by the participle seeing.]

(4) **It may be modified by an adverb** :

Loudly knocking at the gate, he asked admission.

[The participle knocking is modified by the adverb loudly.]

All the above examples of participles end in -ing and represents an action as going on. Hence this is called **Present participle**.

উপরের সমস্ত উদাহরণ ভঙ্গিতে Participle এর শেষে ing আছে এবং ঘটমান কোন কাজকে বোঝাচ্ছে। তাই এগুলিকে presents participle বলে।

Past Participle :

Besides the **present participle**, there is another form of participle called **past participle** which represents a completed action.

[Present participle ছাড়া আর একরকম participle আছে যার দ্বারা কোন কাজ সম্পন্ন হয়েছে বোঝায়, তাকে past participle বলে।]

Deceived by his friends, he lost all hope.

Blinded by a dust-storm, they lost their way.

Driven by hunger, he stole a piece of bread.

We saw the trees laden with fruit.

It is already widely circulated.

Moreover, there may be a combined participle called **Perfect Participle**. (এছাড়া present participle ও past participle এর সমন্বয়ে Perfect participle হতে পারে।)

Having rested a while, we continued our journey.

***Note** : It will be noticed that the **Continuous Tenses** in the Active Voice are formed from the **present participle** with tenses of the verb be. (be verb এর সঙ্গে present participle বসিয়ে continuous tense হয়।)

I am doing the work. I was doing the work. I shall be doing the work.

The **Perfect Tenses** in Active Voice are formed from the **past participle** with tenses of the verb have. (have verb -এর সঙ্গে past participle বসিয়ে perfect tense হয়।)

I have loved. I had loved. I shall have loved.

The **Passive Voice** is formed from the **past participle** with tenses of the verb be. (be verb -এর সঙ্গে past participle বসিয়ে passive voice হয়।)

I am loved. I was loved. I shall be loved.

Participles may qualify nouns or pronouns.

(Participle Noun বা Pronoun-কে বিশেষিত করতে পারে।)

(i) **Attributively** (noun বা pronoun-এর পূর্বে বিশেষকরণে) :A *rolling* stone gathers no moss.A *lost* opportunity never returns.His *tattered* coat needs mending.(ii) **Predicatively** (বিশেষ বিশেষকরণে) :The man seems *worried*.He kept me *waiting*.(iii) **absolutely** as a **Nominative Absolute** (সংস্কৃত ব্যাকরণে একে মলা বা 'জবে সত্ত্বা'। বাংলায় 'ইনে' অস্ত্র অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়ার ফেলে এষণ ব্যবহার হয়।)

Nominative Absolute হলো এমন এক ধরনের Participial phrase যা subject বুল sentence-এর subject থেকে আলাদা হয়, যদিও সাধারণ participle -এর ফেলে একই subject হতে পারে। এ ধরনের Participle-কে Perfect Participle-ও বলা হয়।

The sun *having risen*, the fog dispersed.The fog *having dispersed*, the soldiers marched.The weather *being* fine, I went out.**Errors in the use of Participles**

As the participle is a verb-adjective, it must be attached to some noun or pronoun. In other words, it must always have a proper 'subject-object' reference.

[Participle যেহেতু verb-adjective, সেজন্য কোন না কোন noun বা pronoun-এর সঙ্গে subject বা object হিসেবে এর সম্পর্ক থাকে।]

The following sentences are **incorrect** because in each case the participle is left without **proper subject agreement**. (সঠিক subject-agreement না থাকায় নিচের sentence গুলি ভুল।)*Being* a very hot day, I remained in my tent. (incorrect)*It being* a very hot day, I remained in my tent. (correct—Nom. Absolute)*Sitting* on the gate, the teacher rebuked him. (incorrect)*Sitting* on the gate, he was rebuked by the teacher (correct)*Entering* the room, the light was quite dazzling. (incorrect)*Entering* the room, I found the light quite dazzling. (correct)I saw a dead cow *walking* in the field. (incorrect)I saw a dead cow while *I was walking* in the field. (correct)☒ *walking* in the field, I saw a dead cow. (correct)

However, when there is no such confusion, usage permits such construction where the participle is left without a proper 'subject of reference.' (যেখানে বিভ্রান্তির সমস্যা থাকে না, সেখানে subject reference ছাড়াও participle ব্যবহার হয়।)

Frankly *speaking*, he is not fit the job.

[Frankly speaking = If one speaks frankly.]

Roughly *speaking*, the post office is two miles away from here.

Considering his abilities, he should have done better.

Taking everything into consideration, the Magistrate was perfectly justified in issuing the verdict.

Difference of Gerund and Participle & Participle and Nom.**Absolute :****Gerund**He is fond of *playing* cricket.The old man is tired of *walking*.I don't like *laughing* so loud.**Participle***Playing* cricket, he spent much time.*Walking* along the road, the old man is tired.The went away *laughing*.**Participle** (ইয়া-অস্ত্র অসমাপিকা)*Rising* (Having risen) from bed he came out of the room.*Being* tired, he rested for a while.**Nom. Absolute** (ইনে-অস্ত্র অসমাপিকা)They sun *having risen*, we began our march.The match *being over*, they left the place.**EXERCISE**

1. Pick out the gerunds and participles in the following sentences. In the case of the participle, name the noun or pronoun which it qualifies. In the case of the gerund, state whether it is subject, object, complement or used after a preposition.

[Gerund এবং Participle বেছে নাও এবং সেগুলি কিভাবে ব্যবহার হয়েছে লেখ।]

- (i) I cannot go on doing nothing.
- (ii) The miser hates spending money.
- (iii) We heard of his coming back today.
- (iv) He prefers playing football to studying his lessons.
- (v) Did you hear of his having won a prize?
- (vi) They spent the afternoon in playing cards.
- (vii) The boy was ashamed of being beaten in the class.
- (viii) Walking on the grass is forbidden.
- (ix) Hearing the noise she ran to the window.
- (x) We saw a clown standing on his head.
- (xi) The miser spends his time in hoarding money.
- (xii) He has ruined his sight by reading small print.
- (xiii) Praising all alike is praising none.
- (xiv) Jumping over the fence, the thief escaped.
- (xv) Asking questions is easier than answering them.

2. Pick out the participle in each of the following sentences and tell whether it is a present participle or a past participle.

[প্রতিটি বাক্যে participle বার করে তা present participle অথবা past participle লেখ।]

- (i) I saw the storm approaching.
- (ii) Having gained the truth, keep the truth.
- (iii) Being disgusted, he resigned his position.
- (iv) The rain came pouring down in torrents.
- (v) The traveller being weary, sat by the roadside to rest.
- (vi) Generally speaking, we receive what we deserve.
- (vii) Seizing by the arm, his friend led him away.

3. Combine the following pairs of sentences by making use of participle. A few have been done for you.

[Participle ব্যবহার করে sentence গুলি যোগ কর। কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

- (i) We started early. We arrived in time.
= Starting early, we arrived in time.

- (ii) The gatekeeper opened the gate. We entered.
= The gatekeeper having opened the gate, we entered.
- (iii) We met a man. He was carrying a basket.
- (iv) The hunter took up a gun. He went out to shoot the tiger.
- (v) The girl was charmed to see the printed sarf. She purchased it.
- (vi) I had resolved on a certain course. I acted with vigour.
- (vii) The steamer was delayed by a storm.
So the steamer came into the port a day late.
- (viii) The letter was badly written. I had troubles in making out its contents.

4. Rewrite the following sentences by changing the participles into a Finite Verb. A few have been done for you.

[Participle কে Finite verb-এ পরিবর্তন করে sentence তুলি লেখ।
কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

- (i) Hearing the noise I turned round.
= As I heard the noise, I turned round.
- (ii) Leaving the forest, we advanced into the open path.
= we left the forest and we advanced into the open path.
- (iii) Walking up to the front door, I rang the bell.
- (iv) Mounting his horse, the robber rode away.
- (v) No! ...sawing the way, he asked a policeman.
- (vi) Walking on the roof, he slipped and fell to the ground.
- (vii) I once saw a girl walking on a rope.
- (viii) Having on guide with us, we lost our way.
- (ix) Winter coming on, the grasshopper had no food.
- (x) Having failed in the first attempt, he made no further attempts.

5. (a) Use present participles and write in your own English. Some have been done for you.

[Present participle ব্যবহার করে নিজের ইংরেজিতে লেখ। কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

হাসিমাখা মুখ-A Smiling face.
উদয়মান সূর্য-The rising sun.
মৃত্যুকালীন ঘোষণা-The dying declaration.

Do yourself:

খেলিবার ভাস-একটি নৃত্যশীলা বালিকা-একটি নিমজ্জমান জাহাজ-

[লিখ্য কর, এখানে smiling, rising ইত্যাদি participle যেমন পরবর্তী noun তুলিকে Qualify করছে, তেমনি কোন না কোন অসমাপ্ত কাজকে বোঝাচ্ছে। এগুলি তাই একই সঙ্গে verb এবং Adjective.]

কিছু বাঁচিবার মতো বেতন-Living wages.

বেড়াইবার ছড়ি-A walking stick.

[লিখ্য কর, এখানে living, walking এগুলি participle নয়, gerund, কারণ এরা part of a Compound Noun.]

(b) Write in your own English using present participles. Some have been done for you.

[Past Participle ব্যবহার করে নিজের ইংরেজিতে লেখ। কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

চলন্ত ট্রেন থেকে লাফ দিও না-Do not jump from a running train.

জেলের ভিত্তিখানা উল্টে পেল-The fishing boat capsized.

আমি দেখলাম সে যন্ত্রণায় চীৎকার করছে-I found him crying with pain.

ফুটন্ত ফুলের মাঝে দেখার মতের হাসি-Just have a look at the sweet smile of the Divine mother in the blooming flowers.

Do yourself:

অস্বস্তায়মান সূর্যের দিকে তাকাও-

মুগ্ধ সহ্যের আগাইও না-

ছেলেটা ছুটিতে ছুটিতে আসিল-

তাহারা সেখানে দাঁড়াইয়া রহিল-

শিশির একটি উড়ন্ত পাখীকে তুলি করিয়া মারিল-

কুহুরী লাফাইতে লাফাইতে শিকারীর পাশে আসিল-

(c) Write in your own English using Present participles or Perfect participles. Some have been done for you.

[Present Participle বা Perfect Participle ব্যবহার করে নিজের ইংরেজিতে লেখ। কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

পিছন ফিরিয়া সে আমাকে ডাকিল-Turning back he called me.

কাজটি শেষ করিয়া আমরা খেলিতে গেলাম-Having done the work, we went to play.

সে টেলিগ্রামটি পাঠাইতে বাধা দিল-He prevented the telegram being sent.

Do yourself:

জ্বলসোকট চারটি হেলে রাখিয়া মারা গেলেন-

পরিশ্রান্ত হইয়া তাহারা কিছু সময় বিশ্রাম করিল-

মেয়েটি কাদিতে কাদিতে চলিয়া গেল-

শব্দ বহিয়া লোকটি জাগিয়া উঠিল-

বিশেষ হইতে ফিরিয়া তিনি চাকরি ছাড়িয়া দিলেন-

[লিখ্য কর, ফিরিয়া, করিয়া ইত্যাদি ইয়া-প্রত্যয়ান্ত অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়াকে ইংরেজিতে Present Participle বা Perfect Participle (having done) হিসাবে প্রকাশ করা হয়। আর ইতে-যুক্ত অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়াকে participle রূপে (পঠাইতে = being sent) ব্যবহার করা যায়।]

(d) Use past participles and write in your own English. Some have been done for you.

[Past Participle ব্যবহার করে নিজের ইংরেজিতে লেখ। কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

কোটের গত চক্ষু-Sunken eyes.

পরিত্যক্ত পল্লী-A deserted village.

নগ্নপদ বালক-A bare-footed boy.

স্পষ্টবাদী ব্যক্তি-An out-spoken man.

ভগ্ন মন্দির-A ruined temple.

Do yourself:

জলমগ্ন ব্যক্তি-

তরু ফুল-

নিয়ন্তৃত অতিথি-

জমাট দুধ-

মোড়োআলোকিত রজনী-

হতশা ব্যক্তি-

(e) Write in your own English using past participle. One has been done for you.

[Past Participle ব্যবহার করে নিজের ইংরেজিতে লেখ। কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

অবশেষে আমাদের ভগ্ন হৃদয়ে ফিরিতে হইল-At last we had to return with a broken heart. আমি দুজন ইঞ্জিনিয়ারকে দিয়া বাড়ীটি তৈরি করাইয়াছিলাম-I had the building constructed by two engineers.

Do yourself:

তিনি ধ্যানে মগ্ন-

তিনি একজন অবসরপ্রাপ্ত সরকারী কর্মচারী-

ঘরপোড়া গোরু সিন্দুরে মেঘ দেখলে ডরায়-

তাহাদের বন্ধুত্ব ছিন্ন হয়েছে (severed)-

[লিখ্য কর, Past Participle তুলি attributively, predicatively এবং passive voice-এ ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে।]

(f) Use the gerunds and write in your own English. Some have been done for you.

[Gerund ব্যবহার করে নিজের ইংরেজিতে লেখ। কয়েকটি করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

ইহা কিনিবার যোগ্য-It is worth-buying.

মেয়েটি কাদিয়া উঠিল-The girl burst out crying.

সকলেই প্রশংসা ভালবাসে-Everybody is fond of being praised.

[এখানে 'being praised' of preposition-এর object হয়েছে বলে Gerund হয়েছে।]

Do yourself :

- তাদের আসার কথা শুনেছি—
 তাদের এখন আর সাহায্য করার দরকার কি—
 আমার তোমাকে আঁতড়া বলতে লজ্জা বোধ হয়—
 কে এরূপ ব্যবহারে বিরক্ত (annoyed) না হয়—
 সেরামতের অভাবে ব্যক্তি: কিসী দেখাচ্ছে (looks shabby)—
 [লজ্জা কর, Gerund একটি Double Part of Speech এবং এটি একই সঙ্গে Noun এবং verb হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

(g) Use the Verbal Nouns and write in your own English. Some have been done for you.

মনোযোগ দিয়ে শুনুন—Attention please.
 ক্রমে এরূপ বড় উপস্থিতির কারণ কি?—What is the cause of such poor attendance?
 আমি এখন উপন্যাস পড়ার ব্যস্ত আছি—I am now engaged in the reading of a novel.

Do yourself :

- বিজ্ঞান পড়ায় তোমাদের উৎসাহ দেওয়া উচিত—
 যিনি আন্দোলন বা দেখ তা তোমার নিজের চেহেরে প্রতিফলন—
 অজ্ঞতাই পাতালনিমিত্তর মূল—
 হিন্দো ছাত্র মানুষের মন জয় করা যায় না—
 দুই প্রতিদ্বন্দ্বী ছাত্র উভয়ে উদ্ভূত করতে পার—

(h) Write the following passage in your own English :

তখন শত্রু বেল। সুখে শেষ বসিষ্ঠকি শনিম আসল লাল করিয়াছে। আমি নিতাইয়াচিলাম একটি অর্ধদূত পাঠের পাশেই, এমন সময় শত্রু আসিয়া পাশে নিতাইল। তারপর হাত তোল করিয়া বলিতে আরম্ভ করিল—“বড় নিতাই কষ্ট পাইয়েই আমনর কাছে আসিয়াছি।”

CHAPTER-15

MORE ABOUT ADVERBS AND ADVERBIALS

Read the following sentences and note the functions of Adverbs.
 (নিচের বাক্যগুলি পড় এবং Adverb-এর ব্যবহার লক্ষ্য কর।)

1. Dipak runs quickly. [quickly modifies runs, a verb]
2. Lila is a very beautiful girl. [very modifies beautiful, a adjective.]
3. She sings extremely well. [extremely modifies well, an Adverb.]
4. The bird flew exactly over our head. [exactly modifies over, a preposition]
5. I dislike him simply because he is a liar. [simply modifies because, a conjunction]
6. Unfortunately, he could not continue his studies. [unfortunately modifies a whole sentence]

দেখা গেল বাক্যে Adverb একটি Verb, Adjective, অন্য কোন Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, এমনকি একটি whole sentence-কেও modify করতে পারে।

An Adverb is a word used to qualify any Part of Speech except a noun or pronoun.

—J. C. Nesfield.

An Adverb is a word which modifies the meaning of a Verb, an Adjective or another Adverb.

—Wren & Martin.

উপরের উদাহরণগুলি থেকে স্পষ্টভাবে বোঝা যাবে Nesfield অথবা Wren & Martin কারো সংজ্ঞাতেই Adverb-এর পরিপূর্ণ স্বরূপ ধরা পড়েনি, সুতরাং Adverb-এর প্রকৃত সংজ্ঞা হবে :

An Adverb is a word used to modify any Part of Speech (except a noun or pronoun) or a whole sentence.

—P. C. Das

Adverb-হলো এমন word যা বাক্যে Noun বা Pronoun ছাড়া যে কোন Part of Speech-কে অথবা একটি গোটা বাক্যকে modify বা বিশেষিত করতে পারে।

মনে রাখা দরকার, Interjection (Hurrah! Hallo! ইত্যাদি) বাক্য থেকে আলাদা হয়ে বসে বসে একে এখন আর Part of Speech ধরা হয় না।

Note : As a general rule an Adjective qualifies a noun or a pronoun, but some Grammarians think that in some exceptional cases an Adverb may also modify a noun or a pronoun.

Even Rabindranath praised Saratchandra. (Even modifies Rabindranath—a noun)

Only he was included in the list. (Only modifies he—a pronoun.)

However, in our opinion, **these Adverbs modify a whole sentence** as the force of the Adverb 'only' is laid upon not only 'Rabindranath' the Noun as the subject but also 'praised' the Verb of the sentence and not only 'he' the Pronoun as the subject, but also 'included', the Verb of the sentence.

Note for Advanced Learners :

The **Pocket Oxford Dictionary** gives an example of **only** as an **Adverb** in the sentence "Only you or you only can guess." Some Grammarians think that the word **only** seems to qualify **you** as an **Adjective** as the above-noted sentence means "You alone and none else, can guess". In a well-known book of English Grammar we find the sentence "Only he promised to read the first chapter of the book," where **only** is parsed as an **Adjective** qualifying the pronoun 'he'.

In such a context the Manager of the Oxford University press opines "In the sentence 'Only you are to blame' one can paraphrase 'only' as 'solely' and in such a context 'solely' is clearly an adverb. Yet, equally obviously, it refers to and qualifies or modifies 'you'. It becomes clear therefore that to say that an adverb cannot qualify a pronoun (?) is to take too narrow a view. No doubt the current view that an adverb cannot do so has been taken over from Greek and Latin." A further discussion of the way in which adverbs may qualify pronouns may be found in *Advance English Syntax* by Onions and the *Syntax Volume* of Sweet's *New English Grammar*.

However, we may come to a logical conclusion that the adverbs *even*, *only* etc. modify a whole sentence as their force is laid upon not only the non or pronoun, but also the verbs covering the whole sentence.

KINDS OF ADVERBS

Adverbs are divided into three main categories.
(Adverb প্রধানতঃ তিনটি শ্রেণীতে বিভক্ত।)

Adverb

Simple Adverb Relative Adverb Interrogative Adverb

A. Simple Adverbs are of Eight kinds. (Simple Adverb আট প্রকার)

1. Adverb of Time. 2. Adverb of Place. 3. Adverb of Manner.
4. Adverb of Degree. 5. Adverb of Reason or Purpose. 6. Adverb of Affirmation and Negation. 7. Intensifiers. 8. Downtoners.

1. Time { When? The train arrived late.
 How long? He came here yesterday.
 How often? He is always busy.
 He seldom plays cricket.
 Dhiraj frequently goes to Delhi.
 I have told you twice.

[কখন, কতক্ষণ বা কতবার কোন কাজ সম্পন্ন হয় তা বোঝাতে Adverb of Time ব্যবহার করা হয়। এধরনের Adverb-গুলি হলো-Now, then, before, since, ago, alrady, always, seldom, often, once, twice, thrice, again, soon, late, afterwards, yesterday, today, tomorrow, daily, early, formerly, frequently, presently, immediately, instantly ইত্যাদি।]

2. Place { Where? Stand here.
 Go there.
 Come in.
 Is Mr. Das within?
 The horse galloped away.
 Wherefrom? This news has been collected locally.

[কাজটি কোথায় হচ্ছে বা কোথায় থেকে হচ্ছে বোঝাতে Adverb-গুলি হলো -Here, there, hither, thither, hence, thence, far, near, nearby, away, abroad, ahead, overhead, inland, locally, universally ইত্যাদি। এছাড়া in, out, up, above, below, inside, outside, within, without প্রভৃতি Preposition গুলিও Adverb হয়ে বসতে পারে।]

3. Manner { How? Bhola reads clearly.
 The child slept soundly.
 In What manner? The soldiers fought bravely.
 The boy has been badly treated.

[কিভাবে কোন কাজ সম্পন্ন হয় তা বোঝাতে Adverb of Manner ব্যবহার হয়। এধরনের Adverb গুলি হলো-Clearly, closely, correctly, bravely, badly, sadly, softly.

steadily, slowly, soundly, swiftly, simply, suddenly, carefully, carelessly, easily, quickly, possibly, probably, luckily, fortunately, unfortunately, naturally, rightly, urgently, wrongly, widely, thus, well ইত্যাদি।

4. Degree { How much?

He is fully prepared.
He is good enough for his duties.
She is quite happy.
The fruit is almost ripe.
You are partly right.
I am rather busy.

To what Extent?

[কোন কাজ কতটা বা কি পরিমাণ সম্পন্ন হয় তা বোঝাতে Adverb of Degree ব্যবহার হয়। এ ধরনের Adverb গুলি হলো-Almost, quite, very, much, fully, partly, wholly, completely, strongly, totally, entirely, deeply, greatly, poorly, half, enough, somewhat, altogether, too, little, a little, rather ইত্যাদি।]

Reason { Reason.

He is hence unable to deny it.

5. Or Purpose { Purpose

He is ill so he cannot go to school.
He works hard so that he can succeed.

[কোন কাজের কারণ বা উদ্দেশ্য বোঝাতে Adverb of Reason or Purpose হয়। এধরনের Adverb-গুলি হলো-Hence, therefore, so, so that ইত্যাদি।]

Affirmation and Negation { Affirmation. Yes I know him.
Negation. I do not know him.
Negation. I have never heard it.

[হ্যাঁ-বাচক বা না-বাচক শব্দ Adverb রূপে ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে। এ ধরনের Adverb-গুলি হলো yes, no, never ইত্যাদি।]

7. Intensifier { He would certainly go there.
Surely you are mistaken.
I really don't know.

[যে Adverb গুলি Verb-এর কাজের উপর বিশেষভাবে জোর দেয়, সেগুলিকে Intensifier বলে। যেমন-actually, certainly, surely, definitely, really, absolutely, thoroughly, utterly, very much, indeed ইত্যাদি।]

8. Downtoner { This is somewhat wrong.
I can hardly see it.
This soup is rather hot.

[যে Adverb গুলি Verb, Adjective বা অন্য কোন Adverb-এর গুরুত্ব কমিয়ে দেয়, সেগুলিকে downtoner বলে। যেমন-hardly, barely, scarcely, nearly ইত্যাদি।]

B. Relative Adverb & Conjunctive Adverb :

The Relative Adverb joins two sentences together and shows its relation to its antecedent expressed or understood. [Relative Adverb দুটি বাক্যকে যুক্ত করে এবং তার উক্ত বা অনুক্ত Antecedent বা (পূর্ববর্তী word-এর সঙ্গে সম্পর্ক বুঝিয়ে দেয়।]

Relative Adverb-এর antecedent না থাকলে তাকে Conjunctive Adverb বলে।

A Relative Adverb makes a Relative clause. But a Conjunctive Adverb makes an Adverbial clause.

[একটি Relative Adverb-এর দ্বারা Relative clause হয়। কিন্তু একটি Conjunctive Adverb দ্বারা একটি Adverbial clause হয়।]

Antecedent expressed { Show me the house where he was born.
(Antecedent 'house') [Relative Clause]
Do you know the time when the Rajdhani Mail arrives? (Antecedent 'time') [Relative clause].
This is the reason why he left the meeting.
(Antecedent 'reason') [Relative clause]

| | | |
|--------------------|---|--------------------|
| Antecedent omitted | You may go <i>where</i> you like. | [Adverbial clause] |
| | (Antecedent the 'place' omitted) | |
| | We shall go <i>when</i> he comes. | [Adverbial clause] |
| | (Antecedent the 'time' omitted) | |
| | I do not know <i>why</i> he left the meeting. | [Adverbial clause] |

(Antecedent the 'reason' omitted) [Adverbial clause]
 We do not know *how* it is done. (Antecedent the 'process' omitted) [Adverbial clause]

A Relative Adverb, like a Relative Pronoun relates or refers back to its antecedent.

—Wren & Martin.

Relative Adverb-ওকি Relative Pronoun-এর মতো তার পূর্বকর্তা।

Antecedent-এর সঙ্গে সম্পর্কিত হয়।

এ ধরনের Relative Adverb ওকি হলো where, when, why এবং how; এগুলি থাকলে মাঝে বলে, কখনোই খোঁড়ায় বসে না।

—P. C. Das.

C. Interrogative Adverb :

When Adverbs are used in asking questions, they are called Interrogative Adverbs. (প্রশ্ন জিজ্ঞাসা করতে যে সমস্ত Adverb ব্যবহার হয়, সেগুলিকে Interrogative Adverb বলে।)

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Interrogative Adverb of place | : Where is Rahman? |
| " of time | : When did he come? |
| " of reason | : Why are you late? |
| " of manner | : How did he do this? |
| " of number | : How many boys are there? |
| " of quantity | : How much milk would you take? |
| " of frequency | : How often did the dog bark? |
| " of degree | : How far was the report true? |

[যদি থাকে, who, whose, whom, which, এবং what এগুলি Interrogative Pronoun আর where, when, why, how, how many, how much, how often, how far, how long, how high ইত্যাদি Interrogative Adverb.]

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

(i) Most of the Adverbs are formed by adding 'ly' to an Adjective. Adjective -এর সঙ্গে ly যোগ করে বেশির ভাগ Adverb গঠিত হয়।

| Adjectives | +ly | Adverbs |
|------------|-----|-----------|
| bad | ly | badly |
| sad | ly | sadly |
| brave | ly | bravely |
| hard | ly | hardly |
| honest | ly | honestly |
| kind | ly | kindly |
| cruel | ly | cruelly |
| clever | ly | cleverly |
| certain | ly | certainly |
| clear | ly | clearly |
| correct | ly | correctly |
| quick | ly | quickly |
| quiet | ly | quietly |
| loud | ly | loudly |

| Adjectives | +ly | Adverbs |
|------------|-----|--------------|
| local | ly | locally |
| partial | ly | partially |
| urgent | ly | urgently |
| great | ly | greatly |
| soft | ly | softly |
| deep | ly | deeply |
| right | ly | rightly |
| poor | ly | poorly |
| proud | ly | proudly |
| strong | ly | strongly |
| sound | ly | soundly |
| slow | ly | slowly |
| sudden | ly | suddenly |
| sure | ly | surely |
| real | ly | really |
| instant | ly | instantly |
| private | ly | privately |
| present | ly | presently |
| former | ly | formerly |
| frequent | ly | frequently |
| fortunate | ly | fortunately |
| wrong | ly | wrongly |
| wide | ly | widely |
| total | ly | totally |
| definite | ly | definitely |
| actual | ly | actually |
| absolute | ly | absolutely |
| thorough | ly | thoroughly |
| utter | ly | utterly |
| careful | ly | carefully |
| cheerful | ly | cheerfully |
| hopeful | ly | hopefully |
| beautiful | ly | beautifully |
| meaningful | ly | meaningfully |
| careless | ly | carelessly |
| hopeless | ly | hopelessly |

(ii) Adjectives ending in 'le' : 'e' is dropped and 'ly' is added (Adjectives -এর শেষে 'le' থাকলে 'e' বাদ যায় এবং 'ly' যোগ হয়।)

| Adjectives | +ly | Adverbs |
|------------|-----|----------|
| single | ly | singly |
| double | ly | doubly |
| suitable | ly | suitably |
| horrible | ly | horribly |
| terrible | ly | terribly |
| possible | ly | possibly |
| probable | ly | probably |
| whole | ly | wholly |

(iii) A few Adjective ending in 'll': only 'ly' is added. (Adjective-এর শেষে 'll' থাকলে শুধু 'ly' যোগ হয়।)

| | | |
|------|-----|---------|
| full | +ly | = fully |
| dull | +ly | = dully |

(iv) A few Adjectives ending in 'e': 'e' is dropped and 'ly' is added. (Adjective-এর শেষে 'e' থাকলে 'e' বাদ যায় এবং 'ly' যোগ হয়।)

| Adjectives | +ly | Adverbs |
|------------|-----|---------|
| true | ly | truly |
| due | ly | duly |
| undue | ly | unduly |

(v) Adjectives ending in 'y' change into 'i' and then 'ly' is added. (Adjective-এর শেষে 'y' থাকলে 'i' তে পরিবর্তিত হয় এবং তারপর 'ly' যোগ হয়।)

| Adjectives | +ly | Adverbs |
|--------------|-----|----------------|
| easy | ly | easily |
| lazy | ly | lazily |
| heavy | ly | heavily |
| happy | ly | happily |
| noisy | ly | noisily |
| lucky | ly | luckily |
| ready | ly | readily |
| satisfactory | ly | satisfactorily |

(vi) Adjectives ending in 'ic': 'ally' is added. (Adjective-এর শেষে 'ic' থাকলে 'ally' যোগ হয়।)

| Adjectives | +ally | Adverbs |
|----------------|-------|---------------|
| automatic | ally | automatically |
| economic | ally | economically |
| tragic | ally | tragically |
| N. B. : public | ly | publicly |

(vii) Some Adjectives take new words as Adverbs.

কিছু Adjective থেকে নতুন Adverb হয়। যেমন, ~Good—Well (He played well.)
Bad—Worse (the situation is getting worse.)

(viii) There is a class of Adverbs which are derived from the pronouns—He, who, that. (Pronoun *he, who, that* থেকে কতকগুলি Adverb তৈরি হয়।)

| Pronoun | Adverbs | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|-------------|-------|--------|
| | place | Motion to | Motion from | Time | Manner |
| He | here | hither | hence | ..... | ..... |
| That | there | thither | thence | then | thus |
| Who | where | whither | whence | when | how |

(ix) Many of the above Adverbs are compound with Preposition. (উপরের Adverb-গুলি আবার Preposition-এর সংগে যুক্ত হয়ে কিছু নতুন Adverb তৈরি করে।)

Hereby, herefrom, hereip, hereupon, herewith, hereafter, hitherto, henceforth, henceforward.

Thereby, therefrom, therein, thereof, thereon, therewith, thereafter, thenceforth, thenceforward.

wherein, whereon, whereof, wherefrom.
(x) Some Adverbs are made up of a qualifying Adjective and a Noun. (একটি qualifying Adjective এবং একটি Noun যোগ করে কতকগুলি Adverb হয়।)
Sometimes, meantime, meanwhile, yesterday, midday, midnight, midway.

(xi) Some Adverbs are a combination of a Preposition and a Noun. (একটি Preposition এবং একটি Noun যুক্ত হয়ে কতকগুলি Adverb হয়।)

away, along, ahead, abroad, aloud, asleep, [away = on way]
[Preposition on weakened to a —Wren & Martin.]
behind, below, besides, to-day, to-morrow, overhead, overboard.

(xii) Two Adverbs sometimes go together, joined by the Conjunction and. (কখনো কখনো দুটি Adverb and দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়ে একসাথে থাকে।)

again and again (= I warned him again and again.)
far and near (= His fame has spread far and near.)
far and wide (= As a statesman he saw far and wide.)
far and away (= This is far and away the best course.)
now and then (= Now and then he writes to me.)
once and again (= you must not read such trash once and again.)

through and through (= He has read Milton through and through.)
thus and thus (= Thus and thus only we shall succeed.)

Adjectives and Adverbs in the same Form :

Some words are used sometimes as Adjectives and sometimes as Adverbs. The manner in which they are used identifies them. (কিছু কিছু শব্দ Adjective এবং Adverb দুভাবেই ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে।)

| Words | Adjective | Adverb |
|--------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| early | He is an early riser. | He started early. |
| fast | He is a fast runner. | He runs fast. |
| hard | He is a hard work. | He works hard all the day. |
| loud | He speaks in a loud voice. | Don't talk so loud. |
| enough | I have enough food. | She sings well enough. |
| best | He is the best boy in the class. | Try your best. |
| well | I am well now. | He has done well. |

Adverbs with two forms :

| | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|
| close | clear | deep | dear | easy | fine | direct |
| closely | clearly | deeply | dearly | easily | finely | directly |
| hard | high | late | loud | near | pretty | tight |
| hardly | highly | late | loudly | nearly | prettily | tightly |

Usage : I want to deal with him direct. He came to me directly for help.
I closed the door tight. She closed her lips tightly.
Biren speaks very loud. He sings very loudly.

Two forms with different meaning :

He works hard. (কঠিন পরিশ্রম করে)। I have hardly any money. (খারাপ না)

The prices of things are running high. (চড়া)।

I spoke highly of him. (উচ্চ ধারণা)।

He arrived *late*. (সেরি ক'রে) : I have not seen him *lately*. (সম্প্রতি)
Stand *near*. (নিজেকে) Lila and Bela are *nearly* related. (খনিষ্টভাবে)
I'm *pretty* sure of the fact. (প্রায়) : She is *prettily* dressed. (সুন্দরভাবে)

POSITION OF ADVERBS

(i) Adverbs of Manner, Place and Time are placed after the intransitive verb or after the object of a transitive verb.

(Adverb of Manner, Adverb of Place এবং Adverb of Time শাটই Verb-এর পরে বসে; আর যদি object থাকে, তবে object-এর পরে বসে।)

It is raining *heavily*. (Adverb of Manner)

He will come *here*. (Adverb of place)

I met him *yesterday*. (Adverb of time)

But Adverbs of frequency which answers the question 'How often?' are normally put before the verb or the main verb when there is any helping verb.

(কিছু Adverbs of frequency সাধারণত Verb-এর পূর্বে বসে। আর Helping verb এবং main verb থাকলে main verb-এর পূর্বে বসে।)

এই Adverb তিন হলো—always, often, never, seldom, rarely, usually, generally, sometimes, frequently ইত্যাদি।

He *always* speaks the truth.

She has *never* seen a tiger.

I have *often* told him to read clearly.

We *usually* have breakfast at eight.

But such adverbs are always placed after the 'be' verb (i.e. is/am/are/was/were).

(কিন্তু এই Adverb তিন সর্বদাই 'be' verb-এর পরে বসে।)

He is *always* busy. He is *usually* busy.

She is *never* late for school. She is *often* late for her school.

Note An Adverb is usually placed between a Helping verb and a Main Verb.

(সাধারণত Helping Verb এবং Main Verb-এর মাঝে Adverb বসে।)

I shall *certainly* miss her.

He is *still* waiting for me.

(ii) When an Adverb modifies an Adjective or another Adverb, the Adverb usually comes before it. (Adverb কোন Adjective বা অন্য কোন Adverb-কে modify করলে ঐ Adjective বা Adverb-এর পূর্বে বসে।)

The book is *very* interesting.

The dog is *quite* dead.

Dhiren is a *rather* lazy boy.

Do not walk so *fast*.

I worked *only* two sums.

But the Adverb *enough* is always placed after the word it modifies.

(কিন্তু *enough* যাকে modify করে তার পরে বসে।)

You would be kind *enough* to grant me leave.

(iii) An Adverb may be placed at the beginning of a sentence for modifying a whole sentence, for emphasising and for asking questions. (সম্পূর্ণ বাক্যকে বিশেষিত করার জন্য, জোরের সঙ্গে কিছু বলার জন্য অথবা প্রশ্ন জিজ্ঞাসার জন্য Adverb বাক্যের প্রথমে বসতে পারে।)

Fortunately, he was saved.

Down went the Titanic.

Where has he gone?

(iv) When there are two or more Adverbs after a verb, the normal order is Adverb of Manner, Place and time—[MPT.]

[যখন দুটি বা ততোধিক Adverb, একটি Verb-এর পরে বসে, তখন সেগুলি সাজাবার সাধারণ নিয়ম হলো আগে Manner, পরে Place এবং সবশেষে Time—MPT.]

Rama sang *sweetly* *in the town hall* *last evening*

He worked *hard* *yesterday*

I shall go *there* *early*

Now study the Adverbials.

ADVERBIALS

Adverbials is a broad term. It includes :

1. Single word Adverb—He came here *yesterday*.
2. Adverb Phrases—We reached there *after the sunset*.
Hawkings sat up *all night long*.
3. Adverb Clause—Hawkings met his friends *when he was released*.

Note: A Phrase is a group of words without a finite verb. A clause is a part of a larger sentence having a finite verb. (Phrase হল এমন group of words যাতে Finite Verb থাকে না, কিন্তু Clause—এ Finite verb থাকে।)

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Some Adverbs have three forms—Positive, Comparative & Superlative.

[Adjective-এর মতো কিছু Adverb-এরও Positive, Comparative এবং Superlative এই তিনটি form-এ তুলনা হয়।]

(a) কিছু Adverb-এর পর -er যোগে Comparative এবং -est যোগে Superlative হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|-------------|--------------|
| Fast | faster | fastest |
| Late | later | latest, last |
| Soon | sooner | soonest |
| Quick | quicker | quickest |

(b) যে সব Adverb-এর শেষে -ly থাকে, তার পূর্বে more বসিয়ে Comparative এবং most বসিয়ে Superlative করা হয়।

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|--------------|--------------|
| Clearly | more clearly | most clearly |
| Loudly | more loudly | most loudly |
| Quickly | more quickly | most quickly |
| Rapidly | more rapidly | most rapidly |
| Easily | more easily | most easily |
| Swiftly | more swiftly | most swiftly |
| Wisely | more wisely | most wisely |

| | | |
|--|--------------------|---------------------|
| Beautifully | more beautifully | most beautifully |
| Skillfully | more skillfully | most skillfully |
| Exception: Early | earlier | earliest |
| (c) কতকগুলি Adverb-এর Comparison কোন বীজ্যধরা নিয়মে হয় না। | | |
| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
| Well (কালোকারে) | better | best |
| Badly (খারাপভাবে) | worse | worst |
| Far (দূরে, আরো) | farther, further. | farthest, furthest. |
| Much (অধিক) | more | most |
| Little (অল্প) | less | least. |

N.B. Far, Much, Little - এগুলি Adjective এবং Adverb দুভাবেই প্রয়োগ হয়।

APPLIED SECTION

An Adverb is a word that generally answers the questions with **how, when, where etc.**

(Adverb সাধারণতঃ কিভাবে, কখন, কোথায় ইত্যাদি প্রশ্নের উত্তর দেয়।)

1. Adverbs are generally formed by adding -ly with Adjectives.

(সাধারণতঃ Adjective-এর সাথে -ly যোগ করে Adverb গঠিত হয়।)

Complete the chart:

| Adjective | Adverb (= How?) |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| He is a slow walker. | He walks slowly. |
| He is a careless writer. | He writes carelessly. |
| The sum is easy. | The sum can be done easily. |
| Many students are slow readers. | ..... |
| Sudha is a beautiful dancer. | ..... |
| Upen is a careful driver. | ..... |
| Are you a quick worker? | Do you? |
| The story has a happy ending. | The story ends |

2. We use **Prepositional phrases as Adverbials** for answering questions with 'where' and 'when'. (আমরা 'কোথায়' এবং 'কখন' প্রশ্নের উত্তর দিতে গুরুত্বপূর্ণ Prepositional Phrase-কে Adverbial হিসাবে ব্যবহার করি।)

Answering questions with 'where'.

Come to the blackboard.

Don't sit on the table.

Use phrases of place (where?) to complete the sentences:

- (a) Keep the pencil
 (b) Don't write your name
 (c) Pakistan is India

Answering questions with 'when'.

When do they have their breakfast?

They have breakfast at 8 a.m.

What do you do on Sunday?

I play and take rest on Sunday.

When do they play football?

They play football in the afternoon.

Use phrases of time (when) to complete the sentences.

Shrila gets up
 Our school will reopen
 We have our examination
 3. Study the **Mid-Position of Adverbs of frequency**.

Table-1

| Subject | Adverb | F. Verb etc. |
|-----------|---------|-------------------|
| We | usually | get up early. |
| He | often | goes to bed late. |
| My mother | never | takes tea. |

Table-2

| Subject | Helping Verb | Adverb | Verb etc. |
|---------|--------------|---------|-------------------------|
| We | have | usually | been at home on Sunday. |
| He | doesn't | often | go to bed early. |
| You | must | never | do that again. |

Insert the Adverbs given within brackets and rewrite the sentences.

- (a) Deben gets up early. (never)
 (b) We meet our friends at the library. (often)
 (c) I read novels before going to bed. (sometimes)
 (d) You must look both ways before crossing a busy road. (always)
 (e) What time do you get up in the morning? (usually)

4. Study the **End-position Adverbs of frequency**.

The buses run every ten minutes.

We have History class every other day.

Do you have games once a week?

Sometimes they may take the **Front-position** for emphasis. (কখনো কখনো তারা সামনে ও কখনো পিছনে।)

Again and again I have warned you to be serious.

5. When the Adverbs make an Adjective or Adverb stronger or weaker, they are placed before the Adjective or Adverb.

Kishore sings very well.

His school is too far to walk.

It's quite cold in Darjeeling in winter.

Exception: (বাক্যে) :

Enough (before a noun). Mr. Sen has enough books to read.

(after an adjective). He is not strong enough.

(after an Adverb). He cannot work hard enough.

Ever (used mainly in question). Have you ever been in Delhi?

6. When there are two adverbials of place and time, the adverbial of time is usually placed at the end.

| Subject & Verb | Adverbial of place | Adverbial of time |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| They are going | to London | next week. |
| Can you reach | puri | in the evening? |
| He was swimming | in the Rabindra Sarobar | on Sunday morning. |

7. When there are two adverbials of time or place, the shorter period of time or the smaller unit of place comes first.

P.C.D. (8A)

| Subject & Verb | Shorter Adverbial of time/place | Broader Adverbial of time /place |
|----------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| He arrived | at 9 O'clock | yesterday. |
| Mr. Roy lives | in a small village. | in Birbhum. |

But for emphasis (জোর দেওয়ার জন্য) broader point of time or place may come first.

Yesterday he arrived at 9 O'clock.

In Birbhum Mr. Roy lives in a small village.

8. Complete the sentences with **meaningful Adverbials**.

| Subject & Verb | Place | Frequency | Time |
|-----------------|-------|-----------|---------|
| Can you come | here | once | a week? |
| She has been | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| He visits | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| Mr. Ghosh walks | ..... | ..... | ..... |

9. Complete the sentences with Adverbials in the order or **Manner, Place and Time (MPT)**. One has been for you.

| Subject & verb | Manner | Place | Time |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Sharmila danced | Beautifully | on the dias | last night. |
| He worked | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| She | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| They played | ..... | ..... | ..... |

10. Use the following Adverbs where you can: almost, already, also, even, soon, just, quite, never, hardly, yet.

| Subject | Helping Verb (+ not) | Adverbs | Verbs etc. |
|--------------|----------------------|---------|---------------------|
| I | have | already | finished my work. |
| We | have not | yet | visited Agra. |
| He | ..... | ..... | changed his dress. |
| She | ..... | ..... | come. |
| They | ..... | ..... | tried to help him. |
| The rains | ..... | ..... | started. |
| The students | ..... | ..... | been to the cinema. |

11. Apply the following Adverbs in **Positive, Comparative and Superlative degrees**. One of each type has been done for you.

(নিচের Adverb চলিতে Positive, Comparative এবং Superlative degree-এ প্রয়োগ কর। প্রত্যেক প্রকারের একটি করে তোমাদের জন্য করে দেওয়া হয়েছে।)

Fast, soon, quick, badly, well, easily, early, skillfully.

as + Adverb + as = Positive.

Bithi runs as fast as Juthi.

Comparative (-er/more) + than

Kalpna runs faster than Alpna.

Superlative (-est/most) + off/in

P. T. Usha runs fastest of all Indian women.

She run fastest in Asian Games.

***Note** লক্ষ্য কর, Superlative Adjective-এর পূর্বে the বসলেও Superlative Adverb-এর পূর্বে the বসে না। তবে উভয় ক্ষেত্রেই Superlative-এর পরে অব্যয়ী বা in বসে।

P.C.D. (8B)

12. Apply the **Adverb form of 'good'** in these sentences.
[good > well]

(এই বাক্যগুলিতে 'good'-এর Adverb form প্রয়োগ কর।)

(i) { Atanu is a good player. — Adjective
{ Atanu plays well. — Adverb

(ii) { Adjective
{ Adverb

(iii) { Adjective
{ Adverb

13. **Most words ending in '-ly' are Adverbs. But a few words ending in '-ly' are Adjective**, such as, friendly, lovely, lonely, likely, lowly, miserly. They have no Adverb form. To supply this deficiency we use similar Adverb or an Adverbial Phrase.

বেশির ভাগ Word-এর শেষে -ly থাকলে Adverb হয়। কিন্তু কয়েকটি word-এর শেষে -ly থাকলেও Adjective হয়। যেমন—friendly, lively, lonely, likely, lowly, miserly, এগুলির কোন Adverb form নেই। এই অভাব পূরণের জন্য আমরা এই ধরনের কোন Adverb বা Adverbial Phrase ব্যবহার করি। যেমন—

likely (Adj.) Probably (Adv.)
friendly (Adj.) in a friendly way (Adv. Phrase)
miserly (Adj.) in a miserly manner (Adv. Phrase)

Now use other words of this group in this manner.

14. **Apply the difference of the following pairs of Adverbs** : (নিচের Adverb-দ্বয়গণের অর্থপার্থক্য অনুযায়ী প্রয়োগ কর।)

{ high (উঁচুতে) : The bird flew high.
{ highly (উচ্চভাবে) : He was highly Placed.

{ hard (কঠিনভাবে) :
{ hardly (কদাচিৎ) :

{ late (দেরি) :
{ lately (সম্প্রতি) :

{ near (নিকটে) :
{ nearly (প্রায়) :

15. Note the difference of '**fairly**' and '**rather**' and use them properly : ('fairly' এবং 'rather'-এর পার্থক্য দেখে সঠিকভাবে প্রয়োগ কর।)

Fairly with favourable Adjectives : Tom is fairly clever.

Rather with unfavourable Adjectives : Peter is rather stupid.

Approval by using fairly: This soup is fairly hot (= the speaker likes hot soup.)

Disapproval by using rather: This soup is rather hot (= It is a little too hot for him.) —Thomson & Martinet.

When rather is used before favourable adjectives and adverbs it becomes nearly equivalent to 'very'.

She is rather clever. (= She is very clever.)

Rather before comparatives means 'a little'.

The weather is rather worse than I expected.

Rather sometimes expresses preference.

I would rather stay here (= I prefer to stay here.)

He would rather work than starve.

—Thomson & Martinet.

Rather death than dishonour. (=Death is preferable to dishonour)

Fairly can also be used as an adverb of manner meaning justly. e. g. He divided the money fairly.

16. Intensifiers and Downtoners.

A. The Adverbs which modify Verbs, Adjectives, another Adverb or Prepositions by intensifying their effect are called **Intensifiers**.
(যে সব Adverb কোন Verb, Adjective, অন্য কোন Adverb বা Preposition-এ উত্তর বৃদ্ধি করে তাদের Intensifier বলে।)

List of Intensifiers :

| | | | |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| actually | really | highly | extremely |
| certainly | fully | perfectly | very much |
| surely | greatly | utterly | much |
| definitely | thoroughly | entirely | indeed |
| absolutely | positively | exactly | quiet. |

He is *fully* prepared for the examination.

They arePleased.

We.....agree with you.

The clothes are out of fashion.

The birds flew..... over our head.

B. The Adverbs which modify Verbs, Adjectives, another Adverbs or Prepositions by toning down their effect are called **Downtoners**.

List of Downtoners :

| | | |
|----------|----------|------------|
| almost | nearly | a bit |
| partly | hardly | a little |
| barely | scarcely | some what |
| slightly | rather | not at all |

Ruma speaks a bit quickly.

I ambusy.

He isill.

They are..... disappointed.

The bird flew..... over our head.

EXERCISE

1. How many kinds of Adverbs are there? What are they? Give two examples of each kind of Adverb.

(Adverb) কয় প্রকার ও কি কি প্রত্যেক প্রকারের দুটি করে উদাহরণ দাও।

2. Pick out the Adverbs and tell what they modify.

(Adverb) গুলি খুঁজে বার কর এবং সেগুলি কাকে বিশেষিত করেছে বল।

Each boy broke the stick easily. Read the story quickly. The boys did not quarrel again. The king looked at the garden carefully. The servants usually looked after them. They seldom saw their father. They almost knew the great epics by heart. The servants would go out and stay away for hours. Sir Asutosh was always the first boy in his class. The other students sometimes failed to answer correctly, but the boy's answers were always correct.

3. Change the following Adjectives into Adverbs and use them meaningfully in the blanks.

(নিচের Adjective-গুলিকে Adverb-এ পরিণত কর এবং সেগুলিকে শূন্যস্থানে সঠিক ভাবে ব্যবহার কর।)

brave, heavy, loud, complete, eager, perfect, probable.

(i) I have forgotten his name.

(ii) She was breathing..... when she came on the fourth floor.

(iii) He faced the difficulties

(iv) The work has been done.

(v) Do not read so

(vi) I am waiting for you.

(vii) his father will come here tomorrow.

4. Rewrite the following sentences after replacing italicized words with suitable Adverbs.

(কোনো হরফে লেখা শব্দগুলির পরিবর্তে Adverb বসিয়ে বাক্যগুলি পুনরায় লেখ।)

(i) It is possible that he is ill.

(ii) It is sure that our team will win.

(iii) It is certain that there won't be any difficulty.

(iv) It is obvious that my father will depend on me after his retirement.

(v) It was unfortunate that no one could escape from the burning hut.

5. Put the Adverbials in the bracket in the suitable positions in the sentences and rewrite them.

(বন্ধনীর মধ্যে Adverbial -গুলি সঠিক জায়গায় বসিয়ে বাক্যগুলি পুনরায় লেখ।)

(i) The boy stayed at school. (seldom, after the classes)

(ii) "It was chance, young man," Davy said. (mainly, modestly)

(iii) Kajal pushed her out of the room and bolted the door. (quickly, from outside)

(iv) He prepared his lecture carefully but could not deliver it. (very, unfortunately)

(v) The missiles are being thrown and these are damaging the people (dangerously, in developed countries.)

6. The Adverbials listed on the right are missing from the following passages. Insert them in the places marked ^.

(ভানদিকের Adverbial গুলি অনুচ্ছেদে নেই। ^ চিহ্নিত অংশে সেগুলি বসাত।)

(i) Most people know what is right and what is wrong. ^ however, when the time for action comes, they ^ fail to act ^. The trouble with them is that they are selfish and think ^ of themselves, not of others.

often, only
rightly,
unfortunately

(ii) ^ one of the greatest problems is pollution. In our cities, the air is ^ being polluted by smoke ^ and from carbon monoxide gas emitted by motor vehicles.

constantly,
from factories, in
the 20th Century

(iii) The warder who had fallen ^ was in a ^ critical situation, for he ^ knew how to ^ swim. Every second that passed increased his danger of being snapped up by one of these voracious creatures. ^ one of the convicts heeding his nobler feelings, threw himself into the water.

very, suddenly,
hardly, into the
river.

(iv) Deaf education was ^ introduced in Germany in the 19th Century to the ^ relief of many concerned parents.

enough, first,

CHAPTER-16

MORE ABOUT PREPOSITIONS

A Preposition is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun or a noun-equivalent to show its relation to any other word of the sentence. The noun or pronoun or the noun-equivalent is called the object.

Preposition একটি noun বা pronoun বা noun-equivalent -এর পূর্বে ব্যবহৃত হয়ে তার সঙ্গে বাক্যের অন্য word-এর সম্পর্ক বুঝিয়ে দেয়। এই noun, pronoun বা noun-equivalent-কে এই Preposition-এর object বলে।

"A preposition is a word placed before a noun or a noun equivalent to show its relation to some other word in the sentence."

—P. K. De Sarkar.

কিছু Preposition pronoun-এর পূর্বে বসতে পারে। [This is for him].

তাই Nesfield-এর সঙ্গেই বসে।

Lila is coming with Bela. (Prep. before Noun.)

She is skilled in swimming. (Prep. before Noun-equiv.)

What do you think of him? (Prep. before Pronoun)

Read the sentences in the following Table.

| | | |
|-------------------|-------|----------------|
| Put the cup | on | the dish |
| The cows are | in | the field |
| Nikhillesh goes | to | school |
| He is fond | of | reading novels |
| Lila lives | with | her parents |
| You should stand | by | him/her |
| The fan is moving | over | our head. |
| The sky is | above | our head. |

In the above-mentioned sentences prepositions on, in, to, of, with, by, over and above show the relation of some nouns, noun-equivalents or pronouns to some other words in the sentences. (উপরের বাক্যগুলিতে on, in, to, of, with by, over এবং above কিছু noun, noun-equivalent বা pronoun-এর সঙ্গে বাক্যের অন্য word-এর সম্পর্ক বুঝিয়ে দেয়। তাই এগুলি Preposition.)

Note: (a) Prepositions may also govern other parts of speech. (অন্যান্য Part of Speech-এর সঙ্গেও Preposition-এর সম্পর্ক থাকতে পারে।)

He walks about from here to there. (Preposition governs Adverb)

I have heard of this before now. (")

This will last for ever. (")

He is about to go. (Preposition governs Infinitive)

Note that, all these are prepositions. (লক্ষ্য কর, এগুলি সবই Preposition)

(b) Prepositions may govern phrases and clauses as well. (Preposition কোন phrase বা clause-কেও নিয়ন্ত্রণ করতে পারে।)

He is ignorant of how to swim. (Preposition governs Phrase)

I told every one of what I have heard. (Preposition governs Clause)

It depends on how you do your duty. (Preposition governs Clause)

**ইংরেজিতে এরকম বহু Preposition আছে। তবে কয়েকটি ইংরেজি Preposition-এর সঙ্গে বাংলা বিভক্তির সম্পর্ক লক্ষ্য করা একান্ত প্রয়োজন। কারণ বাংলা বিভক্তির সঙ্গে ইংরেজি

MORE ABOUT PREPOSITIONS

Preposition-এর সম্পর্ক না শিখলে Preposition সম্বন্ধে পরিভাষা ধারণা হয় না। ছাত্র-ছাত্রীদের সুবিধার্থে নিচে বাংলা বিভক্তি ও ইংরেজি Preposition-এর একটি তালিকা দেওয়া হলো। মনে রাখা সরকার সামান্য কিছু ব্যতিক্রম ঘটলেও এটাই Preposition-ব্যবহারের সাধারণ নিয়ম।

| বিভক্তি | Preposition | Example |
|--------------------|----------------------|---|
| কর্তার ১ম | — | Ramkamal is a boy (No preposition) |
| কর্তার ২য় | to | The boy goes to school. (যেমন প্রতি বা দিকে) The book was given to Ram. (রামকে) |
| কর্তার ৩য় | by (a doer) | The snake was killed by Ram. (রামের দ্বারা) |
| কর্তার ৪য় | with (an instrument) | The cake was eaten by the dog. She wrote the letter with a pen. (কলমের দ্বারা) |
| নিমিত্তে ৪য় | for | I waited for him. (তার জন্য) |
| অপসারণে ৫য় | from | The apple fell from the tree. (পাছ থেকে) |
| ইহাতে, থেকে, চেয়ে | than | He will not take less than ten rupees. (দশ টাকার চেয়ে কম) |
| সম্বন্ধে ৬য় | of | This is the book of Ram. (রামের বই) |
| ৪, ৫, ৬ | in, at | He lives in Calcutta. (কলকাতায়) I live at Gobindapur. (গোবিন্দপুরে) There is a lot of fish in the river. (নদীতে) |

** আরো কিছু বাক্যে Preposition -এর ব্যবহার দেখ :

মিষ্টার বোস ইংল্যান্ডে যাবেন- Mr. Bose is going to England.

রামের দ্বারা রাক্ষস নিহত হলেন-Ravana was killed by Ram.

সে একটা লাঠি দিয়ে সাপ মারল- He killed a snake with a stick.

আমি তোমার জন্য একটা ছাতা কিনেছি- I have bought an umbrella for you.

সে স্কুল থেকে বাড়ি আসছে-He is coming home from school.

এটি একটি বাগা চেয়ারের পা-This is leg of a broken chair.

আমি গ্রামে বাস করি-I live in a village. (কিন্তু গ্রামের নামের পূর্বে at হয়।)

আমি গোপডাঙ্গায় / আটঘরায়া বাস করি-I live at Gopdanga/Atghara.

সে কলকাতায় / বোম্বাইতে বাস করে- He lives in Calcutta/Bombay.

মরুভূমিতে কোন লোক বাস করতে পারে না-No man can live in a desert.

Position of Preposition.

(i) Normally prepositions precede Nouns or Pronouns.

(Preposition-সাধারণত : Noun বা Pronoun -এর আগে বসে।)

আমি ছেলেকে একটি বই দিয়েছিলাম-I gave a book to the boy.

বিড়ালটি ইদুরের ওপর লাফিয়ে পড়ল-The Cat jumped on the rat.

আমি তার সম্বন্ধে কিছুই জানি না-I know nothing about him.

(ii) When the object of the preposition is an Interrogative Pronoun or a Relative Pronoun, the Preposition is placed at the end.

(Interrogative Pronoun বা Relative Pronoun যদি Preposition-এর object হয়, তাহলে Preposition সব শেষে বসে।)

তুমি কি বুজছ?—What are you looking for?

তুমি কোথায় থেকে আসছ?—Where do you come from?

এই সেই ছেলে যার কথা আমি বলেছিলাম—This is the boy that I spoke of.

এই সেই মেয়ে যার সঙ্গে আমি কথা বলেছিলাম—This is the girl (whom) I spoke to.

যে বইটা তুমি চাইছিলে সেটা এখানে—Here is the book that you asked for.
এখানে একটি চেয়ার আছে যার ওপর বসতে পার—Here is a chair to sit on (to sit on = to sit on which.)

*Note: By a door, with an instrument এই সাধারণ নিয়মের ব্যতিক্রম।
'blasted by an atom bomb', 'governed by the rules' 'died by poison', 'destroyed by fire' ইত্যাদিতে by আসলে appropriate preposition হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়।

KINDS OF PREPOSITION

Prepositions may be arranged in the following classes. (Preposition-গুলির নিম্নলিখিত শ্রেণীবিন্যাস করা যায়।)

(i) Simple Preposition: at, in, by, of, for, on, over, under, up, to, from, out, with etc.

(ii) Double Prepositions: into, onto, within, without, from, among, towards etc.

(iii) Compound Preposition: These are formed usually prefixing a preposition to a Noun, an Adjective or an Adverb. (Noun, Adjective বা Adverb-এর সঙ্গে prefix-এর মতো preposition যুক্ত হলে তাকে compound preposition বলে।)

across (= on + cross), along (= on + long),
behind (= by + hind), beneath (= by + neath),
beside (= by + side), under neath (= under + neath).
(a = on; be = by on such cases.)

লক্ষ্যকর, Noun, Adjective বা Adverb-এর পূর্বে Preposition বসিয়ে Compound Preposition তৈরি হচ্ছে।

(iv) Phrase Preposition or Prepositional Phrases:

Groups of words used with the force of a single preposition are called phrase prepositions or prepositional phrases. (শব্দভাণ্ডারের সঙ্গে preposition যুক্ত হয়ে যখন একটি বিশেষ অর্থ প্রকাশিত হয়, তখন তাকে Phrase preposition বা Prepositional phrase বলে।)

সে তার বুদ্ধির সাহায্যে সাক্ষ্য লাভ করেছিল—He succeeded by dint of merit.

আমাকে একটি পেনসিলের পরিবর্তে একটি কলম দাও—Please give me a pen instead of a pencil.

কিছু সময়ের মধ্যে সে তার ভুল দেখতে পেল—In course of time he found his mistake.

** লক্ষ্য কর, দু'তিনটি লম্বা পর বসে Prepositional Phrase তৈরি হয়েছে।

(v) Participial Prepositions:

Some Present or Past Participles are used as Prepositions.

এই প্রস্তাব সম্বন্ধে তুমি কি জান—What do you know regarding this proposal?

তাদের বিবেচনার নাম অধিক নয়—Considering the quality, the price is not high.

গ্রামের পাশ দিয়ে নদী বয়ে গেছে—The river flows past the village.

(vi) Disguised Prepositions:

Sometimes a or o are used as Disguised Prepositions. [a = on, o = off]
নুন টাকায় এক কিলো বিক্রি হচ্ছে—Salt sells one kilo a rupee.

সে সপ্তাহে একবার এখানে আসে—She comes here once a week.

[of can be changed into o as in 'four O'clock.'—Nesfield.]

*Note: Several words are used sometimes as Adverbs and sometimes as Prepositions. A word is a preposition when it governs a noun or a pronoun. It is an Adverb when it does not. —Wren & Martin.

কোনো word কখনো Adverb কখনো Preposition রূপে ব্যবহৃত হয়। যখন word-টি কোন Noun বা Pronoun-কে নিয়ন্ত্রিত করে, তখন তা হয় Preposition; আর যখন তা করে না, তখন তা Adverb হয়।

Adverb

Go, and run about.
I could not come before.
Has he come in?
Let us move on.
The wheel came off.
I have not seen him since.

Preposition

Don't loiter about the corridor.
I came the day before yesterday.
Is he in the room?
The book is on the table.
The driver jumped off the car.
I have not slept since yesterday.

RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY PREPOSITIONS

| | |
|--|--|
| 1. Place/Position (স্থান/অবস্থান) at, about, above, across, against, among, before, behind, below, between, by, down, in, inside, near, of, on, over, under, upon, with, within | at the window, at his office (Hornby) a chain about his neck, above the sky, lying across the path, a barrier across the road, stood against you, among the boys, stood before him, behind the door, below the table, between you and me, stand by me, sitting by the woman, down the river, in/inside the room, near the (position) corner of the street, on the table, on your left, on the top of the hill, under the tree, with his friend, within the campus. |
| 2. Time (সময়) at, after, before, by, during, from, for, in, on, since, till, until, within, throughout | at 10 a.m., at dawn, at noon, at night, at an early age, after 3 O'clock, after his arrival, before his arrival, before the 15th July, by 4 p.m., by sunrise, by night (we travelled by night), during five years, during the whole summer/ the whole day, from 1st January, for a week/a month, in June, in 1995, in the morning/afternoon/evening, on Sunday, since he comes, within three months, throughout the year. |
| 3. A. Direction/Movement (দিক বা গতি) at, away, from, across, down, for, from, into, off, over, out of, round, to, towards, up. | threw stones at the dogs, away from India, ran across the field, went down the hill, start for England, fled from home, jumped into the well, fell off the train, flew over my head, came out of the room/the cage, tour round the world, go to school, turn to the left, walk to the window, towards north/south, climb up the hill. |

| 3. B. Special use of Direction (দিক নির্ণয়ে বিশেষ প্রয়োগ) | |
|--|--|
| (i) In denotes inside or within | Direction (In=inside) On (=on the border) To (=outside) |
| (ii) On denotes on the border | |
| (iii) To denotes outside | |
| 4. A. Agency/Instrument (যক্তি, বস্তু, বা ঘটনার সহায়তা/মাধ্যম) at, by, with, through, from. | (i) Kashmir is in the north of India. (ii) The Himalayas stand on the north of India. (iii) Sri Lanka is to the south of India. at auction (দিল্লীর মাধ্যমে), killed by a man with a gun, by heart (Learn by heart-হৃৎকরে নাও), by force, by post, by poison, destroyed by fire, caused by flood, by bus, by tram, by air (জাহাজ গবে) by land (স্থলপথে), by sea (সমুদ্রপথে), by an accident, by tuition (He makes a living by tuition), paid by credit card, powered by electricity, by hand (These goods are made by hand), by the ear (I pulled him by the ear), by my watch (It's 5-30 by my watch.), taller by two inches. with love, with courage, with ease, with difficulty, cut it with a blade, through an agent, through a friend, from gratitude. for the good of the people, died for the country, took medicine for a cold, died from fatigue, suffering from cold/fever, died of cancer, cholera/diarrhoea (জ্বর/রিজা): lost his book through negligence, read to learn (purpose), trembles with fear, shivers with fever. the book of John, the factory of my father, the girl with blue eye, the woman with long hair, I have no money with me. I live with my parents. Mix the flour with some milk. Bank charges interest at 17 percent (rate). Cloth is sold by the metre (standard). Rice is sold at Rs 8/- per kg. (value). The train is running at 80 km per hour (speed). |
| 5. Reason/Purpose (কারণ, উদ্দেশ্য) for, from, of, through, to, with | |
| 6.A. Possession (বস্তু, অধিকার) of, with | |
| 6. B. Relationship (সম্বন্ধ) | |
| 7. Standard/Rate/Value/Speed (মান, হার, মূল্যমানপতি) at, by | |

SOME IMPORTANT PREPOSITIONS

At, In

He is **at home** (denotes rest)He is **at his office** (denotes 'on duty'/'at work'—A. L. D.—Hornby)He is **in the office** (denotes 'inside the office'—Oxford Guide to Eng. Grammar—Eastwood)

Difference of At & In

| [At] | [In] |
|--|--|
| (i) We use at for a position at a small space. (ছোট জায়গার পূর্বে at বসে।) You can be at home/at school/at a hotel/at the bus stop/at Lalpur (village)/at Midnapur (town) . "We were at the cafe." (expresses position) —John Eastwood. | (i) We use in for a position in a large space. (বড় জায়গার পূর্বে in বসে।) You can be in Calcutta (city)/in Delhi/in London/in Midnapur (district)/in a country/in a forest/in a desert |
| (ii) We use at office/library/cinema/theatre/building etc. when we are talking about the normal purpose of it. (অফিস, লাইব্রেরি, সিনেমা, থিয়েটার ইত্যাদির ক্ষেত্রে যখন তার স্বাভাবিক উদ্দেশ্যের কথা বলা হয়, তখন তার পূর্বে at বসে।) He is at the office . (=on duty) The Browns are at the theatre . (= watching a play). "We were at the library ." (=choosing a book). —Oxford Guide to English Grammar—John Eastwood. | (ii) We use in office/in the office etc. when it denotes simply inside the building or position within . (অফিস ইত্যাদি building-এর মধ্যে position (বোঝাতে বা inside the building বোঝাতে in বসে।) "He is in the office (=inside the office) He is not in office now. (=in position) The Browns are in the theatre to meet some one. "It was cold in the library ." (= inside the building)" —Oxford Guide to English Grammar—John Eastwood. |
| (iii) We use at for a point of time . (নির্দিষ্ট সময়ের ক্ষেত্রে at বসে।) You can meet me at 10 o'clock/at 8 a.m./at 4 p.m./at half past five/at breakfast (time) at dawn/at noon (short span of time)/ at that time/ at the moment. We also use at with holiday periods of two or three days. at Christmas/at the weekend [For Advanced Learners] | (iii) We use in for a period of time . (নির্দিষ্ট ব্যাপক সময়ের ক্ষেত্রে in বসে।) You can meet me in the morning/in the afternoon/in the evening/in the next few days/in the summer holidays/in spring/in July/in 1995 . He will come in an hour. Exception : at night . Note : We use on with a single day.— on Sunday, on Tuesday afternoon, on that day, on the 7th August, on the evening of the 12th . |
| (iv) " At is one-dimensional. We use it when we see something as a point in space"—John Eastwood. The car was waiting at the lights. There is someone at the door. | (iv) " In is three dimensional. We use it when we see something as all around." I had five pounds in my pocket. There was a man sitting in the waiting room. —John Eastwood. |

Now see some examples sentences :

মনিষা মাজপুরে বাস করে—Manisha lives at Majpur (name of a village).
 অমল আরামবাগে বাস করে—Amal lives at Arambagh (at a small town).
 শ্যামল বর্ধমান জেলায় বাস করে—Shyamal lives in the district of Burdwan.
 বিমল কলকাতায় বাস করে—Bimal lives in Calcutta. (in a big city).
 সোমা গ্রামে বাস করে—Soma lives in a village.
 উমা শহরে বাস করে—Uma lives in a town/in a city.
 অমিনা ভারতে/এশিয়ায়/ইউরোপে বাস করে—Amina lives in India/in Asia/in Europe.

অপু ভোরবেলায় ওঠে—Apu gets up at dawn.
 মিথু সকাল ছটাে ওঠে—Mithu gets up at 6 a. m.
 দেবু সকালে গান গায়—Debu sings in the morning.
 শিবু এক বছরে বাড়িটি তৈরি করেছিল—Shibu built the house in a year.

*Note : গ্রাম বা ছোট শহরের নামের পূর্বে at এবং বড় শহরের নামের পূর্বে বা দেশ বা মহাদেশের নামের পূর্বে in বসে। কিন্তু গ্রাম বা শহর বা জেলায় বসলে in a village/in a town/in a city/in a district হয়।

এবার কিছু Time Phrase লক্ষ্য কর—at dawn, at noon, at 6 a. m. at 5 p.m.,
 কিন্তু in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening (যাতিক্রম at night), at midnight in a week, in a month, in a year ইত্যাদি।

Some usages of At & In

At

At present, at play, at work (I found them at play or at work); at dinner, at hand (The examination is at hand; I do not expect such treatment at your hands); at page (Open your book at page ten); at liberty (state or condition) at war or at peace; (The two countries are at war or at peace with each other); but, "Let me die in peace"; at a distance, at the door, at the age of eighty.

In

In arms (The two brothers are in arms against each other); in danger, in ruins (The historical palace of Raja Rammohan Roy is in ruins now); in power (His party is in power now); in office (=in position. "He is not in office now", but, in the office=inside the office. Is he in the office?" at his office = on duty—"He is at his office"—Advanced Learners' Dictionary, Hornby); The teacher is in the class (inside the class). She is in bed (at rest), in haste; in cash or notes (but by cheque); in advance, in general, in ink (written in ink); in pain, in sorrow, in time, in his presence or absence; in a hurry (denotes state or condition); in the dark (I am in the dark about his purpose); in the sun (Do not run in the sun); in the shade (Keep the thing in the shade); in the army (occupation); in a few days; in a bad temper, dressed in silk, weak in history.

To, In, Into

সে স্কুলে আছে—He is in the school.

সে স্কুলে যাচ্ছে—He is going to school.

সে ঘরের মধ্যে ঢুকছে—He is entering into the room.

*Note : কোন দিকে গতি বোঝালে To, ভিতরে স্থিতি বোঝালে In এবং ভিতরের দিকে গতি বোঝালে Into হয়। To denotes motion, 'in' denotes position within and Into denotes motion inward.

Infinitive বা 'to' ভুক্ত অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়া বলে Verb -এর আগে to হয়।
 আমি পড়তে চাই—I like to read the book.

সে স্কুলে যেতে চায় না—He does not like to go to school.

কিছু কতকগুলি word এর পর to preposition বসলেও তারপর infinitive না হয়ে gerund বা verbal noun হয়।

বেগুন—He is addicted to gambling. (addicted to gamble হয় না)।

He is adverse to playing cards. (adverse to play হয় না)

Some other usages of To.

(a) To denote purpose : I came to see you. We read to learn. He invited me to dinner.

(b) To denote limit and effect : The army fought to the last. We shall pay to the last penny. He was beaten to death. To our disappointment the failed.

(c) To denote proportion : Our team won by three goals to nil. The ratio of rice and pulse (ভাল) is two to one.

(d) To denote agreement : The apple is sweet to taste.

(e) To denote time : It is ten to eight (আটটা বাজতে দশ মিনিট বাকী)

(f) To denote until : The farmers work from dawn to dusk.

(g) To denote comparing : He is junior/senior/inferior/superior to me.

(h) To denote attaching : Stick the stamp firmly to the envelope.

(i) To denote facing : The two sister stood face to face.

(j) for the indirect object : Give it to me.)

By, With

বাঘটি বাঘাঘড়ীনের দ্বারা নিহত হইয়াছিল—The tiger was killed by Bagha Jatin.

পাখীটি শিকারীর দ্বারা নিহত হইয়াছিল—The bird was killed by the hunter.

ইঁদুরটি বিড়ালের দ্বারা নিহত হইয়াছিল—The rat was killed by the cat.

শিশির লাঠির দ্বারা সাপ মারিয়াছিল—Sisir killed the snake with a stick.

আমরা চোখ দিয়ে দেখি ও কান দিয়া শুনি—We see with our eyes and hear with our ears.

*Note : Doer (অর্থাৎ ব্যক্তি বা প্রাণীর দ্বারা) বোঝালে by এবং Instrument (অর্থাৎ বস্তু দ্বারা) বোঝালে with হয়।

On, Upon, Over, Above

বইটি টেবিলের উপর রাখ—Put the book on the table.

বিড়ালটি টেবিলের উপর লাফিয়ে পড়ল—The cat sprang upon the table.

পাখাটি তার মাথার উপর ঘুরছে—The fan is moving over his head.

প্লেনটি কলকাতার উপর দিয়ে উড়ে গেল—The plane flew over Calcutta.

আকাশ আমাদের মাথার উপরে—The sky is above our head.

পাখাটি ঠিক আমার মাথার উপর ঘুরছে—The fan is moving just above my head.

*Note : কোন কিছু ঘুরে থাকলে উপরে অর্থে on, ঘুরে না থাকলে উপরে (higher than) অর্থে over এর অনেক উপরে অর্থে বা ঠিক উপরে অর্থে above হয়।

(a) 'On' signifies contact with a thing at rest.

(b) 'Upon' speaks of things in motion.

(c) 'Over' refers to a point generally higher than a thing.

(d) 'Above' refers to a point directly higher or far higher.

[The sun is above the trees now.]

Some other usages of On, Over and Above.

- (a) 'Above and over have sometimes similar meanings.'
—John Eastwood—O. G.E.G.
"There was a clock above/over the entrance."
"There's a picture over / above the door."
- (b) "We do not normally use above to mean horizontal movement."
—John Eastwood
That plane flew low over the houses.
(c) "We do not use above for an area or surface."
—John Eastwood
Thick black smoke hangs over the town.
Some one has spread a sheet over the body.
(d) "We prefer over before a number."
There are over fifty thousand people in the stadium.
(e) "We use above with a measurement, such as temperature."
Temperatures will rise above freezing.
In the following examples over has a special meaning.
The leaders discussed world affairs over lunch (=while having lunch).
(g) "We also use over for movement to the other side or position on the other side."
—John Eastwood
The horse jumped over the wall. Was the ball over the goal line?
On:
(a) We use on with specific days and dates.
She usually comes on Sundays.
We went to Digha on New Year's Day.
Our school will open on the 2nd May.
This year the Madhyamik Examination will commence on the thirteenth March.
(b) To denote contact (সংস্পর্শ বোঝাতে):
He is sitting on the chair. Some birds are on the tree.
The words are on the blackboard. The picture is hung on the wall. She wears a ring on her first finger.
(c) To denote subject (বিষয় বোঝাতে):
He wrote a book on chemistry. The story was on ghosts.
He delivered a lecture on Shakespear's Sonnets.
He dwelt at length on the subject.
(d) To denote membership (সদস্য বোঝাতে):
Mr. Das is on the committee.
I am on the Board of studies.
(e) To denote a special direction. (কোন বিশেষ দিকে গতি বোঝাতে):
fortune smiled on him.
They launched an attack on our home.
(f) To denote by means of. (কোন কিছু সাহায্যে বোঝাতে):
They listened to it on the radio.
The cow lives on grass. (But, Mr. Sen lives by honest means.)
He lives on his father's income.

Note: on foot (পায়ে হেঁটে), on duty (বদলিতে), on time (ঠিক সময়ে আসে).

The train runs on time. [or] The train is running to time.

Beside, Besides

[Beside = পাশে, Besides = ছাড়া/সহিত]

সঙ্গে বসে বসে—Sit beside me. (beside = পাশে)
একটি গাছ আছে—There is a tree beside the river.
(beside = পাশে)
কিছু ভাঙে সহায়তা করার (কৈ) নেই—He has none to help him besides you. (besides = ছাড়া/সহিত)
নি বাংলা ছাড়া ইংরেজি জানে—He knows English besides Bengali.
(beside = ছাড়া/সহিত)

Between, Among

দুই ছাইয়ের মধ্যে আমকচি ভাগ করে দাও—Divide the mangoes between the two brothers.
কোনদের মধ্যে আমকচি ভাগ করে দাও—Divide the mangoes among the boys.
দুই সন্ধ্যা ৭টা এবং ৮টার মধ্যে অবশ্যই আসবে—You must come between 7 a.m. and 8 a.m.
কোনদের মধ্যে কলহ করেছিল—The children quarrelled among themselves.

Note: দুই এর মধ্যে between এবং দুই এর বেশির মধ্যে among হয়।

Since, For, From

সে গত ছবিবার থেকে সীকিত—He has been ill since Sunday last.
সে আগামী ছবিবার থেকে ইংরেজি শুরু করবে—He will begin English from next Sunday.
ছবিবার সন্ধ্যা থেকে তাকে দেখিনি—I have not seen him from last week.
ছবিবার থেকে এক সপ্তাহ দেখিনি—I have not seen him for a week.

Note: Point of time বা কোন বিশেষ সময় থেকে বোঝাতে since ও from ব্যবহৃত হয়। যখন বাসবে, কোন সময় থেকে কোন সময় পর্যন্ত সময়ের ব্যাপ্তি বোঝাতে for ব্যবহৃত হয়। যেমন since Sunday, from tomorrow, from last week। সবই Point of time হয়। তবে from সকল tense-এ এবং since কেবল Past tense এবং Perfect tense-এ ব্যবহৃত হয়।

Both (since and from) denote a point of time, not a space or period. But since is preceded by a verb in some perfect tense, while from can be used with any form of tense. Another difference is that since can be used only in reference to past time, whereas from can be used for present and future tense.
—Newfield.
সহজ কথাই Point of time বোঝাতে Present Perfect বা Perfect Continuous tense এবং past tense-এ since এবং সময় tense-এ from ব্যবহৃত হয়।

For refers to a space of time; since and from refer to a point of time. But while since refers only to a past point, from refers to a point of time in all tenses.
—P. K. De Sarkar.

But in P. K. De Sarkar's example 'since' is wrongly shown as a preposition in such a sentence—'It is many days since I saw you last'—Here since is not a preposition, but a conjunction.

Some more examples of since and from in tenses.

He has been here since/from Monday last (present Perfect tense).
It has been raining since/from Sunday last.
(Present Perfect Continuous tense).

He began English *since*/from the age of ten/his boyhood. (Simple Past tense)

He was tired as he had been working *since*/from dawn. (Past Perfect Continuous)

He begins English *from* (not *since*) today. (Present tense)

He will begin English *from* (not *since*) tomorrow. (Future tense)

*[However, "note that there is a difference between *last* and the *last*. We say, I have been here *since last week* (month, year etc.) but I have been here *for the last week*." In the first sentence '*last week*' means a point in time about seven days ago. In the second sentence '*the last week*' means the period of seven days that has just finished.]

—A. J. Thomson & A. V. Martinet.

By, Since, Before

তোমাকে চারটার মধ্যে ফিরতে হবে—You must be back *by* four O'clock.

সে চারটা থেকে এখানে আছে—He has been here *since* four O'clock.

সে চারটার আগে ফিরল না—He did not get back *before* four O'clock.

[*By*, *Since*, *Before*—These are all used for a point of time, not for a period or space of time." —Nesfield]

After, In, Within, By

- After* refers to
 - Past period of time (not present or future period of time)
সে কয়েকদিন পরে এসেছিল—He came *after* a few days. (correct)
 - Point of time (in all tenses)
সে বিকেল পাঁচটার পরে আসে/এসেছিল/আসবে—He comes/came/will come *after* 5 p.m.
- In* refers to a future period of time to denote "at the end of some future time". (ভবিষ্যতে কোন সময়ের শেষে বোঝাতে)
আমি সপ্তাহের শেষ দিকে দিল্লী যাব—I shall go to Delhi *in* a week.
- Within* denotes "some time before the end of some future time."
(ভবিষ্যতে কোন সময় শেষ হওয়ার আগে বোঝাতে)—আমি এই সপ্তাহ শেষ হওয়ার আগের দিল্লী যাব—I shall go to Delhi *within* a week.
- By* refers to a point of future time [sometime before that (ভবিষ্যৎ কালে কোন নির্দিষ্ট সময়ের পূর্বে বোঝাতে)]
সে দশটার মধ্যে ফিরে আসবে—He will come back *by*/before 10 O'clock.
He will come back *within* 10 O'clock (Incorrect)
- Be* refers to a period of time to denote "during"
We travelled *by* night. I will come *by* tomorrow.

Ago, Before

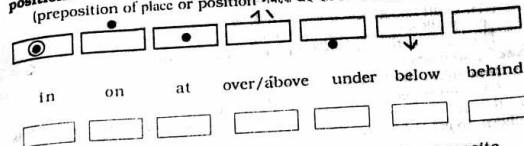
- Ago* is used to denote 'before now'. (বর্তমানের আগে কোন ঘটনা বোঝাতে)
(এখন থেকে) দুবছর আগে সে অফিসের কাজে যোগ দিয়েছিল—He *joined* office two years *ago*.
- Before* is used to denote 'before then'. (অতীতের কোন ঘটনার পূর্বে কোন ঘটনা বোঝাতে)
তার মা মারা যাবার দুবছর পূর্বে সে অফিসের কাজে যোগ দিয়েছিল—He *had joined* office *before* his mother died.

*Note: বর্তমানে আগে কোন ঘটনা বোঝাতে *ago* ব্যবহৃত হয় বলে এটিতে Simple Past tense হয়। কিন্তু অতীতে কোন ঘটনার পূর্বে কোন ঘটনা বোঝাতে *before* ব্যবহৃত হয় বলে এটিতে Past Perfect tense হয়।

- Before* can also be used in future tense. (ভবিষ্যৎ কালেও *before* ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে।) [Oxford Guide to English Grammar—John East Wood (First Published in 1994)]
তাদের পৌঁছানোর আগে আমরা অবশ্যই প্রস্তুত থাকব—We must be ready *before* their arrival.

APPLIED SECTION

1. These figures will give you an idea of the **prepositions of place or position**.
(preposition of place or position সম্বন্ধে এই ছবিগুলি তোমাকে একটা ধারণা দেবে।)



Examples:

at an exact place/at the station/at 22 Chouranghee Road etc.
in a country city/town/village/area/container/bed e.g. in India/
Calcutta/a town or village (not the name) a box/ a bottle/a tea-pot/bed/in
College street etc.
on the chair/table on the ceiling/figure on the blackboard, a black
spot on his shirt/on the chouranghee Road etc.
under the tree/bridge/chair/table etc.
behind the bus stand/bazar/any person etc.
above the knee/average marks/60% marks etc.
below the knee/pass marks/60% marks etc.
by the window/the gate/the ticket counter etc.
near the school/the bank/the cinema etc.
opposite the bank/the post office/the entrance etc.
between the two places/persons etc.
among the boys/girls/students/friends/people etc.

Now fill in the blanks: (শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর):

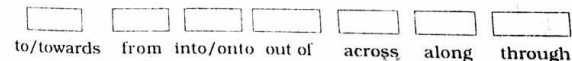
- Sharmila lives — College Street.
- She lives — 19/1, College Street.
- Mr. John lives — England.
- Ruma lives — Bombay.
- She has a flat — the second floor. Our flat is just opposite — hers.

(f) The little girl wanted to sit — the window — the compartment — the train. She likes to look — the green trees and the paddy field — the train.

(g) Apu liked to read story books. He keeps his story books — his pillow. He often reads them — night.

(h) Most of the students have scored — 20% marks. They have failed — English.

2. These figures will give you an idea of the **Prepositions of motion**.
(Preposition of motion সম্বন্ধে এই ছবিগুলি তোমাকে একটা ধারণা দেবে।)



Examples:

We are going to the cinema. (দিকে)

They are going towards the station. (দিকে)

He has been coming to school from January.
 Don't try to get into a running bus. (যেথা গতি)
 The frog jumped into the well. (যেথা গতি)
 The pet cat jumped onto her lap. (উপর থেকে)
 Please get the purse out of the drawer. (ভিতর থেকে)
 Don't run across the road. It may cause accident. (আড়াআড়ি)
 Let's walk a mile along the sea beach. (সমুদ্রতীর ধরে)
 They drove through Kharagpur on their way to Digha. (যড়গপুরের

কিডর দিয়ে দীঘার দিকে)

Now fill in the blanks. (তাল্যস্থান পূরণ কর) :

- (a) A ten rupee note fell — Pintu's pocket.
 (b) The bus on Garerghat-Tarakeswar route is always crowdy. It is difficult to get — it.
 (c) Shyamal's office is three miles away — his house.
 (d) Don't walk — the garden. It is strictly prohibited.
 (e) If you walk — the bank of the river — the south for a mile, you'll see a bridge — the river.

3. These figures will give you an idea of the **Prepositions denoting a point of time and a period of time.**

(point of time এবং period of time বোঝাবার জন্য Preposition সম্পর্কে এই ছবিগুলি তোমাকে একটা ধারণা দেবে।)

Point of time :

| | | |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| at 12 O'clock | by 10 O'clock (= any time before or at 10 O'clock) | (looking back) since 10 O'clock. |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|

Period of time

| | | | | |
|---------------|--------|-------|-------|------|
| for six hours | before | after | until | from |
|---------------|--------|-------|-------|------|

Examples :

Nipa will arrive here at 12 O'clock.
 Please do come by 12 O'clock.
 I have not seen her since 10 O'clock.
 He has been reading for six hours.
 Come here before 6 O'clock.
 Don't come after 6 O'clock.
 I'll wait for you until 4 p.m.
 I've been waiting for you from 4 p.m.

Note : For কেবলমাত্র Period of time এবং since ও from কেবলমাত্র Point of time-এর ক্ষেত্রে ব্যবহৃত হয়। [Vide—Nesfield]

Some important usage of At, In, On:

At (5 a.m., 4 p.m., 12 O'clock, dawn, night, midnight)

| | |
|---|--|
| In { 1992 April Winter the rainy season the morning the afternoon the evening | On { Sunday Sunday evening the 5th August the New year's Day the Christmas Eve |
|---|--|

But we use 'during the night'. ('In the night' has the same meaning but it is not normally used.)

Now fill in the blanks. (শূন্যস্থান পূরণ কর) : | at, in, on, for, before, during. |

- (a) You'll meet your friend — 7 p.m. — Saturday evening.
 (b) Please see him anytime — 9 O'clock.
 (c) The last time we met her was — May, 1990.
 (d) The Headmaster will not be — the school — the tiffin hours. [In the school = inside the school; at the school = on duty—Oxford Guide to Eng. Grammar by John Eastwood]
 (e) Is the Republic Day — a Sunday this year?
 (f) The school will remain closed — nearly a month during the summer.

4. **Prepositions are sometimes omitted.**

(কিছু কিছু ক্ষেত্রে Preposition উহ্য থাকে।)

Where have you been? (not 'where have you been to?')
 Having finished my work I went home. (not 'after having')
 We did it last week. (not 'in last week')
 Wait a minute. (not 'wait for a minute')

5. **Prepositions are sometimes wrongly omitted.**

(কিছু কিছু ক্ষেত্রে Preposition উহ্য রাখলে ভুল হয়।)

We cannot say. We should say.
 What use is it? Of what use is it?
 His conduct admits no excuse. His conduct admits of no excuse.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE

At the top of (সর্বোচ্চ মাত্রায়)—He shouted at the top of his voice.
 By dint of (সাহায্যে)—He won the prize by dint of hard work.
 By means of (সাহায্যে)—He got the prize by means of hard work.
 By virtue of (সাহায্যে)—He got the prize by virtue of hard work.
 For the sake of (জন্য)—He sacrificed his life for the sake of his country.

In case of (কিছু ঘটলে)—In case of fire, call the Fire Brigade.
 In consequence of (কিছু ঘটলে)—In consequence of fire, call the Fire Brigade.

In the event of (কিছু ঘটলে)—In the event of fire, call the Fire Brigade.
 In course of (কোন কিছু চলা কালে)—He told me this in course of conversation.

In comparison to (তুলনায়)—Sharmila is more beautiful in comparison to Urmila.

In compliance with (অনুসারে)—I can do this in compliance with your request.

In favour of (অনুকূলে)—He said this in favour of his brother.

In front of (সম্মুখে)—He is waiting in front of the school.

In lieu of (পরিবর্তে)—Give me this book in lieu of that.

In order to (উদ্দেশ্যে)—He worked hard in order to win the prize.

In place of (পরিবর্তে)—He is working in place of his brother.

In search of (অনুসন্ধান)—They went to the forest in search of a deer.

In spite of (সত্ত্বেও)—He went to school in spite of his illness.

Instead of (পরিবর্তে)—He started a business instead of crying for a job.

In the midst of (মধ্যে)—He is in the midst of great troubles.

In the teeth of (বাহ্য সত্ত্বেও)-He went on working in the teeth of strong opposition.

In accordance with (অনুসারে)-He did this in accordance with her request.

On behalf of (পক্ষে)-The Headmaster welcomed the visitors on behalf of the school.

Owing to (কারণে)-He could not attend school owing to his illness.
With an eye to (উদ্দেশ্যে)-He did this with an eye to helping his

With a view to (উদ্দেশ্যে)-He did this with a view to helping his brother. (with a view to help নয়)

1. Match the prepositions (at, in, on, to, between) with the following :

1. Match the words in the box with the correct time of day.
- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) Sunday | (g) dawn |
| (b) January | (h) the morning. |
| (c) 1993 | (i) the afternoon. |
| (d) Monday morning | (j) 10 O'clock. |
| (e) noon | (k) from dawn dusk. |
| (f) night | (l) 2 p.m. and 4 p.m. |

2. Complete the following sentences with appropriate prepositions.

- (a) Where do you come—? (c) Please give him a chair to sit—.
- (b) What are you afraid—? (d) Please give me a pen to write—.

3. Fill in the blanks with prepositional phrases given below. One has been done for you.

- (i) He shouted (*at the top of*) his voice.
(ii) He got the prize hard-work.
(iii) There is a tall tree our school.
(iv) He told me this conversation.
(v) The police arrived time.
(vi) He did not go to school his illness.
(vii) He started a business crying for a job.
(viii) He did this helping his friend.
(ix) The bearer will receive the letter me.
(x) He was given a farewell his retirement.
- [*at the top of, on the eve of, by dint of, in the nick of, in, course of, in front of, owing to, with a view to instead of, on behalf of.*]

4. Write in your own English with the help of suitable prepositions as necessary.

- (a) **With the preposition—To.**
 প্রবীর আগামী মাসে ইংল্যান্ড যাবে—Prabir will go to England in the next month.

তিনি মুগেনের কাছে টাকা পাঠিয়েছেন। লোকটি আমার কাছে এসেছিল। আমরা নদীর ধার পর্যন্ত
সৌভেঁছিলাম। সে প্রত্যাহ বাড়ি আসে। দরিত্রের প্রতি সদয় হও। দশটা বাজতে বাট মিনিট বাকী।
আমরা শেষ পর্যন্ত যুদ্ধ করব। (to the last).

with the preposition—Into.

With the preposition—into.
 তারা দৌড়ে ঘরে ঢুকল—They ran into the room.

with the preposition

তারা সীড়ে ঘরে ঢুকল-They ran into the room.
বাঘটা কুইয়ার মধ্যে লাফিয়ে পড়ল। বাঘটা ঘরে বাসিয়ে পড়ে গেল। বাঘি এ বিষয়ে অনুসন্ধান করল
চুকিয়ে সাঁচ (drive)। কুইজটা তার হাত থেকে গলে পড়ে গেল। বাঘি এ বিষয়ে অনুসন্ধান করল
(look into)। চোয়টা গন্ত হায়ে তার ঘরে চুকছিল। অনেক রানি পর্যন্ত বড় চলেছিল। (ragged
far).

(c) **With the preposition—In.**

(c) **With the preposition -In.**
যেটি কঠোর আছে। is there anybody in the house? তিনি সকাল আটটায় আসবেন।
ভাড়া যাক! কেতর আছে। হরিবার কষ্টে (distress) পড়ছেন। তারি সন্ধ্যা আশ্রয়
বিদ্যালয়। তিনি ১৯২০ সালে জন্মগ্রহণ করেন। সকালে বেড়ান আশ্রয়। আশ্রয় তাকে রাত্রে
দেখায়। তিনি সৈনিকভাবে কাজ করেন। গুরুত্বপূর্ণ মন্ত্রীর ভিতর ছিলেন। সূর্য পূর্ব দিকে উদিত
হয় এবং পশ্চিম দিকে অস্ত যায়।

(d) With the preposition—At.

(d) **With the preposition—At.**
বিকাল চারটায় বুল ছুটি হয়—The school breaks up at 4 p.m.
বইটির কড়ির পাঠা শোল। আমরা মুর্শিদাবাদ জেলার মালবাগে থাকি। ট্রেনটি ঘন্টায় য়াট মাইল বেগে।
বইটির কড়ির পাঠা শোল। আমরা মুর্শিদাবাদ জেলার মালবাগে থাকি। ট্রেনটি ঘন্টায় য়াট মাইল বেগে।
বইটির কড়ির পাঠা শোল। আমরা মুর্শিদাবাদ জেলার মালবাগে থাকি। ট্রেনটি ঘন্টায় য়াট মাইল বেগে।

(e) **With the preposition—On/Upon.**

(e) **With the preposition**—**উপর**।
 বেঞ্চের উপর দাঁড়া—Stand up on the bench.
 সে আমার মাথার আশ্রয় করল (struck)। ততো ভাষে ভাসে। তিনি একটি ইতিহাস বই লিখেছেন।
 এই বয়সটুকু কাজের এক পাতায় লেখা। তারা আগামী সোমবার এখানে আসবে। গত মঙ্গলবার
 আমরা দাঁড়া গিয়েছিলাম। এই জানুয়ারি পরিশেষে দু'ঘণ্টা উপর একটি সভা অনুষ্ঠিত হবে। বর্তমান
 মাসের ৭ তারিখে (7th instant) ডুটি আছে। গত মাসের ৭ তারিখে (7th ultimo) ডুটি ছিল।
 ৭ই নভেম্বর (7th proximo) তারা এখানে আসবে।

(f) **With the preposition—Of.**

৭) With the preposition "ing".
 আংটিটি সোনার তৈরি—The ring is made of gold.
 এটা সুরেশের বাড়ি। বাঙাট্টা ইটের তৈরি। চাদরটা পশমের তৈরি। সে কানে কম শোনে। তিনি
 পড়ছেন। পুস্তিকাকর বিষয়টি জ্ঞানানো হলো। সে বড়লোকের ঘরে জানোছে।

(a) *With the preposition—For.*

(g) **With the preposition – for.**
 আমি তোমার জন্য একখানা কবল আনব- I shall bring a blanket for you.
 তিনি আমার জন্য এক ঘট্টা অপেক্ষা করেছিলেন। আমি দুইটা সাঁতার কেটেছিলাম। তিনি পরোপকারের (good to others) জন্য এটা করেছিলেন। আমি তোমার মঙ্গলের জন্য এরূপ (so) বারোখানার। নীচের পাঁচ বছর এটি মুলের ছাত্র ছিল। তিনি কয়েকটা খামের (envelopes) জন্য আমার কাছে এসেছিলেন।

(h) With the preposition—From.

ছেলেটি ছাদ থেকে পড়ে গেল—The boy fell from the roof.
আমি তার কাছ থেকে একশ' টাকা ধার করলাম (borrow)। ছেলেটি এক থেকে একশ' পর্যন্ত গণনা
করেছিল (count)। সূর্যোদয় থেকে সূর্যাস্ত পর্যন্ত তারা কাজ করেছিল। আমরা কলকাতা থেকে দিল্লী
গিয়েছিলাম। আমি সাতদিন ধরে জুরে ভুগছি।

7. (f) With the preposition—With.

ছেলেটি লাঠি দিয়ে বিভ্রালটিকে গ্রহণ করল—The boy beat the cat with a stick.
 লিখক কলম দিয়ে লিখছিল। অনিমেষে একটি পকেটঘড়ি নিয়ে কুলে এসেছে। সে তার বাবার সঙ্গে
 বাজারে গিয়েছিল। শিকারীটি বন্দুক দিয়ে বাঘ মারল। গতকাল তারা আমার সঙ্গে খণ্ডা করেছিল।
 আমি টাকা নিয়ে ব্যাঙ্কে গিয়েছিলাম।

5. Write the following passage in your own English.

লোকটা থাকত হুগলী জেলার একটা গ্রামে। গ্রামে কোন বিদ্যালয় ছিল না। তাই তার ছেলেটি রোজ ৯ টায় পায়ে হেঁটে (on foot) যেত চাঁপাডাঙ্গা। চাঁপাডাঙ্গায় মুখুজ্জদের একটা বড় স্কুল ছিল। ছেলেটার পয়সা ছিল হুতা চারটায়। ছুটির পর সে বাড়ি ফিরত। রাতে সে অনেকক্ষণ পড়াশুনা করত।

CHAPTER—17

APPROPRIATE PREPOSITION

According to English usage certain words are followed by particular prepositions. These are called appropriate prepositions. Students should study the uses of appropriate prepositions carefully.

ইংরেজি ভাষায় কিছু কিছু শব্দের পর কিছু নির্দিষ্ট Preposition বসে। এগুলিকে appropriate Preposition বলে। ছাত্র-ছাত্রীদের বুঝে যাওয়ার সঙ্গে এগুলি দেখা উচিত।

Abide by (সেঁচা চলা)—You should abide by the rules.

Abound in (প্রচুর পরিমাণে থাকা)—Fish abounds in this pond.

Abound with (সেঁচা চলা)—The river abounds with fish.

Absent from (অনুপস্থিত)—He was absent from school.

Absorbed in (নিবিষ্ট)—He is absorbed in studies.

Access to (প্রবেশ অধিকার)—Public has no access to this garden.

According to (অনুসারে)—According to your order I went there.

Accompanied by (সঙ্গী হওয়া)—He was accompanied by his father.

Accompanied with (একসঙ্গে থাকা)—He has fever accompanied with headache.

Acquainted with (পরিচিত)—I am acquainted with him.

Accused of (অভিযুক্ত)—He is accused of theft.

Accustomed to (স্বভাব)—I am accustomed to such a life.

Acquit (one) of (খালি দেওয়া)—I acquit you of the charge.

Add to (যোগ করা)—Add this to that.

Addicted to (আসক্ত)—He is addicted to wine.

Adjacent to (সন্নিহিত)—His school is adjacent to his house.

Admit of (স্বীকৃতি পাওয়া)—Your conduct admits of no excuse.

[Admit is followed by of only when it has an impersonal subject, i. e. it or an abstract noun. But when the subject is personal, admit is not followed by of. I admit (accept) no excuse.]

Admit to (ভর্তি করা)—He was admitted to class-VI.

Admit into (প্রবেশাধিকার দেওয়া)—He was admitted into the room.

Affection for (স্নেহ)—The teacher feels affection for every pupil.

Affectionate to (স্নেহশীল)—He is affectionate to me.

Afraid of (ভীত)—I am not afraid of ghosts.

Agree with (a person), on (a point), to (a proposal). [একমত হওয়া]

I agree with you on this point, but I cannot agree to all the proposals.

Aim at (শিকার করা)—He aimed his gun at the bird.

Alarmed at (আতঙ্কিত)—We were alarmed at the news.

Allot to (বিলি করা)—One room has been allotted to him.

Alternative to (বিকল্প)—This question is alternative to that.

Aloof from (দূরে থাকা)—Keep yourself aloof from bad company.

Ambition for (উচ্চাকাঙ্ক্ষা)—He has no ambition for fame in life.

Angry with (a person), for (something), at (one's conduct) [ক্রুদ্ধ]—

He is angry with me for speaking against him.

I am angry at your conduct.

Annoyed with (a person), for (something) [বিরক্ত]

I was annoyed with him for being late.

Anxious about, for (উদ্বেগ)—I am anxious about your health.

He is anxious for getting a job.

Appeal to (a person), for (something), against (a wrong) [আবেদন করা]

He appealed to the Headmaster for pardon.

The appealed against the verdict of the lower court.

Appetite for (কুখা)—The patient has no appetite for food.

Apply to (a person), for (a thing) [আবেদন করা]

He applied to the Secretary for the post.

Aptitude for (স্বাভাবিক দক্ষতা)—I have no aptitude for Mathematics.

Arrive at (পৌঁছানো)—We arrived at the station in time.

Argue with (a person), for or against (a thing) [যুক্তি দেখানো]

I argued with him for (or against) the point.

Assign to (নির্দিষ্ট করে দেওয়া)—He assigned the task to me.

Ashamed of (শঙ্কিত)—He is not ashamed of his conduct.

Ashamed for (স্বীকৃতি)—I feel ashamed for you. [a.l.d.—Hornby]

Attend to (মনোযোগ দেওয়া)—Attend to your lesson.

Attach to (জুড়ে দেওয়া)—Attach this slip to the letter.

Attend on (upon) [সেবা করা]—She attends on (upon) her mother.

Avail (oneself) of (সুযোগ গ্রহণ করা)—You must avail yourself of it.

Aware of (সচেতন)—He is aware of the fact.

Based on (ভিত্তি থাকা)—Your remarks are not based on facts.

Beg (a Person) for (a thing)—He begged me for the favour.

Beg (a thing) of (a person)—He begged the favour of me.

Believe in (বিশ্বাস করা)—I do not believe in his honesty.

Belong to (অধিকার থাকা)—This book belongs to me.

Bent on (কৌক)—He is bent on doing this.

Beware of (সতর্ক হওয়া)—Beware of pick-pockets.

Blessed with, in—He is blessed with (= possesses) good health.

He is blessed (= happy) in his children.

Blind of (দৃষ্টিশক্তিহীন)—He is blind of one eye.

Blind to (দেখের প্রতি অন্ধ)—He is blind to his own faults.

Blush with, for (শঙ্কায় রাক্ত হওয়া)—She blushed with shame.

[There is no cause to blush for me. (COD)]

Boast of (গর্ব করা)—Do not boast of your wealth.

Born of, in—He was born of poor parents. He was born in Poverty.

Bound for (যাত্রার জন্য প্রস্তুত)—The ship is bound for England.

Brood on, over (মন খাড়াগ করা)—Do not brood over your misfortune.

Burst into (ভেঙ্গে পড়া)—He burst into tears at the sad news.

Burst out (ফেটে পড়া)—He burst out laughing at my joke.

Busy with (ব্যস্ত)—He is busy with his studies.

Callous to (উদাসীন)—He is callous to my suffering.

Capable to (সক্ষম)—He is capable of doing this alone.

Capacity for (যোগ্যতা)—He has a capacity for hard work.

Care for (গ্রাহ্য করা)—I do not care for you.

Care of (যত্ন নেওয়া)—Take care of your health.

Careful of (যত্নবান)—He is careful of his money.

Certain of (নিশ্চিত)—He is now certain of his ground.

Charge (a person) with (a fault), on or against (a person) [অভিযোগ করা]—He was charged with theft. Theft was charged on (against) him.

Close to (নিকটে)—The school is very close to our house.

Clue to (সূত্র)—Find out the clue to the mystery.

Come of (প্রসূত হওয়া)—He comes of a noble family.

Commence on (শুরু করা)—Our examination commences on the 3rd July.

Comment on (মন্তব্য করা)—He commented favourably on the point.

Compare with (সদৃশ্য করা)—to (dissimilar things).

Compare with (সদৃশ্য করা)—Rabindranath may be compared with Shakespeare.

Anger is compared to fire.

Compete with (সদৃশ্য করা)—for (something) [প্রতিযোগিতা করা]—

I competed with him for the first prize.

Complain to (a person), against (another), about (something) [অভিযোগ করা]—The complainant made a complaint to the Director

against the Manager about his behaviour.

Comply with (সেই নেওয়া)—I shall comply with your request.

Composed of (করে)—Water is composed of Hydrogen and Oxygen.

Confident of (স্বীকৃতি করা)—I am confident of success.

Confined in (a room), to (bed) [আবদ্ধ করা]—He is confined in a room for five days. He is confined to bed.

Congratulate on (অভিনন্দিত করা)—I congratulate you on your success.

Conscious of (সচেতন)—He is conscious of his weakness.

Consist of (পড়িত হওয়া)—This class consists of fifty boys.

Consistent with (সামঞ্জস্যপূর্ণ)—Your action is not consistent with the rules.

Consult with (a person), on or about (a thing)—I consulted with him on / about the matter.

Contrary to (বিপরীত)—His action is contrary to his words.

Contribute to (দান হিসাবে দেওয়া)—He contributed one thousand rupees to the Flood Relief Fund.

Control over (নিয়ন্ত্রণ করা)—He has no control over his brother.

Count for (গণনা হওয়া)—His advice counts for nothing, (i.e. of no effect)

Count upon (নির্ভর করা)—I count upon your help for this work.

Cure of (আরোগ্য হওয়া)—He will be cured of the disease very soon.

Cope with (সামন্য করা)—I cannot cope with the situation.

Crave for (আকাঙ্ক্ষা করা)—He craves for wealth. (COD)

Deaf of (বধির)—He is deaf of one ear. (COD)

Deaf to (কেন্দ্রে অসম্ভব)—He is deaf to my request.

Deal in (ব্যবসা করা)—He deals in rice.

Deal with (ব্যবহার করা)—He deals well with the customers.

Dedicate to (উৎসর্গ করা)—This book is dedicated to his father.

Delight in (আনন্দ)—He takes delight in music.

Depend on (নির্ভর করা)—Success depends on hard work.

Deprived of (বঞ্চিত)—He was deprived of his property.

Desire for (ইচ্ছা)—He has no desire for fame.

Desirous of (ইচ্ছুক)—He is desirous of building a new house.

Despair of (নিরাশ হওয়া)—Do not despair of success.

Destined to (ভাগ্য নির্দিষ্ট)—He was destined to death.

Devoid of (বর্জিত)—He is devoid of common sense.

Devote to (উৎসর্গ করা)—He devotes much time to study.

Die of (a disease), from (an effect), for (a cause) by (poison), in (peace)

[মারা যাওয়া]—He died of cholera. He died from over-eating. He died for his country. He died by poison. Let me die in peace.

Differ with (a person), on (a point), in (opinion)

[ভিন্ন মত হওয়া]—I differ with you on this point.

They differ in their opinions.

APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS

Differ from (ভিন্ন হওয়া)—This thing differs from that.

Difference between (পার্থক্য)—There is no difference between the two brothers.

Different from (পৃথক)—This book is different from that.

Diffident of (সমিধ)—I am diffident of success.

Disgrace to (কলঙ্ক)—He is disgrace to his family.

Disgusted with, at (বিরক্ত)—I am disgusted with him at his conduct.

Displeased with (অসন্তুষ্ট)—He is displeased with me.

Dislike for (অপছন্দ)—He has dislike for dogs.

Dislike for (অপছন্দ)—I am displeased with him at his conduct.

Displeased with, at (অসন্তুষ্ট)—He is displeased with me.

Dispose of (বিক্রয় করা)—He disposed of his books.

Distinguish one thing from (another) [প্রভেদ করা]

A child can not distinguish good from evil.

Distinguish between (প্রভেদ করা)—Distinguish between a phrase and a clause.

Divert from (অন্যদিকে নেওয়া)—The loud music diverted my attention

from study.

Divide into (parts) [বিভক্ত করা]—It was divided into several parts.

Divide between (two), among (more than two) [ভাগ করা]

Divide the mangoes between Ram and Shyam.

Divide the mangoes among the boys.

Due to (কারণে)—His absence is due to illness.

Dull of (বোধশক্তিহীন)—He is dull of understanding.

Dull at (কাজ)—He is dull at Physics.

Eager for, about (অগ্রহী)—He is eager for promotion in service.

He is eager about the result. (COD).

Eligible for (যোগ্য)—He is eligible for the post. 18-10-20

Encroach on (অন্যদিকের প্রবেশ করা)—Do not encroach on my land.

End in (শেষ হওয়া)—All his plans ended in smoke.

Endowed with (ভূষিত)—He is endowed with talents.

Engaged with (a person), in (a work) [ব্যাপৃত]

I was engaged with him in talk.

Engaged to (বাগদত্ত)—Lila was engaged to him.

Enquire of (a person), into (a matter) [অনুসন্ধান করা]

He enquired of me into the matter.

Enter into (প্রবেশ করা)—He entered into the room. (also without into).

Envy of (ইর্ষা)—I have no envy of him (P. O. D.)

Envious of (ইর্ষাকর)—I am not envious of his riches.

Entitled to (অধিকারী)—He is entitled to a reward for his honesty.

Equal in (rank), with (a person), to (a task) [সমতুল]

Mr. Bose is equal in rank to Mr. Ghosh.

He rose equal to the occasion.

Escape from (পলায়ন করা)—The man escaped from the village.

Escape by (কাজ পাওয়া)—He escaped by a hair-breadth.

Esteem for (শ্রদ্ধা)—He has esteem for the superiors.

Essential to (অত্যাবশ্যক)—Food is essential to health.

Excel in (তুলনামূলক ভাবে সুন্দর হওয়া)—He excels in painting. (COD)

Excuse for (অব্যাহতি দেওয়া)—He will not be excused for coming late.

Excuse from—They may be excused from complying with this

regulation—(A. L. D.) Hornby.

Exempt from (অব্যাহতি দেওয়া)—He was exempted from the fine.

Faith in (বিশ্বাস)—I have no faith in him.

Faithless (break faith—বিশ্বাস ভঙ্গ করা)—He broke faith with me.

P.C.D. (9A)

Faithful to (বিশ্বস্ত) — The dog is faithful to his master.
 False to (বিশ্বাসহীন) — I cannot be false (unfaithful) to my friend.
 Famous for (বিখ্যাত) — Radhanagar is famous for the birth place of Raja Rammohan.
 Familiar with (দুর্ভিক্ষ) — He is familiar with my brother.
 Fatal to (মারাত্মক) — The doctor's mistake proved fatal to his life.
 Favour with (অগ্রহণ করা) — Would you favour me with an early reply?
 (In) favour of (প্রশংসা) — He spoke in favour of his friend.
 Favourable to (a person), for (something) (অনুকূল) — This situation is favourable to me for doing this.
 Feel for, in (সহানুভূতি অনুভব করা) — I feel for you in your trouble.
 Fit for (যোগ্য) — He is not fit for the job.
 Fond of (অনুরাগ) — She is fond of sweets.
 Free from (মুক্ত) — He is now free from danger.
 Fill with (পূরণ করা) — This tank is filled with water.
 Full of (পূর্ণ) — This tank is full of water.
 Glance at (দ্রষ্টব্য) — He glanced at me casually.
 Good at (প্রদক্ষ) — He is good at tennis. [But, He is good for nothing.]
 Grateful to (a person), for (something) (কৃতজ্ঞ) — I am grateful to you for your help.
 Greed for (লাভ) — He has no greed for wealth.
 Guess at (অনুমান করা) — Can you guess at her age?
 Guilty of (দোষ) — He is guilty of murder.
 Hanker after (লালসিত হওয়া) — Do not hanker after wealth.
 Hard at (কঠোর) — He is hard at work before examination.
 Hard of (কঠোর) — He is hard of hearing.
 Hear of (a person), to (a property) (উদ্ভব করা) — He is the heir of his uncle (to his uncle's property).
 Hope for (অশা) — Let us hope for the best.
 Hungry for (তরু অকৃতজ্ঞ) — His hunger for knowledge surprised us.
 Ignorant of (অজ্ঞ) — He is ignorant of this rule.
 Ill with (অসুস্থ) — He is ill with fever.
 Impose on (প্রত্যাশা) — The task was imposed on me.
 Indebted to (কৃণী, কৃতজ্ঞ) — I am indebted to him for this help.
 Indifferent to (উদাসীন) — He is indifferent to our problem.
 Indulge in (অসক্ত হওয়া) — Do not indulge in wine.
 [But, Do not indulge him with your support.]
 Inform (a person), of (something) (জানানো) — He informed the police of the murder.
 Inferior to (নিম্ন) — This orange is inferior to that.
 Inquire of (a person), about, into (a matter) (অনুসন্ধান করা) — I inquired of him about (into) the matter.
 Insist on (জিদ করা) — He insisted on my going home.
 Interest in (আগ্রহ) — He has a special interest in history.
 Interfere with (a person, in a matter) (ব্যস্ত করা) — Do not interfere with me in my business.
 Invite to (নিমন্ত্রণ করা) — I invited him to dinner.
 Involved in (জড়িত) — He is involved in the plot.
 Jealous of (ঈর্ষা পরাধন) — I am not at all jealous of his fortune.
 Jump at (অগ্রহণ সহকারে গ্রহণ করা) — Do not jump at the offer.

Jump to (তাড়াতাড়ি করে সিদ্ধান্তে আসা) — Do not jump to a conclusion without much thinking.
 Junior to (নিম্নপদ) — He is junior to me in service.
 Junior to (বয়সে কম) — He is junior to me by five years.
 Justification of, for — There is no justification of his conduct.
 Key to (সমাধানের উপায়) — He has found out the key to his problem.
 Kind (N.) of (প্রকার) — What kind of paper is it?
 (So kind (=kindness) of you to see me.)
 Kind (Adj.) to (সদয়) — She is very kind to the children.
 Lack of (অভাব) — I have no lack of friends.
 Lacking in (অভাব আছে এমন) — He is lacking in courage.
 Lame of (বোঁজা) — He is lame of one leg.
 Lament for (বিলাপ করা) — She lamented for her child.
 Late in (দেরি) — Why are you so late in coming?
 Laugh at (দ্বিষ্ট করা) — Do not laugh at the poor.
 Lay by (সঞ্চয় করা) — Lay by something for the old age.
 Liable to (দায়ী) — He is liable to fine for his misconduct.
 Liking for (রুচি) — She has a liking for music.
 Limit to (সীমা) — You should have a limit to your demands.
 Limited to (সীমাবদ্ধ) — Invitation was limited to members only.
 Listen to (শোন) — Listen to me. Listen to the news on the radio.
 Live on (food) (কেনে খাওয়া) — The cow lives on grass.
 Live by (কোন উপায়ে বেঁচে থাকা) — He lives by honest means.
 Live beyond, within (কিছু) — He lives beyond his means.
 He lives within his means. [সে তার উপার্জন অনুযায়ী জীবন যাপন করে।]
 Live for (an ideal) (কেনে থাকা) — He lives for fame.
 Look at (তাকানো) — Look at the moon.
 Look after (দেখাশোনা করা) — There is none to look after her.
 Look for (খোঁজা) — I am looking for a good job.
 Look into (অনুসন্ধান করা) — I am looking into the matter.
 Look over (পরীক্ষা করা) — He is looking over the answer papers.
 Look up (শব্দার্থ খোঁজা) — Look up the word in the dictionary.
 Long for (কামনা করা) — He longed for fame.
 Loyal to (বিশ্বস্ত) — He is loyal to his master.
 Mad with (উন্মাদ গ্রাস) — He is mad with pain.
 Made of (উৎপত্তি) — This ring is made of gold.
 Make for (অগ্রসর হওয়া) — The ship made for England.
 Make out (বুঝতে পারা) — I cannot make out what you say.
 Marry to (বিবাহ দেওয়া) — He married his daughter to a rich man.
 She was married to a rich man.
 Marry (বিবাহ করা) — She married a French man. (A.L.D. — Hornby)
 Mourn for, over (শোক করা) — Don't mourn for (over) the dead.
 Need for, of (প্রয়োজনীয়) — I have no need for more money.
 I am in need of more money.
 Object to (আপত্তি করা) — He objected to my proposal.
 Oblige (a person) with or by (doing) something (বাঁধিত করা) — He obliged me with a loan, or by giving me a loan.
 Obligated to (a person), for (a thing) (কৃতজ্ঞ) — I am obliged to him for his kind help.
 Obstacle to (বাধা) — Poverty is often obstacle to higher studies.
 Obsessed by, with (উদ্ভিগ) — He is obsessed by the idea.

Occupied with (a business) in doing a thing [संलग्न]
He is occupied with his studies.
He is occupied in writing a letter.
Occur to (one's mind) [उत्पन्न]—The idea never occurred to me.
Occur in (an essay a poem etc.)—This line occurs in the poem. The Cloud written by Shelley.
Offend against (अपराध)—You have offended against good manners.
Offended with (a person) at (an action) [विरुद्ध]
I am offended (displeased) with you at your conduct.
Offensive to (विरुद्ध)—This acid smell is offensive to me.
Officiate for (a person), in (a post) [विरुद्ध]
He officiated for me in that post.
Open to (विरुद्ध)—His plan is open to objection.
Open at (विरुद्ध)—Open at page 20.
Opportunity for, of—I have no opportunity for (of) doing the work.
Opposite to (विरुद्ध)—Your idea is opposite to mine.
Our house is opposite to the park.
Overcome with, by (emotion etc.) [विरुद्ध]—He was overcome with fatigue. He was overcome by anger.
Owe to (विरुद्ध)—I owe my all to him.
Parallel to (विरुद्ध)—This road is parallel to that.
Part from (a person), with (a thing) [विरुद्ध]—He parted from his friend. She parted with the ring. [विरुद्ध]
Partial to (विरुद्ध)—He is partial to his son.
Partiality for (विरुद्ध)—He has no partiality for his son.
Pass for (विरुद्ध)—He passes for a clever man.
Pass away (विरुद्ध)—He passed away last night.
Persist in (विरुद्ध)—He persisted in disturbing me.
Pity for (विरुद्ध)—Have pity for the poor.
Play on (विरुद्ध)—He played on guitar.
Plead with (a person) for or against (something) [विरुद्ध]
I pleaded with him for justice (against the wrong done to me).
Pleased with (a person), at (something) [विरुद्ध]
I am pleased with him. I am pleased at the news.
Polite in, to (विरुद्ध)—He is polite in his manners. [विरुद्ध]
Poor in (spirit)—Don't be poor in spirit.
Popular with (विरुद्ध)—He is popular with all for his good behaviour.
Prefer (one) to (another) [विरुद्ध]—I prefer coffee to tea.
Preferable to (विरुद्ध)—Death is preferable to dishonour.
Preside over (विरुद्ध)—He presided over the meeting.
Pretend to (विरुद्ध)—He does not pretend to high birth.
Prevent (one) from (doing something) [विरुद्ध]
I prevented him from going there.
Pride (oneself) on, (take pride in) [विरुद्ध]
He prides himself on (takes pride in) his high birth.
Proud of (विरुद्ध)—He is proud of his position.
Prior to (विरुद्ध)—Prior to that, he was in a wretched condition.
Prohibit from (विरुद्ध)—I prohibited him from going there.
Prompt in (answers), prompt at (figures) [विरुद्ध]—He is prompt in answers. He is prompt at figures.

10-09-09 02.11.09
Pron to (विरुद्ध)—He is prone to idleness.
Proportionate to (विरुद्ध)—Punishment should be proportionate to offence.
Provide against (evil days), for (children), with (a thing) [विरुद्ध]
I provide (supply) him with food.
Qualified for (विरुद्ध)—He is qualified for the post.
Quick at, of (विरुद्ध)—He is quick at figures.
He is quick of understanding.
Quarrel with (विरुद्ध)—They quarrelled with one another for (over, about) the property.
Refer to (विरुद्ध)—Refer the matter to him for enquiry.
Rejoice at, in (विरुद्ध)—Every one rejoiced at (in) her success.
[Nesfield says "rejoice in one's own success" but "rejoice at the success of another." But COD does not make any such distinction]
Relevant to (विरुद्ध)—Your remark is not relevant to the point.
Rely on (विरुद्ध)—You can rely on him.
Remedy for (विरुद्ध)—There is no remedy for this disease. [विरुद्ध]
[Nesfield says "remedy for or against snakebite."]
Remind (one) of (a thing) [विरुद्ध]
I reminded him of his promise.
Render into (विरुद्ध)—Render the passage into Hindi.
Replace (one thing) with another (विरुद्ध) [विरुद्ध]
Replace this chair with a new one. [विरुद्ध]
[In a passive sentence where it is necessary to use by to denote an agent, with must be used before the name of the thing that is substituted. — Current English Usage by F. T. Wood.]
Require (a thing) of (a person) [विरुद्ध]
I required a loan of him.
Resign (oneself) to (विरुद्ध)—I resigned myself to fate.
In respect of, in point of (विरुद्ध)
He is junior to me in respect of service.
With respect to (विरुद्ध)
We are talking with respect to that matter.
Respond to (विरुद्ध)—Nobody responded to my call.
Responsible to (an authority) for (विरुद्ध)
He is responsible to the committee for his action.
Rest with, upon (विरुद्ध)—The whole matter rests (depends) with you. I rest upon (rely on) your promise.
Restore to (विरुद्ध)—Restore his property to him.
Restrict to (विरुद्ध)—Admission was restricted to students.
Retire from, on (विरुद्ध)—He retired from service on a pension.
Rich in (विरुद्ध)—Bihar is rich in minerals.
Rid of (विरुद्ध)—Get rid of bad company.
Rob of (विरुद्ध)—Somebody robbed him of his purse.
Sanguine of (विरुद्ध)—She is sanguine of her success.
Satisfied with, of (विरुद्ध)—I am satisfied with him.
I am satisfied of the truth.
Satisfaction in, with (विरुद्ध)—[विरुद्ध] find satisfaction in gardening.
Great was his satisfaction with her result.
Search for (विरुद्ध)—Their search for the thing was of no avail.

APPLIED ENGLISH GRAMMAR & COMPOSITION

(In) search of (অনুসন্ধান বাত)-They are in search of a nice bird.
Sensible of (বোধ সম্পন্ন)-She is sensible of the risk.
Sensitive to (সংবেদনশীল)-She is sensitive to cold.
Sentence (to, for (দণ্ডনেশ দেওয়া)- He was sentenced to death for murder.

Senior to (বয়সে বড়, উচ্চপদস্থ)-He is senior to me by four years.
I am senior to him in service. (উচ্চ পদে)
Send for (ডেকে পাঠানো)-Send for a doctor immediately.
Sick of, for (শীড়িত, কাত)-I am sick of a fever. I am sick of this idle life. He is sick for home.

Similar to (সদৃশ)-This pen is similar to that.
Sink in (mud), into (the sea, river etc.) | অবতর হওয়া, ডুবে যাওয়া |
He sank in mud. or The ship sank into the sea.
Slow of (speech), at (figures), in (doing something) | ধীর |
He is slow of speech. He is slow at figures. He is slow in writing.
Smell of (গন্ধ দেয়া)-This glass smells of wine.
Smile on (অনুগ্রহ করা)- Fortune smiled on him.

Stare at (একদৃষ্টিতে তাকানো)- She stared at me.
Stick to (দৃঢ়ভাবে লেগে থাকা)- He sticks to his decision.
Subject to (শর্তবীন)-This is subject to approval of the committee.
Succeed in (সফল্য লাভ করা)-He will succeed in life.
Suffer from (কষ্ট পাওয়া)-He is suffering from fever.

Superior to (উর্ধ্বতন)-This type of rice is superior to that.
Supply (a person) with (a thing), to (a person) | যোগান দেওয়া |
He supplied us with food. He supplied food to us.
Sure of (নিশ্চিত)-I am sure of success.

Sympathy for (সহানুভূতি)-I have no sympathy for him.
Take after (সদৃশ হওয়া)-The boy takes after his father.
Talk to, with (a person), of, about, over (a thing) | কথা বলা |
I am talking to (with) Mr. Roy of (about, over) the matter.
Taste for (রুচি)-She has no taste for music.

Tell upon (কর্তি করা)-Over-eating tells upon health.
Tide over (অতিক্রম করা)- He will soon tide over the difficulty.
Tired of (ক্লান্ত)-I am tired of doing the same thing day after day.
Think of, about (a person), Over (something) | চিন্তা করা |
What do you think of (about) him?

Think carefully over his advice.
Tolerant of (সহিষ্ণু)- We must be tolerant of opposition.
Triumph over (জয় করা)-Jim and Della triumphed over their poverty.
True to (বিশ্বস্ত)- He is true to his master.

Trust (a person) with (a thing), to (a person), in God | বিশ্বাস করা |
You may trust me with the work. You may trust the work to me.
Trust in God.

Unite with (ঐক্যবদ্ধ হওয়া)-Be united with your friends.

Useful to (a person), for (some purpose) | প্রয়োজনীয় |

This book is useful to us for examination.

Vain of (অহঙ্কারী)-She is vain of her beauty.

Vary from (আলাদা হওয়া)-His opinion varies from his brother's.

Vexed with (a person), for, at (a thing) | বিরক্ত |

He is vexed with me at my conduct. He is vexed with me for opposing him.

APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS

193

Vain of (বিরহীন)-He is vain of common sense.
Wait for (অপেক্ষা করা)-I waited for him for two hours.
Wait on (সেবা করা)-The nurse waited on the patient.
Want of (অভাব)-We have no want of money.
Wanting in (বিরহীন)-He is wanting in common sense.
Warn of (সতর্ক করা)-He warned me of the danger.
Weak in (কোঁচা)-He is weak in Mathematics.
Weak of (দুর্বল)-He is weak of understanding.

Weary of (ক্লান্ত)-He is weary of hard life.
Wish for (স্বাস্থ্যসা করা)-I do not wish for name and fame.
Wonder at (অনাক হওয়া)-I wonder at his ignorance.
Worthy of (যোগ্য)-He is worthy of our praise.
Yield to (আত্মসমর্পণ করা)-He yielded to his enemy.
Zeal for (প্রবল উৎসাহ)-He has a zeal for social work.
Zealous for, in (অগ্রহী)-He is zealous for improvement.
He is zealous in a good cause.
Zest for (অনুরাগ)-She has no zest for music.

The Appropriate Prepositions are very difficult to remember. But if we arrange them in accordance with prepositions, we can notice some sort of similarity and it becomes easy to learn. Moreover our ear is tuned with the use of Prepositions.

Appropriate Preposition হলি মানে রাখা খুব কষ্টকর। কিন্তু এগুলিকে যদি আমরা এক একটি Preposition অনুযায়ী সাজিয়ে দি, তাহলে এদের মধ্যে কিছু কিছু সাদৃশ্য দেখা যাবে এবং তখন এগুলি শেখা অনেক সহজ হবে। তাছাড়া এতে কানের মধ্যে একটা সুর তৈরি হয়ে যায়।

For

The following words take the preposition for after them. You have learnt the meaning of the words. Now see them systematically. নিচের শব্দগুলির পরে 'for' preposition বসে। তোমরা শব্দগুলির অর্থ আগেই শিখেছ। এখন সেগুলি টিকমতো সাজিয়ে দেখ।

Nouns : (for)

| | | |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| affection for | apology for | motive for |
| ambition for | appetite for | opportunity for |
| anxiety for | aptitude for | partiality for |
| compassion for | blame for | passion for |
| compensation for | candidate for | pity for |
| contempt for | capacity for | pretext for |
| craving for | greed for | remedy for |
| desire for | guarantee for | reputation for |
| dislike for | hunger for | shame for |
| esteem for | leisure for | taste for |
| fitness for | liking for | zeal for |
| fondness for | match for | zest for |

Adjectives & Participles : (for)

| | | |
|----------------|------------|----------------|
| anxious for | famous for | sorry for |
| bound for | fit for | sufficient for |
| celebrated for | good for | useful for |

conspicuous for
customary for
designed for
distinguished for (something)
edger for
eligible for
eminent for

favourable for
grateful for
necessary for
notorious for
penitent for
prepared for
proper for
qualified for
ready for

sorry for
sufficient for
zealous for

Verbs : (for)

be for
care for
cheer for
feel for
hope for
long for
lament for
mourn for

make for
pine for
pray for
start for
stipulate for
wait for
wish for
yearn for

From

The following words take the preposition *from* after them.
[নিচের শব্দগুলির পরে 'from' preposition বসে।]

Nouns : (from)

abstinence (বিরতি) from
cessation (নিবৃত্তি) from
descent (অবতরণ) from
digression (ভ্রম) from

escape from
exemption from
inference from
respite from

Adjective & Participles : (from)

absent (অবস্থিত) from
alienated (হতাশ) from
disqualified (অযোগ্য) from
distinct (স্বতন্ত্র) from

precluded (নিবৃত্ত) from
remote (দূরবর্তী) from

Verbs : (from)

abstain from
alight from
avert from
cease from
debar from
derive from
derogate from
desist from
detract from
deviate from

differ from
digress from
dissent from
dissuade from
elicit from
emerge from
escape from
exclude from
excuse from
preserve from

prevent from
prohibit from
protect from
quote from
recoil from
recover from
refrain from
result from
retire from
very from

In

The following words take the preposition *in* after them.
[নিচের শব্দগুলির পরে 'in' preposition বসে।]

Nouns : (in)

complicity (সহযোগিতা) in (a crime)
concurrence (সম্মতি) in (a proposal)
confidence (বিশ্বাস) in (a person)
experience in (doing something)
faith in (a person or thing)

jurisdiction in (a law suit)
laxity (নির্বলতা) in (morals)
readiness (উৎসাহ) in
answering
temperance (নিয়ন্ত্রণ) in diet

Adjectives & Participles : (in)

absorbed (আগত) in (study etc.)
accomplished (তপস্বী) in (art etc.)
accurate in (statistics etc.)
apt (সুস্থ) in (Mathematics etc.)
assiduous (অধ্যবসায়ী) in (studies)
backward in (something)
bigoted (গোঁড়া) in (opinion)
confirmed in (a habit)
correct in (a statement)
defective in (point of style)
deficient in (energy)
diligent in (business)
engaged in (business)
entangled in (a plot)
enveloped in (mist)
experienced in (something)
fertile in (resources)
foiled (পরাজিত) in (an attempt)
fruitful in (resources)
held in (esteem)
honest in (dealings)

impressed in (thought)
implicated in (a crime)
indebted in (a large sum)
interested in (a person or thing)
invested in (govt paper)
involved in (difficulties)
lavish in (expenditure)
lax in (morals)
obstinate in (resistance)
polite in (manners)
poor in (spirit)
proficient in (any subject)
profuse in (offers)
remiss (হতবুদ্ধি) in (duties)
rich in (property)
skilful/slothful in (business)
slow in (doing something)
temperate in (habits)
veiled in (mystery)
versed in (any subject)
weak in (head)
zealous in (a cause)

Verbs : (in)

abound in (fish etc.)
arrive in (a country)
believe in (one's honesty)
consist in (facts or results)
dabble in (politics)
deal in (cloth etc.)
delight in (music etc.)
employ in (a work)
enlist in (the army etc.)
excel in (languages etc.)
fail in (an attempt)

fall in (love)
glory in (success)
increase in (wisdom)
indulge in (wine)
involve in (debt)
join in (a game)
labour in (a good cause)
originate in (a thing or place)
preserve in (an effort)
persist in (doing something)
rejoice in (own success)

of

The following words take the preposition *of* after them.
[নিচের শব্দগুলির পরে 'of' preposition বসে।]

Nouns : (of)

| | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| abatement (হ্রাস) of (the fever) | freedom of (action) |
| abhorrence (বৃণ) of (ingratitude) | hatred of or for (a person) |
| assurance (নিশ্চয়তা) of (help) | heir (উত্তরাধিকারী) of (a person) |
| betrayal (বিশ্বাসভঙ্গ) of (a secret) | hope of or for (better luck) |
| cause of (troubles) | imputation of (guilt) |
| charge of (murder etc.) | infliction of (punishment) |
| consciousness of (guilt) | judge of (a matter) |
| consideration of (a thing) | proof of (guilt) |
| conviction of (guilt) | (in) pursuance of (an object) |
| decision of (some dispute) | relation of (one thing to another) |
| distrust of (a person or thing) | result of (a proceeding) |
| doubt of or about (a thing) | (in) search of (wealth) |
| economy of (time) | tenacity of (purpose) |
| endurance (সহনশক্তি) of (pain) | want of (memory) |
| evasion of (a rule) | witness of (an event) |
| experience of (a thing) | |

Adjectives & Participles : (of)

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| accused (অভিযুক্ত) of (a crime) | composed of (a material) |
| acquitted (মুক্ত) of (a charge) | confident of (success) |
| afraid (ভীত) of (death) | conscious of (a fault) |
| ambitious of (distinction) | convicted of (a crime) |
| apprehensive of (danger) | greedy of (riches) |
| apprised of (a fact) | guilty of (theft) |
| ashamed of (dullness) | healed of (a disease) |
| assured of (the truth) | heedless of (consequences) |
| aware of (intentions) | hopeful of (success) |
| bereft of (a child) | ignorant of (any subject) |
| blind of (one eye) | impatient of (reproof) |
| convinced of (a fact) | inclusive of (extras) |
| covetous (লালশ) of (goods) | independent of (parents) |
| cured of (a disease) | indicative of (motives) |
| defeated of (purpose) | informed of (a fact) |
| defrauded of (earnings) | innocent of (a charge) |
| depleted of (strength) | irrespective of (consequences) |
| deprived of (something) | lame of (one leg) |
| deserving of (praise) | lavish of (money) |
| desirous of (success) | neglectful of (interests) |
| despondent of (success) | negligent of (duties) |
| destitute of (money) | productive of (wealth) |
| devoid of (common sense) | proud of (position) |
| diligent of (success) | quick of (understanding) |
| disappointed of (anything) | receptive of (advice) |
| distrustful of (a man's motives) | reckless of (expenditure) |
| dull of (understanding) | regardless of (consequences) |
| easy of (access) | repentant of (sin) |
| empty of (contents) | sanguine of (success) |
| envious of (another's success) | sensible of (kindness) |
| fearful of (something) | sick of (waiting) |

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| fond of (something) | slow of (hearing) |
| full of (persons or things) | subversive of (discipline) |
| born of (rich parents) | sure of (success) |
| capable of (improvement) | suspicious of (meaning) |
| careful of (money) | thankful of (favours) |
| cautious (সতর্ক) of (anything) | tired of (doing something) |
| certain of (success) | vain of (fine dress etc.) |
| cognisant of (a truth) | weary of (doing something) |
| commemorative of (a victory) | worthy of (praise) |

Verbs : (of)

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| accuse of (some misdeed) | dream of (strange things) |
| acquit of (blame) | fail of (a purpose) |
| admit of (an excuse) | heal of (a disease) |
| beware of (something) | hear of (an event) |
| boast of (something) | inform a person of (a thing) |
| complain of (something) | inquire of (a person) |
| consist of (materials) | judge of or by (something) |
| convict a person of (a crime) | purge the mind of (false notions) |
| convince a person of (a fact) | repent of (misdeed) |
| cure a man of (a disease) | smell of (fish) |
| die of (a disease) | suspect of (treachery) |
| dispose (বিক্রয় করা) of (property) | taste of (salt) |

On

The following words take the preposition *on* after them.
[নিচের শব্দগুলির পরে 'on' preposition বসে।]

Nouns : (on)

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| assault (হুমকি) on | lecture on (a subject) |
| (a person or thing) | onslaught on (a person) |
| attack (আক্রমণ) on (a place) | operation on (a thing) |
| authority on (a subject) | outlook on (the sea) |
| controversy (বিতর্ক) on (a point) | outlook from (a window) |
| decision on (some case) | parody on (a subject) |
| dependence on (a person or thing) | premium on (gold) |
| imposition on (the public) | revenge on (a person) |
| infliction on (the guilty) | slur (কলঙ্ক) on (his name) |
| influence on (a man's action) | subsistence on (rice) |

Adjectives & Participles : (on)

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| based on (something) | entailed on (a person) |
| bent on (doing something) | founded on (a fact) |
| conditional on (something) | imperative on (a person) |
| consequent on (some cause) | incumbent on (a person) |
| determined on (doing a thing) | resolved on (doing a thing) |
| engraved on (the memory) | silent on (a point) |

Verbs : (on)

calculate on (success)
 decide on (something)
 err on (the side of leniency)
 encroach on (one's authority)
 expatiate on (a subject)
 fall on (the enemy)
 fire on (a city)
 gain on (someone in a race)
 harp on (something)
 hinge (নির্ভর করা) on (an event)
 impose (প্রতিষ্ঠা করা) on (a person)
 infringe on (a man's rights)

insist on (something being done)
 intrude on (one's leisure)
 lean on (a staff)
 meditate on (some subject)
 operate on (a patient)
 ponder (ধ্যান করা) on (a subject)
 pounce (সম্পূর্ণ পড়া) on (a thing)
 prevail on (a person) to do something
 pride oneself on (a thing)
 smile (হাস্য করা) on (a person)
 speak on (a subject)
 trample (পদদলিত করা) on (justice)

To

The following words take the preposition *to* after them.
 [নিচের শব্দগুলির পরে 'to' preposition থাকে]

Nouns : (to)

access (অবকাশ) to (a person or place)
 adherence to (a plan or cause)
 allusion to (something)
 alternative to (something)
 antidote to (some poison)
 antipathy to (a person or thing)
 approach to (anything)
 assert to (an opinion)
 attachment to (a person or thing)
 attention to (study etc.)
 attraction to (a thing)
 exception to (a rule)
 hostility to (a person or cause)
 incentive to (industry)
 indifference to (heat or cold)
 invitation to (a dinner)
 key to (a mystery)
 leniency to (a person or rule)
 likeness to (a person or thing)
 limit to (a man's zeal)
 menace to (the public health)
 nomination to (a post)
 obedience to (parents, orders etc.)
 objection to (a proposal)
 obstruction to (traffic)
 opposition to (a person)
 concession to (a demand)
 condemnation to (death)
 conformity to (rule)
 contrast to (a person or thing)

contribution to (a fund)
 disgrace to (a person)
 dislike to (a person or thing)
 drawback to (success)
 duty to (a person)
 enmity to (a person)
 enmity with (a person)
 [—Wren & Martin]
 [—Nesfield]
 postscript to (a letter)
 preface to (a book)
 reference to (a person or thing)
 reply to (a letter)
 repugnance (বিরুদ্ধতা) to (wishes)
 resemblance to (a person or thing)
 resignation to (fate)
 resistance (সংরোধ) to (injustice)
 responsibility to (the law)
 But, responsibility for (an action)
 sequel (সম্প্রসঙ্গ) to (an event)
 submission to (authority)
 subscription to (a fund)
 succession to (an estate)
 supplement to (a book)
 temptation to (an evil)
 testimony to (one's character)
 testimony against (one's character)
 title to (an estate)
 A victim to (oppression)
 The victim of (oppression)

Adjectives & Participles : (to)

abandoned to (his fate)
 acceptable to (a person)
 accessory to (a crime)
 accustomed to (riding etc.)
 adapted for (an occupation)
 adequate to (his wants)
 adverse to (his interests)
 agreeable to (his wishes)
 alien to (his character)
 amenable to (reason)
 answerable to (a person)
 answerable for (his conduct)
 apparent to (any one)
 appropriate to (an occasion)
 averse to (hard work)
 blind to (faults)
 close to (a person or thing)
 comparable to (something else)
 condemned to (death)
 conformable to (reason)
 consecrated to (a person)
 creditable to (his judgement)
 derogatory to (his character)
 devoted to (a person or cause)
 due to (some cause)
 equal to (the occasion)
 exposed to (danger)
 false to (his friends)
 favourable to (his prospects)
 hostile to (his endeavours)
 immaterial to (the point)
 impervious to (water)
 inclined to (laziness)
 indifferent to (heat or cold)
 indispensable to (success)
 indulgent in (wine)
 insensible to (shame)
 irrelevant to (a question)
 limited to (a certain area)
 loyal to (the government)
 natural to (a person)
 obedient to (parents etc.)
 offensive to (a person)
 opposite to (a place)
 paramount to (everything else)
 peculiar to (a person or thing)
 pledged to (someone)
 polite to (strangers)
 polite in (manners)
 prejudicial to (his interests)

abhorrent to (his feelings)
 accessible to (strangers)
 accountable to (a person)
 adapted to (his tastes)
 addicted to (bad habits)
 adjacent to (place)
 affectionate to (a person)
 akin to (a person or thing)
 alive to (the consequences)
 allied to (a thing)
 allied with (a person or country)
 analogous to (a thing)
 applicable to (a case)
 astonishing to (a person)
 beneficial to (a person)
 callous to (suffering)
 common to (several persons or things)
 complaisant to (a person)
 conducive to (success)
 congenial to (one's tastes)
 contrary to (rule)
 deaf to (entreaties)
 detrimental to (health)
 disastrous to (a person etc.)
 entitled to (a hearing)
 essential to (something)
 faithful to (a master)
 fatal to (his prospects)
 foreign to (the purpose)
 hurtful to (health)
 impertinent to (his master)
 incidental to (a journey)
 indebted to (a person)
 indigenous to (a country)
 indulgent to (his children)
 inimical to (a person)
 injured (হত) to (some habits)
 liable to (error)
 lost to (all sense of shame)
 material to (success)
 necessary to (happiness)
 obliged to (a person)
 opposed to (facts)
 painful to (one's feeling)
 partial to (someone)
 pertinent to (a question)
 preferable to (something else)
 precious to (a person)
 preloved to (a title-deed)
 preliminary to (an inquiry)

preparatory to (an inquiry)
 previous to (some event)
 profitable to (an investor)
 reconciled to (a position)
 reconciled with (an opponent)
 relevant to (a question)
 repulsive to (his feelings)
 requisite for (a purpose)
 restricted to (something)
 sensitive to (blame)
 similar to (a person or thing)
 subject to (authority)
 subsequent to (another event)
 suitable to (the occasion)
 suited to (the occasion)
 supplementary to (something)
 true to (his convictions)

preventive to (fever)
 prior to (something else)
 prone to (idleness)
 reduced to (poverty)
 related to (a person)
 repugnant to (his wishes)
 requisite to (happiness)
 responsible to (a person)
 sacred to (a man's memory)
 serviceable to (a person)
 strange to (a person)
 subordinate to (a person)
 subsidiary to (trade)
 suitable for (his income)
 suited for (a post)
 tantamount to (a falsehood)
 vital to (health)

Verbs : (to)

accede to (a request)
 adapt to (circumstances)
 agree to (a proposal)
 allude to (a fact)
 answer to (a person)
 answer for (conduct)
 ascribe to (a cause)
 assent to (one's terms)
 attend to (a book or speaker)
 belong to (a person)
 cling to (a person or thing)
 compare to (a dissimilar thing)
 conduce to (happenings)
 consent to (a proposal)
 correspond to (something)
 demur to (a statement)
 devote one's time to (sport etc.)
 explain to (a person)
 invite a man to (dinner)
 jump at (an offer)
 jump to (a conclusion)
 listen to (something)
 occur to (one's mind)
 occur in (a poem etc.)
 prefer one thing to (another)
 proceed to (a business not yet commenced)
 proceed with (a business already commenced)
 refer to (a subject)
 stoop to (incanness)
 succumb to (difficulties)
 supply a person with (a thing)
 testify to (a fact)

accrue to (a person)
 adhere to (a plan)
 allot to (a person)
 apologise to (a person)
 apologise for (rudeness)
 appeal to (a person)
 appeal for or against (something)
 appoint to (a situation)
 aspire to (an object)
 attain to (a high place)
 attribute to (a cause)
 certify to (a man's character)
 communicate a thing to (a person)
 concede to (some demand)
 conform to (a rule)
 contribute to (a fund)
 defer to (a man's wishes)
 dispute with (a person) on (a matter)
 entitle any one to (an estate)
 impute blame to (a person)
 keep to (a point)
 keep (abstain) from (wine)
 lead to (Calcutta etc.)
 object to (a proposal)
 pretend to (omniscience)
 revert to (an appointment)
 submit to (authority)
 supply a thing to (a person)
 surrender to (the enemy)
 trust to (a man's honesty—Intr.)
 trust in (a person—Intr.)
 trust a man with (money—tran.)
 yield to (some person or thing)
 turn to (a friend) for (help)

With

The following words take the preposition *with* after them.
 [নিচের শব্দগুলির পরে 'with' preposition বসে।]

Nouns : (With)

accomplish with (a person)
 (in) accordance with (a rule)
 alliance with (a person or thing)
 bargain with (a person)
 bargain for (a thing)
 collusion with (a person)
 comparison with (a person or thing)
 concurrence with (a person)
 concurrence in (a proposal)
 condolence with (a person)
 contact with (something)
 controversy on or about (something)
 controversy with (a person)
 conversation with (a person)
 correspondence with (a person)
 correspondence to (a thing)
 engagement with (a person)
 enmity with (a person)
 harmony with (anything)
 intercession with (a superior)
 intercession for (a friend)
 intercourse with (a person)
 intimacy with (a person)

atone in (some crime)
 acquaintance with (a person or thing)
 cohere with (a person)
 compact with (a person)
 competition with (a person)
 competition for (a thing)
 compliance with (a request)
 conformity with (any one's views)
 conformity to (rule)
 connection with (a person or thing)
 (in) contrast with (a person or thing)
 disagreement with (a person)
 engagement with (a business)
 familiarity with (a person or thing)
 identity with (a person or thing)
 interview with (a person)
 quarrel with (another person)
 quarrel between (two persons)
 relations with (a person)
 rupture with (a friend)
 rupture between (two persons)
 share of (a thing)
 share of (a thing)
 (in) unison with (his character)

Adjectives & Participles : (with)

abounding with or in fish
 afflicted with (rheumatism)
 aggravated with (a person)
 aggravated at (a thing)
 blessed with (good health)
 charged with (a crime)
 charged (loaded) with (a bullet)
 charged to (his account)
 commensurate with (one's desires)
 compliant with (one's wishes)
 consistent with (honesty)
 contented with (something)
 conversant with (persons or things)
 delighted with (success)
 disgusted with (a thing)
 distracted with (pain)
 endowed with (natural ability)
 exhausted with (labour)
 fascinated with (a person or thing)
 flushed with (victory)
 gifted with (abilities)

acquainted with (a person or thing)
 angry with (a person)
 angry at (a thing)
 annoyed at (a thing)
 annoyed with (a person)
 beset with (difficulties)
 buse with (his lessons)
 collateral with (something else)
 compatible with (one's temper)
 compounded with (something else)
 contemporary with (a person or event)
 contrasted with (something else)
 convulsed with (laughter)
 deluged with (water)
 displeased with (a person)
 drenched with (water)
 even (= equal) with (a rival)
 familiar with (a person or thing)
 fatigued with (doing something)
 fraught with (danger)
 honoured with (something)

identical with (anything)
imbued with (confidence)
indignant with (a person)
inspired with (hope)
invested with (full powers)
occupied with (some work)
overcome with (sorrow)
parallel with or to (anything)
replete with (comfort)
satisfied with (his income)
stained with (crimes)
sympathetic with (sufferers)

ill with (fever)

infected with (small pox etc.)
infested with (rats)
infatuated with (a person)
intimate with (a person)
mad with (disappointment)
occupied in (reading a book)
overwhelmed with (grief)
popular with (some persons)
satiated with (pleasure)
simultaneous with (an event)
synonymous with (another word)
touched with (anything)

Verbs: (With)

accord with or to (a thing)
agree with (a person)
agree to (a proposal)
bear with (a man's impatience)
close with (an offer)
combat with (difficulties)
concur with (a person)
concur in (an opinion)
condole with (a person)
cope with (a person)
correspond with a person (write)
correspond to something (agree)
deal with a person (behave)
deal with a subject (write on)
deal in rice etc. (trade in)
deluge with (water)
dispense with (a man's services)
entrust anyone with (a thing)
entrust a thing to (anyone)
expostulate (প্রতিবাদ করা) with (a person)
flirt with (a person)
grapple with (difficulties)
inspire a man with (courage)
intrigue with (the opposite party)
menace (ভীত করা) with (punishment)
part (বিদায় লওয়া বা বিচ্ছিন্ন হওয়া)
with (a person or thing)—Nesfield.
reconcile with (an adversary)
remonstrate with (a person)
remonstrate against (some proceeding)
side with (a person) in (dispute)
trifle with (a man's feelings)
vie (প্রতিযোগিতা করা) with (another person).

argue with (a person)
argue for or against (a point)
associate with (a person or thing)
clash with (one's meaning)
coincide with (one's opinion)
comply with (one's wishes)
content with (a person)
credit with (good intentions)
debit with (a sum of money)
disagree with (a person or thing)
exchange with (a person)
fill with (anything)
fill in or up (the blanks)
furnish a person with (a thing)
impress a person with (an idea)
impress an idea on (a person)
indorse with (a signature)
indulge oneself with (wine)
indulge in (wine)
interfere with (a person)
interfere in (some matter)
intersect with (each other)
meddle (অব্যবহার করা) with (other men's business)
overwhelm with (kindness)
participate with (a person)
participate in (something)
quake with (fear)
quarrel with (some one)
quarrel over or about (something)
reason with (a person)
reason about (something)
reward a man with (something) for (something done)
sympathise with (a person) in (his troubles)

বিশেষভাবে লক্ষণীয়

affection for, ambition for, anxiety for, desire for, dislike for ইত্যাদি।
differ from, escape from, preserve from, prevent from, prohibit from, protect from, quote from, recover from, refrain from ইত্যাদি।
absorbed in, apt in, engaged in, backward in, defective in ইত্যাদি।
afraid of, ashamed of, blind of (one eye), lame of (one leg), deaf of (one ear), dull of (understanding), hard of (hearing), sure of, sanguine of, tired of, weary of, worthy of ইত্যাদি।

Preposition অনুযায়ী শব্দগুলি পাশাপাশি পড়লে একধরনের সাদৃশ্য পাওয়া যাবে, যা appropriate preposition-এর মতো কর্তৃক বিবরণের মনে রাখতে অনেক সাহায্য করবে।

Special Prepositions

Than : This word is usually a conjunction, but is sometimes used as a Preposition.
I cannot accept less than fifty rupees for this article. (than—Prep.)

—Wren & Martin.

[Than যত্নবতঃ conjunction হলেও উপরে বাক্যের মতো কিছু ক্রেটে Preposition।]
He is taller than I (am). [not me] Here 'than' is a Conjunction.]

But : As a rule but is a Conjunction. When used as a Preposition but means except.
[But যত্নবতঃ Conjunction হলেও except বা ব্যতীত / ছাড়া অর্থে কিছু ক্রেটে Preposition হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

—Wren & Martin.

All is lost but honour. (সম্মান ছাড়া সবই গেছে।)
She returned all the gifts but one. (সে একটি ছাড়া সব উপহার ফেরত দিল।)
None but the brave deserves the fair. (সাহসী ছাড়া কেউই সুন্দরের যোগ্য হতে পারে না।)

Nobody will help you but me. (not I) আমাকে বাদ দিয়ে কেউ তোমাকে সাহায্য করবে না।

But is a conjunction where it does not mean except.
[কিন্তু But 'ব্যতীত' অর্থে ব্যবহৃত না হলে Conjunction হয়।]

The boy is intelligent but failed in the examination [but—Conjunction]

Some Common errors in Preposition

আমরা তাঁর কাছে ইংরেজি পড়ি—We read English with him. (near him নয়)

আমাকে লেখার জন্য একটি কলম দাও—Give me a pen to write with. (তুমি write নয়)

তোমার কাছে বইটি বেশে দাও—Keep the book with you. (near you নয়)

বইটির পনের পাতা খোল—Open at page 15 of the book. (page 15 নয়)

রামের সঙ্গে সীতার বিবাহ হলো—Ram was married to Sita. (with নয়)

তাকে বসতে একটা চেয়ার দাও—Give him a chair to sit on (to sit নয়)

তিনি আমার উপর রাগ করেছেন—He is angry with me. (upon নয়)

তুমি কোথা থেকে আসছ—Where do you come from? (from where নয়)

তিনি অসুস্থতার জন্য স্কুলে আসতে পারেন নি—He could not come to school on

account of illness. (due to নয়)

আমি বাড়ী গিয়েছিলাম—I went home. (to home নয়—কারণ এখানে home শব্দটি here, there—এর মতো adverb)

EXERCISE

1. Complete the following sentences with appropriate prepositions.

- (a) He is absent — school. (k) He is not fit — the job.
 (b) He was admitted — class-VI. (l) I am fond — sweets.
 (c) This book belongs — him. (m) I prefer sweets — meat.
 (d) Are you busy — your studies? (n) You can rely — him.
 (e) Take care — your health. (o) He is senior — me.
 (f) He will comply — my request. (p) She is junior — him.
 (g) He has not control — his son. (q) This is superior — that.
 (h) The man is eligible — the post. (r) This is inferior — that.
 (i) They will not be excused — coming late. (s) He is waiting — me.
 (j) She is familiar — my parents. (t) She waited — the patient.

2. Insert suitable prepositions in the following passages.

A list of prepositions to be inserted is given on the right column.

- (a) Mr. John is a European. He deals — umbrella. of.
 But he deals well — the customers. He is aware — in.
 good relations — the customers. He has invited to.
 some of them — dinner today. with.
 (b) Karim died — cholera. But his friend, Abdul died for.
 — over-eating though he wished to die — his from.
 country. of.
 (c) The man is blind — one eye. But he is not blind to.
 his son's faults. He knows very well that his son is lame of.
 one leg. He is also hard — hearing. However he on.
 devotes much time — study. He hopes that fortune after.
 will smile he devotes — him. He is not ashamed — his
 physical deformity. He does not hanker — name
 or fame.
 (d) I agree — you — this point. But I cannot agree at, to.
 — your previous proposal. However, you should not on, for.
 be angry — me — speaking — you. I am not at against.
 all angry — your conduct. with.
 (e) He is fond — sweets. But I prefer fruit — sweets. to.
 In fact fruit and honey are preferable — fish or meat. on, of.
 But my friend differs — me — this point. with.
 (f) You should abide — the rules of the school and you by, to.
 should not be absent — school. Your school is adjacent for.
 — your house and so you will not be excused — from.
 coming late.
 (g) She is proud — her wealth. But you should not at, in.
 take pride — your health or wealth. You should not be of, for.
 devoid — common sense. Moreover, you should not
 laugh — the poor and you should have zeal — social
 work.

3. Write in your own English with the help of appropriate prepositions.

তোমার বিত্তকে তুলির অভিযোগ আনা হয়েছিল। আমি তোমার বিত্তকে আনা অভিযোগ থেকে তোমাকে বাতাস (acquit) দিলাম। আমি তার মধ্যক সমস্ত ব্যাপারে খোঁজ নিয়েছিলাম (enquire)। সে কলকাতার মতো নি, আত্মহত্যা করেও মরে নি, বেশ খেতে মারা গিয়েছে। সে চাকের বাদসা করে, কিন্তু খদ্দেরদের সঙ্গে পারাপার ব্যবহার করে। চিরিটার ব্যাপারে আমি তোমাকে বিশ্বাস করেছিলাম (entrust)। নদীতে প্রচুর মত আছে (abound)। সে চুক্তি মেনে চলবে (abide) বলে প্রতিজ্ঞা করেছিল। সংজ্ঞাও বেড়ে থাকতে চেষ্টা কর, আর যদি বড় আয়ের সাহায্যে বেড়ে থাকতে চাও, তাহলে তোমার নিজের উপকারের মতোই কাজ। অনেকটাই ব্যাতির জনা বাঁচতে চায়, কিন্তু নিজের সামর্থ্যকে ভুলিয়ে যায়। তুমি যা করবে তাই তুমি তোমার কমা চাও (apologise) উচিত। তোমার কাজ তোমার ওপরে সঙ্গত (consistent) নয়। তুমি সব থেকে মুক্ত হতে (get rid) চেষ্টা কর।

CHAPTER-18

MORE ABOUT CONJUNCTIONS

A Conjunction is a word used for joining—

- (1) one word to another word.
 (2) one word to a clause,
 (3) one sentence to another sentence. (i.e. one clause to another clause)

Conjunction দুটি শব্দ বা দুটি বাক্যকে বা কখনো একটি শব্দ ও একটি বাক্যংশকে যুক্ত করার জন্য ব্যবহৃত হয়।

One word joined to another word.

When two words are joined together by a conjunction, each is usually of the similar part of speech.

Conjunction সাধারণতঃ একই ধরনের দুটি Part of Speech-কে যুক্ত করে।
 Thus, a noun is joined to a noun or a pronoun; a verb to a verb; an adjective to an adjective; an adverb to an adverb; and a preposition to a preposition.

Noun to Noun—Ram and Shyam are two brothers.

Noun to Pronoun—John and I do the work.

Pronoun to Pronoun—You and he are both wrong.

Verb to Verb—Lila sat down and wept.

Adjective to Adjective—They are sad but hopeful.

Adverb to Adverb—A cat moves slowly and silently.

Prep. to prep.—The bird flies through and through the air.

*Note : And joins similar ideas, but joins opposite ideas ; or denotes alternative ideas. (একই ধরনের বিষয় বা ধারণাকে and যারা এবং বিপরীত ধরনের বিষয়কে but যারা যুক্ত করা হয়। আর এটি অথবা এটি এরূপ বোঝাতে or হয়।)

He is strong and brave [= সে শক্তিশালী এবং সাহসী।]

He is weak but brave. [= সে দুর্বল কিন্তু সাহসী।]

Do or die [= If you do not do, you will die = হয় কর, না হয় মর।]

Do and die [= If you do, you will die = করেছে, কি করেছে।]

Correlatives :

There are some conjunctions that go in pairs. They are called correlatives.

কতগুলি conjunction জোড়া-জোড়া বসে। এগুলিকে correlative বা নিত্যসঙ্গী অথায় বলে।

They are both—and; either—or; neither—nor; not—only—
 but—also; so—that; such—that; no sooner—than; hardly—when;
 scarcely—when; else—than; else—but.

Noun to Noun—He is both a fool and a knave.

Adjective to Adjective.—He is both wise and good.

Adjective to Adjective—He is not only wise but also good.

Verb to Verb—He must either work or go.

Adverb to Adverb—He behaved neither wisely nor kindly.

One word joined to a clause [clause = সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া যুক্ত বাক্যংশ।]

Adv. and Clause — He is so weak that he cannot walk.

" " " — Such was her beauty that everybody loved her.
 " " " — No sooner had I sat down than they left the room.

- Adv. and Clause — *Hardly* had I left the room when it began to rain.
 — *Scarcely* had I left the room when it began to rain.
 — She has none else *than* her mother.
 — She has none else *but* her mother.

Note: In a clause beginning with *no sooner*, *hardly* and *scarcely* the auxiliary verb precedes the subject. [*No sooner*, *hardly* or *scarcely* clause + subject + auxiliary verb + verb in past tense.]
 Also note that *no sooner* takes *than* but *hardly* and *scarcely* take *when* as correlative. [*No sooner* + *than* বসে; কিন্তু *hardly* or *scarcely* + *when* বসে।]

One clause joined to another Clause. [A clause is a shorter sentence within a bigger sentence—clause বলে বড় বাক্যের মধ্যে একটি ছোট বাক্য।]

Among those conjunctions which join one clause or sentence to another clause or another sentence the most common can be seen from the following examples. (যে সব conjunction একটি বাক্য বা clause-এর সঙ্গে আর একটি বাক্য বা clause-কে যুক্ত করে, তাদের মধ্যে সর্বাধিক ব্যবহৃত উল্লেখযোগ্য কিছুটি।)

| First sentences | Conjunction | Second sentences |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| My father says | that | this book is mine. |
| He works hard | that/so that (সেভাবে) | he may succeed. |
| I trust his word | because (কারণ) | he speaks the truth. |
| The girl will come | if (যদি) | she is allowed to do so. |
| I wish to know | whether | he will come or not. |
| She walked slowly | lest (শুধু) | she should fall down. |
| He will do this | unless (যদি না) | he is stopped by you. |
| You may go out | as or since (যেহেতু) | the rain has stopped. |
| I wish to know | how | the sick man is today. |
| He left his bed | when | the sun peeped through the window. |
| No one could find out | where | the rogue was lying hid. |
| No one could tell | whence (কথা থেকে) | the noise arose. |
| The mice will play | while (যতক্ষণ) | the cat is away. |
| You must wait here | till or until | your father comes back. |
| They could not tell | Why | they were tired. |
| The girl is quick | and | (she) reads very well. |
| The girl is clever | but | (she) cannot do the work quickly. |
| She went to bed | for | she felt very tired. |
| He closed his door | after | his friends had gone. |
| He had his house cleaned | before | his friends came. |
| I will trust you | provided (যদি) | you sign your name. |
| He will not escape death | however | rich he may be. |
| He left the house | as soon as | the rain stopped. |
| He could not pass | though (যদিও) | he tried often. |
| your uncle is older | than | your aunt (is). |
| It is a long time | since (কতদিন থেকে) | I saw you last. |

KINDS OF CONJUNCTION FOR JOINING CLAUSES

Conjunctions are of two types: (1) **Co-ordinating** (2) **Subordinating**.
 Co-ordinating conjunctions are of four types: (a) Cumulative (সংযোজক)—*and*, *both...and*, *as well as* etc. (b) Alternative (বিকল্প বাচক)—*or*, *either...or*, *neither...nor* etc. (c) Adversative (বিরোধী বাচক)—*but*, *yet*, *still* etc. (d) Illative (সিদ্ধান্ত বাচক)—*so*, *therefore*, etc.
 Subordinating conjunctions denote **time**, **place**, **cause**, **effect**, **purpose**, **manner**, **condition**, **comparison**, **apposition** (e.g. He wrote to us that he would come—P.K. De Sarkar) and **concession** (e.g. However strong you may be, you cannot do this.)

Conjunctions [Linking words]

(i) **Co-ordinating Conj.**
 [Join clauses of equal ranks of a compound sentence.]

And : He stood first *and* got a prize.

Both...and : Both he *and* his brother will go.

Or : Read *or* you will fail.

But : She is sad *but* hopeful.

As well as : Dipu *as well as* his brother is honest.

Still : He worked hard *still* he failed.

Otherwise : Try hard *otherwise* you will fail.

So : He did not try hard *so* he could not pass.

Yet : Life is full of tears *yet* none wishes to die.

While : You failed *while* your brother passed.

Whereas : He is rich *whereas* his brother is poor.

Not only :*but also*: *Not only* he *but* his brother *also* will go there.

Either...or : Either you do this *or* leave the room.

Neither...nor : She will *neither* do this *nor* leave the room.

(ii) **Subordinating Conj.**
 [Join subordinate clauses to the principal clause of a complex sentence.]

That : He said *that* he would go.

So that : Shut the door *so that* the child may not go out.

In order that : He worked hard *in order that* he might pass the exam.

If : I'll go *if* you come.

Though : *Though* he is poor, he is honest.

Although : *Although* it was hard, he did it.

As : Do *as* (যেমন) you like.

As (যেহেতু) : I am ill, I cannot go.

As : Poor *as* (= *though*) I am, I am honest.

Because : He cannot go out *because* he is ill.

When : He came *when* I was there.

Where : You may go *where* you like.

Since : Since I am ill, I can not go out.

Before : The patient had died *before* the doctor came.

After : He came *after* I had left the place.

While : Make haste *while* the sun shines.

Till : Wait *till* the train stops.

Until : Do not detain *until* the train stops.

Unless : I shall fail *unless* you help me.

Whether/If : I asked him *whether* / *if* he would go there.

As if/as though : He behaves *as if* / *as though* (যেমন) he was (were) mad.

Lest : Work hard *lest* you should fail.

* Rules : (i) *lest*, *till* and *until* should not be followed by *not*.

- Wait *until* the train stops. (Cor.)
 Wait *until* the train does not stop. (Incor.)
 Wait *till* the train stops. (Cor.)
 Wait *till* the train does not stop. (Incor.)
 Work hard *lest* you should fail. (Cor.)
 Work hard *lest* you may not fail. (Incor.)

The modern idiomatic construction after '*lest*' is '*should*.'
 —Wren & Martin

(ii) *So that*, *in order that* are followed by *may* or *might*, *shall* or *should* but never by *can* or *could* or *will* or *would*.

He encouraged me *so that* / *in order that* I might not lose heart. (Cor.)
 He encouraged me *so that* / *in order that* I would not lose heart. (Incor.)

(iii) *Because* and *therefore* should not be used in the same sentence. (একই বাক্যে *because* এবং *therefore* ব্যবহার হয় না।)

(iv) *While* may be used as co-ordinating conjunction or subordinating conjunction according to its sense.

You failed *while* your brother passed. [*while* = but—coord. conj.]
 Make haste *while* the sun shines. [*while* = till—subord. conj.]

(v) *As if*, *as though* should invariably be followed by a past conditional, not by a present form (*would*, *not will* : *could*, *not can* : *did*, *not does* : *was* / *were*, *not is* : *had gone*, *not has gone* : *knew*, *not knows*). —MEU

(vi) *So that* (যেহেতু) denotes purpose (উদ্দেশ্য). But, *So.....that* (এমন যে) denotes effect. *Such.....that* also denotes effect.

So.....that : He worked *so hard* that he fell ill.

Such.....that : He is *such a fool* that I cannot rely on him.

(vii) *As.....as* denotes comparison in the positive degree in an Affirmative sentence.

As.....as : I am *as tall as* you (are). [আমি তোমার মতো লম্বা।]

(viii) *So.....as* denotes comparison in the positive degree in a Negative sentence.

So.....as : I am *not so tall as* you (are). [আমি তোমার মতো লম্বা নই।]

(ix) *Provided* denotes the sense of *if* (যদি).

Provided : I shall help you *provided* you obey me.

(x) *However*, *Whatever*, *Whoever* denote concession.

However : *However* strong he may be, he cannot do this.

Whatever : *Whatever* you may say, I do not believe you.

Whoever : *Whoever* you may be, I cannot allow you to come here.

SENTENCE LINKERS OR CONNECTORS

Some words provide link with different independent sentences to maintain a flow of expression. These words or expressions are called **Sentence Linkers or Sentence Connectors**.

[কিছু শব্দ দুটি স্বাধীন বাক্যের প্রবাহ বজায় রাখতে ব্যবহৃত হয়। এতলিকে Sentence Linker বা Sentence Connector বলে।]

There is a difference between the Conjunction or the Linking word and the Sentence Linker.

[Conjunction এবং Sentence Linker-এর মধ্যে কিছু পার্থক্য আছে।]

| Conjunctions OR Linking words | Sentence Linkers OR Sentence Connectors |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| (i) Join words, clauses or sentences. | (i) Help in maintaining flow between different consecutive sentences. |
| (ii) Used within a sentence. | (ii) Used between two sentences. |

Examples of Sentence Linkers :

[Full stop or semicolon may be used between the sentences.]

| Sentence Linkers | Examples |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <i>However</i> | You are late. <i>However</i> / <i>Nevertheless</i> , you may start your action. |
| <i>Nevertheless</i> | He is honest. <i>Indeed</i> he is respected by all. |
| <i>Indeed</i> | He gave me a lodging. <i>Besides</i> he provided me with a job. |
| <i>Besides</i> | He is ill. <i>Therefore</i> / <i>Consequently</i> , you should call in a doctor. |
| <i>Therefore/Consequently</i> | He got the first prize. <i>Actually</i> , he scored the highest marks. |
| <i>Actually</i> | Her son died. <i>Naturally</i> she is upset. |
| <i>Naturally</i> | The police searched the house. <i>Finally</i> they found the stolen goods. |
| <i>Finally</i> | You should not disregard him. <i>After all</i> he is senior. |
| <i>After all</i> | It's too late now. <i>Any way</i> , you can try. |
| <i>Any way</i> | Pride begets fall. <i>For example</i> Durjodhan was ruined. |
| <i>For example</i> | I helped him. <i>In fact</i> , he is my relative. |
| <i>In fact</i> | He was ill. <i>As a result</i> , he could not sit for the examination. |
| <i>As a result</i> | You may come. <i>Only</i> , make no noise. |
| <i>Only</i> | Would you take a little more milk? <i>Of course</i> not. |
| <i>Of course</i> | I could not answer all the questions. <i>On the whole</i> it was satisfactory. |
| <i>On the whole</i> | I do not hate him. <i>On the contrary</i> , I love him. |
| <i>On the contrary</i> | |

APPLIED SECTION

Insert appropriate conjunctions in the places left blank.
 (শূন্যস্থানে উপযুক্ত Conjunction বসাই।)

- (a) You must get up the sun rises.
 (b) You need not leave your bed the sun rises.
 (c) I could not find out he lived.
 (d) Wait here — I return.
 (e) Take care — you should fall.
 (f) You are much more idle — you used to be.

- (g) Many years have passed — I saw you last.
 (h) I wish to know — you have been so lazy as before.
 (i) Tell me — you can — the clock has struck nine.
 (j) A man must do his best — he may succeed.
 (k) You should not despair — you have failed once.
 (l) He who has failed once may succeed the second time. — he tries hard.
 (m) You have neglected your work. — you know — you were doing wrong.
 (n) I was afraid — he would not survive his illness.
 (o) Either you — I must write that letter at once: — it must be sent within the next two hours.
 (p) Gora sells both apples — oranges.
 (q) Most insects have wings — most ants do not have.
 (r) Who sweeps the rooms, washes the clothes — cooks the meals?
 (s) Gahar is hard working — he is not an intelligent boy.
 (t) Hashina is thin — tall. — her brother is fat — short.
 (u) Will you meet me at 4 p.m. — 4.30 p.m.?
 (v) The girls are helping their mother — the boys are flying kites.
 (w) The winter days are different from the summer days — the — any season.

EXERCISE

1. Pick out the Conjunctions in the following sentences and say which join words and which sentences. If words are joined, say to what Part of Speech they belong.

(নিচের বাক্যগুলি থেকে Conjunction বুঝে বার কর এবং সেগুলি শব্দকে অথবা বাক্যকে যুক্ত করেছে কিনা লেখ। যদি শব্দকে যোগ করে থাকে, তাহলে ঐ শব্দগুলি কোন part of Speech লেখ।)
 (1) You and I are old friends. (2) Was it true or was it false? (3) He is poor but honest in his dealings. (4) If you wish I will teach you to read. (5) I wish to read, but I dislike the trouble of reading. (6) Tell me, if you can, how I can learn to read without taking any trouble. (7) I can tell you that, nothing can be learnt without trouble. (8) You must go on working till the sun goes down. (9) As soon as the sun goes down, you may stop work. (10) You should go home now as the sun has set. (11) They wept, for they had lost their mother. (12) You will miss the train unless you make haste. (13) I have never heard whether you lost the first train. (14) Do not get wet, lest you should catch cold. (15) I must punish both you and your brother for being absent, as neither of you asked for leave. (16) Although the sun is very hot today, you may go out for half an hour, provided you take an umbrella and wear a hat of some kind.

B. Use the conjunctions and write in your own English:

প্রত্যেককেই তাকে বিশ্বাস করে কারণ সে সহ। আমি আশা করি যদি তুমি কখনো এই শহরে আস, তাহলে আমার বাড়ীতে আবার আসবে। রত্না লোকটি আজ কেমন আছে, আমি জানতে এসেছি। সে হয় বোকা, না হয় কদমাস (knave)। তুমি বা তোমার ভাই কেউই আজ ফুলে আসেনি। নরেশ ও সুবোধ প্রত্যহ একসঙ্গে খেলা করে। আমি তাকে পড়ি টাকা, একটি ছুরি ও একটি নই দিচ্ছিলাম। তিনি চিঠিখানি লিখেছিলেন এবং তাকে ফেলেছিলেন। হয় রাম, না হয় তার ভাই ফলগুলি পেড়েছে (pluck)। আপনি নিজে সেখানে যাবেন, না, আপনার ছেলেকে পাঠাবেন? এখনই যাত্রা করুন, নতুবা (otherwise) স্থিমান পাবেন না। আমি জানি যে সে মিথ্যাবাদী। মেয়েটি সুন্দরী কিন্তু বুদ্ধিমতী নয়।

ARTICLES & DETERMINERS

The words **a**, **an** and **the** are usually called **Articles**. They are called **Articles** as they have some special significance as the part of speech. Now, they are called **Determiners**. — **P. C. Das**
 They are really **Demonstrative Adjectives**. — **Wren & Martin**
 But **a**, **an** and generalised **the** to denote a class as a whole are not **Demonstrative Adjectives**. — **P. C. Das**

a, **an** এবং **the** শব্দগুলিকে Article বলে। Part of Speech হিসাবে এদের বিশেষ ভাবপূর্ণ থাকায় এদের Article বলে। Wren & Martin-এর মতে এগুলি প্রকৃতপক্ষে Demonstrative Adjective, কিন্তু **a**, **an** এবং জাতি প্রকাশক **the** Demon. Adjective নয়। এগুলিকে এখন Determiner বলা হয়।

Students often make mistakes in using articles or omitting them. They should be aware of it. (ছাত্রছাত্রীরা প্রায়ই article বসাবার সময় বা কোন article না বসিয়ে ভুল করে। তাদের এ বিষয়ে সতর্ক হওয়া উচিত।)

There are two types of articles (Article-দুই প্রকার) :

(1) **Definite Article—the**

(2) **Indefinite Article—a, an**

If we wish to particularise the noun, we use the Definite article. (যদি আমরা Noun-কে নির্দিষ্ট করে বোঝাতে চাই, তাহলে Definite article ব্যবহার করতে হয়।)

নির্দিষ্টত্ব দান করতে যাওয়া যাক—Let us bathe in the river (i.e. a particular river).

ডাক্তারবাবু এখানে এসেছিলেন—The doctor came here. (The doctor means a particular doctor.)

If we wish to generalise the Noun, we use the Indefinite article.

(যদি আমরা কোন Noun-কে সাধারণ ভাবে বা অনির্দিষ্টভাবে বোঝাতে চাই, তাহলে Indefinite article ব্যবহার করতে হয়।)

বাঘ বনে বাস করে—A tiger lives in a forest (i.e. any tiger or tigers and any forest or forests in general sense.)

একটি ঘাড় রাত্তায় সোঁড়াচ্ছে—An ox is running on the road.

[Here an ox that is not any particular ox is running on a particular road. এখানে ঘাড়টি কোন পরিচিত ঘাড় নয় (সে জন্য an ox)। কিন্তু সে একটি নির্দিষ্ট রাত্তার ওপর সোঁড়াচ্ছে (সেজন্য the road)।]

USE OF ARTICLES

As a general rule, a Common Noun in the singular number must have an article before it.

(সাধারণ নিয়ম অনুযায়ী Common Noun singular number হলে তার পূর্বে অবশ্যই একটি article বসাতে হয়।)

We cannot say, "I have seen boy."

We must say, "I have seen a boy or the boy."

But a Common Noun in the plural number does not require the Definite article **the** unless we wish to particularise the noun.

[Common Noun যদি Plural number হয়, তাহলে তার পূর্বে সাধারণতঃ the বসানোর প্রয়োজন হয় না (plural number-এ a বা an তো বসতেই পারে না)। অবশ্য যদি নির্দিষ্টভাবে বোঝান হয়, তাহলে the বসে।]

ছেলেরা ভালবাসে—Boys (= boys generally) are fond of sweets.

P.C.D. (10A)

যেদেওটি ফুটবল খেলছে—The boys (=those already referred to, or those boys before us) are playing football.

Indefinite Article A or An

only for singular number
but for all genders

The choice between *a* and *an* is determined by sound. *A* is used before a word beginning with a consonant sound and *An* is used before a word beginning with a vowel sound.

A এবং *An*-এর ব্যবহার sound-এর দ্বারা নির্ধারিত হয়। কোন word-এর প্রথমে consonant sound (ব্যঞ্জনধ্বনি) থাকলে *a* বসে এবং কোন word-এর প্রথমে vowel sound (স্বরধ্বনি) থাকলে তার পূর্বে *an* বসে।

Vowel sound পাঁচটি—a-e-i-o-u

| A | | An | |
|---------|-----------|----------|--------------|
| a boy | a lion | an ass | an elephant |
| a book | a mango | an ant | an inkpot |
| a bag | a student | an apple | an ice-cream |
| a cat | a woman | an arm | an idiot |
| a chair | a table | an egg | an ox |
| a dog | a tiger | an ear | an orange |
| a horse | a tree | an eye | an umbrella |

Special use : [ব্যতিক্রম]

| কোন Vowel-এর উচ্চারণ 'ইউ' বা 'ওয়া' হলে <i>an</i> না <i>a</i> হয়। | আবার Consonant হলেও যদি উচ্চারণ শুরু হয় Vowel-এর মতো, তাহলে <i>a</i> না হয়ে <i>an</i> হয়। |
|--|--|
| a ewe (ইউ) | an hour (আওয়ার—'h' silent) |
| a European (ইউরোপীয়ান) | an heir (এয়ার—'h' silent) |
| a Union (ইউনিয়ন) | an honest man (অনেস্ট 'h' silent) |
| a University (ইউনিভার্সিটি) | an M. A. (এম. এ.) |
| a useful book (ইউজ্যুফুল) | an M. P. (এম. পি.) |
| a unique scene (ইউনিক) | an L. L. B. (এল. এল. বি.) |
| a one-rupee note (ওয়ান) | an M. L. A. (এম. এল. এ.) |
| a one-eyed deer (ওয়ান) | an S. D. O. (এস. ডি. ও.) |

N. B. কিছু *h*-এর 'হ' উচ্চারণ হলে *an* না বসে *a* বসে। যেমন—*a* hotel, *a* humble servant, *a* historical book ইত্যাদি। | humble = আত্মীয়, হাফল—A.L.D.

Hornby]

USES OF A/AN

(i) *A* or *An* is used when it is mentioning someone or something (single countable noun) for the first time.

কোন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু (single countable noun) অর্থাৎ যা গোনা যায়) প্রথমবার উল্লিখিত হলে *A* বা *An* হয়।

I saw *a* man on the street.

An old lady came to our house.

(ii) *A* or *An* is used to indicate a unit একক বা ইউনিট বোঝাতে *A* বা *An* হয়। One hundred centimetres make *a* metre. An ounce is enough.

(iii) *A* or *An* is used in the sense of 'one like'. (To make a Proper Noun a Common Noun.)

'ঐ রকম একজন' বোঝাতে *A* বা *An* ব্যবহৃত হয়। এক্ষেত্রে Proper Noun-এ Common Noun হয়ে যায়।

He thinks he is *a* Rabindranath.

P.C.D. (108)

A Daniel has come to judgement. (judgment).
He seems to be *an* Indian.

(iv) *A* or *An* is used before an unknown name or surname.

অপরিচিত ব্যক্তির নাম বা পদবীর পূর্বে *A* বা *An* ব্যবহৃত হয়।

A Jatin Babu called on you.

A Mr. Sen came to see you.

An Ikbal came here to collect the news.

**N. B. Jatin Babu, Mr. Sen and Ikbal without *A* or *An* implies that the speaker knows them. | *A* বা *An* বাদ দিয়ে যতীনবাবু, সেন এবং ইকবাল বললে বোঝায় যে, দজা তাদের চেনে।

(v) *A* or *An* is used in the sense of 'of the same'.

সমজাতীয় কিছু বোঝাতে *A* বা *An* ব্যবহৃত হয়।

Birds of *a* feather flock together.

(vi) *A* or *An* is used to denote profession, trade, class etc.

পেশা, ব্যবসা ইত্যাদি বোঝাতে *A* বা *An* হয়।

He is *a* businessman. He is *an* engineer.

(vii) *A* is used before 'dozen', 'hundred', 'thousand', 'million' etc.

[dozen, hundred, thousand, million গুণিতিক পূর্বে *a* বসে।]

Here are *a* dozen of bananas.

A hundred boys came out from school.

There are *a* thousand people.

(viii) *A* or *An* is used in the sense of 'each' or 'per'.

each বা per (প্রতি) অর্থে *A* বা *An* বসে।

He earns one thousand rupees *a* month.

He drives the car at 50 miles *an* hour.

(ix) *A* or *An* (also *The*) is used to indicate a class as a whole.

সামগ্রিকভাবে জাতি বোঝাতে *A*, *An* বা *The* বসে।

A (*The*) cow has horns (i.e. All cows have horns.)

—Thomson & Martinet

An (*The*) elephant never forgets.

(x) *A* or *An* is used before, some words and phrases.

কতকগুলি phrase-এর পূর্বে *a* বা *an* বসে।

I have *a* headache. I am in *a* hurry.

He had *a* bad cold. She had *a* cough. They take *an* interest in this.

(xi) *A* or *An* is used in Exclamatory sentences beginning with 'what'.

Exclamatory sentence 'what' দিয়ে শুরু হলে *what* এরপর *a* বা *an* বসে।

What *a* pity! What *a* pretty girl!

What *a* nice bird it is! What *an* awful remark!

(xii) *A* (and not *The*) is used before the superlative 'most' when it means 'very'.

Superlative 'most'-এর অর্থ যখন 'very' বা খুব বেশি বোঝায় তখন *the*-এর পরিবর্তে *a* হয়।

He saw *a* most wonderful sight. [*a* most = *a* very] Oscar Wild]

This is *a* most interesting story. (*a* most = *a* very)

(xiii) *A* or *An* is used before 'few', 'little', 'lot of', 'good deal', 'great many', 'good many' etc. and sometimes after 'many'.

[Few, little, lot of, good deal ইত্যাদির পূর্বে এবং *many*-র পরে *a* বা *an* বসে।]

Here is *a* lot of books.

A great many soldiers entered the town.

I saw *a* good many boys there.

Many *a* flower is born to blust unseen.

Many an admirer welcomed him.
There are a few books on the table.
There is a little honey in the bottle.

***Note:** "It is also possible to say 'few apples', 'little water' but such constructions convey different meaning. They will mean 'not many', 'not much'.
— P. K. De Sarkar
But really 'a few' and 'a little' mean 'not many' and 'not much'.
'Few' and 'little' without article mean 'almost nil'.
— P. C. Das
অল্পপক্ষে a few = অল্প কয়েকটি (not many) এবং a little = অল্প একটু (not much) আর few এবং little = আর না অর্থাৎ এত কম যে না বললেও চলে।

There is a great difference between *few* and *a few* (used for countables), and between *little* and *a little* (used for uncountables). *A few* and *a little* mean 'a small number' and 'a small amount'.

Few or *little*, on the contrary, denote scarcity or lack.

—A. J. Thomson & A. V. Martinet.

USES OF THE

It is the same for singular and plural numbers and for all genders

The Definite article *the* is used (Definite article ব্যবহার হয়) :

(i) To indicate a particular person (s) or thing(s).

[নির্দিষ্ট (এক বা বহু) ব্যক্তি বা বস্তু বোঝাতে]

Look at the boy/boys. He is/They are peculiarly dressed.

I want The Golden Book of Treasures. The book is out of print.

(ii) Before a noun which has become definite by being mentioned a second time. (কোন অনির্দিষ্ট Noun দ্বিতীয়বার উল্লিখিত হয়ে নির্দিষ্ট হয়ে গেলে) — "It is also called Familiar The.

There is a tree in the garden. The tree is an Oak.

(iii) Before a noun made definite by the addition of a phrase or clause. (কোন phrase বা clause-এর সাহায্যে noun-টি নির্দিষ্ট হলে)

The girl with the white sari is beautiful.

The boy who came here is my friend.

The pen which I bought from market is not so good.

(iv) Before a singular noun meant to represent a whole class. (সমগ্র জাতি বোঝাতে singular noun-এর পূর্বে) — "It is called Generalising The.

The cow is a useful animal.

The dog is a faithful animal.

The rose is the sweetest of all flowers.

The banyan is a kind of fig tree. [Not 'a kind of a fig tree'. This is a common error. — Wren & Martin]

***Note:** Two nouns *man* and *woman* used to denote the whole class never have any article. সমগ্র জাতি বোঝাতে *man* এবং *woman*-এর পূর্বে কোন article বসে না।

Man is mortal [মানব জাতি মরণশীল]

Woman is man's mate. [স্ত্রীলোক (জাতি হিসাবে) পুরুষের সঙ্গী।]

(v) Before an uncountable Noun to particularise it. (কোন uncountable Noun-কে নির্দিষ্ট করতে হলে)

The gold of the ring is very bright.

The water of the Ganges is sacred.

The wisdom of Iswarchandra made him familiar as 'Vidyasagar'.

(vi) Before a name of a thing which only one exists in Nature. (প্রকৃতিতে বা একটি মাত্র আছে তার নামের পূর্বে)
Look at the moon.
The sun shines in the sky.
The earth moves round the sun.

(vii) Before a Noun denoting nation or race. [কোন nation বা race (জাতি) বোঝাতে]
The English are industrious [ইংরেজ (জাতি হিসাবে) পরিশ্রমী]
The Bengalees are intelligent but idle. (বাঙালী বুদ্ধিমান কিন্তু অলস।)

***Note:** Such a Noun without the indicates the language of the people (এরূপ Noun-এর আগে the না বসালে কোন জাতির ভাষার নাম বোঝায়।)
English (= ইংরেজী ভাষা) is an international language.
Bengali (= ইংরেজী ভাষা) is a rich language.

(viii) Before a name of Road, but not before a name of Street or Avenue. (Road-এর নামের পূর্বে the বসে, কিন্তু Street বা Avenue-র পূর্বে the বসে না।)

The bus is running on the Mahatma Gandhi Road.
The book is bought from College Street.

This bat is available in a shop on Central Avenue.

(ix) Before some nouns to indicate profession (পেশা-প্রকাশক Noun-এর পূর্বে)

He joined the Bar. (= আইনজীবির পেশায় যোগ দিল।)

He joined the Church. (= যাজকের বৃত্তিগ্রহণ করলেন।)

(x) Before the name of a musical instrument when one plays on it. Otherwise not (কেউ বাদ্যযন্ত্র বাজালে তার পূর্বে the বসে। তা না হলে হয় না।)

He plays the flute. (But, he has a flute.)

***Note:** play on group verb হলে the হয় না। He plays on flute.

[or] He plays on Tabla.

(xi) Before ordinal numbers. (ক্রমবাচক সংখ্যার পূর্বে)

Who is the first / the second boy? The 23rd January is a red letter day. (But, January, 23)

(xii) As a general rule a proper noun should not have any article before it. But the following take the before them as exceptions.

(সাধারণ নিয়ম অনুসারে Proper noun-এর পূর্বে কোন article বসে না। কিন্তু ব্যতিক্রম হিসাবে নিম্নলিখিত Proper Noun-গুলির পূর্বে the বসে।)

Before the names of holy books, newspapers, ships, trains, aeroplanes, space crafts, famous buildings, rivers, seas, oceans, gulfs, mountain ranges, groups of islands, deserts and directions.

(ধর্মগ্রন্থ, সংবাদপত্র, জাহাজ, ট্রেন, বিমান মহাকাশযান, বিখ্যাত অট্টলিকা, নদী, সাগর, মহাসাগর, উপসাগর, পর্বতমালা, দ্বীপপুঞ্জ, মহাভূমি এবং দিকের নামের পূর্বে the বসে।)

(a) names of holy books : the Bible, the Koran, the Ramayana.

(b) names of newspapers : the Statesman, the Anandabazar.

(c) names of ships : the Titanic, the M. V. Akbar.

(d) names of train : the Bombay Mail, the Rajdhani Express.

(e) names of aeroplanes : the Dakota, the Boeing 707.

(f) names of space crafts : the skylabs, the Aryabhata.

(g) names of famous buildings : the Tajmahal, the Writers'

Buildings, the Victoria Memorial Hall.

(h) names of rivers : the Ganga, the Jamuna, the Danube.

- (i) names of seas : the Arabian sea, (আরব সাগর) the Mediterranean sea (মধ্যপ্রাচ্য সাগর)
 (j) names of Oceans : the Indian Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Pacific Ocean. (হিন্দ মহাসাগর)
 (k) names of gulfs : the Persian Gulf. (পারস্য উপসাগর), the Bay of Bengal (বঙ্গোপসাগর)
 (l) names of mountain ranges : the Himalayas, the Alps, the Bindhya. (হিমা পর্বতমালা)
 (m) names of groups of islands : the Andamans, the West Indies, the Hebrides. (হেব্রিডিস দ্বীপপুঞ্জ)
 (n) names of desert : the Sahara, the Thar, the Gobi. (গোবি মরুভূমি)
 (o) names of the directions : Go to the north and then turn to the south.

***Note 1.** 'The' is not placed before the names of single mountains, single islands, nor before the names of capes, nor before the names of lakes.

একটি মাত্র পর্বত বা দ্বীপ, অসংখ্য বা দুইয়ের নামের পূর্বে the বসে না।

Mount Abu, Mount Everest, Vesuvius. (একটি মাত্র পর্বত)
 Ceylon, Sicily, Java. (একটি মাত্র দ্বীপ)
 Cape Comorin, Cape of Good Hope (উত্তমাংশ অসংখ্য),
 Lake Chilka, Lake Sambhar. (সহস্র হ্রদ)

***Note 2.** If a book is called after its author, the articles is not used.

—Nesfield.

(লেখকের নামের দ্বারা বই বোঝালে অথবা বইয়ের নামের আগে লেখকের নাম থাকলে the বসে না।)

Homer's Iliad, Valmiki's Ramayana.

I have read Shakespeare. (= Shakespeare's books)

(xiii) Before the names of a province having a descriptive geographical meaning. (কোন প্রদেশের নামের বর্ণনামূলক ভৌগোলিক অর্থ থাকলে the বসে।)

the Punjab, the Deccan.

(xiv) Before the names of countries which are collectively formed. (সংগঠিত দেশের নামের পূর্বে the বসে।)

the U. S. A. (the United States of America.)

the U. K. (the United Kingdom.)

But not before India, England, America.

(xv) Before the plural names of families.

(পরিবারের পরিচয়জনক নাম কখনো হলে the হয়।)

The Boses are familiar with the Browns.

(xvi) Before Proper Nouns for comparison to denote a type (কোন বিশেষ শ্রেণীর মধ্যে তুলনা বোঝালে Proper Noun-এর পূর্বে the বসে।)

Bankimchandra is the Scott of Bengal.

Rabindranath is the Shakespeare of India.

Ahmedabad is the Manchester of India.

(xvii) Before a Proper Noun when it is qualified by an Adjective or Adjectival phrases or clauses. (Proper Noun যদি Adjective, Adjectival phrase বা Clause দ্বারা বিশেষিত হয়, তবে তার পূর্বে the বসে।)

The great Caesar. The immortal Kalidas.

I am the Suryakanta Sen who never stood second in the examinations.

(xviii) Before some Common Nouns and Adjectives to express an abstract sense. (Common Noun এবং Adjective যদি Abstract Noun-এর মত ভাবের হয়, তাহলে the বসে।)

All the mother (= motherly feelings) rose in her.

Check the beast (= beastly passion) in you.

Do not play the fool (= foolishness).

Do not keep him in the dark (= darkness).

He allowed the father (= his motherly feelings) to be overruled by the judge (= his sense of duty as a judge) and declared his own son to be guilty.

(xix) Before Adjectives to denote a particular part of a thing. (কোন কিছু বিশেষ অংশ বোঝাতে Adjective-এর পূর্বে the বসে।)

I like the yellow of an egg. (the yellow = ডিমের হলদে কুসুম)

He entered the thick (the thick part) of the forest.

(xx) Before a Common Noun as a substitute for the Possessive Adjective. (কখনো কখনো Common Noun-এর পূর্বে Possessive Adjective দ্বারা the বসে।)

He caught me by the arm. (the = my)

He struck you on the head. (the = your)

He pulled the cat by the tail. (the = its)

(xxi) Before an Adjective to represent a whole class of persons (Adjective যখন কোন বিশেষ শ্রেণী বোঝায়, তখন তার পূর্বে the বসে।)

The rich (= rich men) are not always happy.

The poor (= poor men) are not always dishonest.

The virtuous (= virtuous people) are happy.

লক্ষ্যকর, এরূপ শ্রেণীব্যাক্ত Adjective-এর পরে Noun-বসে না এবং এর Verb-টি Plural number হয়।

***Note :** The rich are not always happy

= Rich men are not always happy.

= The rich man is not always happy.

But not, The rich men are not always happy.

['The rich men' do not denote a whole class, but a particular group of persons.]

(xxii) Before the Adjectives in Superlative degree and the words in the Superlative sense. (Superlative degree-র Adjective এবং Superlative (শ্রেষ্ঠত্ব) সূচক শব্দের পূর্বে the বসে।)

He is the best boy in the class.

She is the most beautiful girl.

Even the darkest cloud has a silver lining.

The Chief Minister / The Prime Minister has arrived here.

He is the singer of the day. (= দিনের শ্রেষ্ঠ গায়ক)

He is the man of the match. (= ম্যাচের শ্রেষ্ঠ খেলোয়াড়)

(xxiii) Before comparatives as Adverbs (Comparative-এর পূর্বে Adverb হিসাবে the বসে।)

The sooner, the better. (= যত শীঘ্র হয়, ততই ভালো)

The more, the merrier. (= যত বেশি, তত আনন্দ।)

The more we have, the more we want. (= যত পাই, তত চাই।)

OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE

The articles are not generally used before the following. (সাধারণ জ্ঞান নির্দেশিত ক্ষেত্রে Article বসে না।)

(i) Before Proper Nouns. (Proper Noun-এর পূর্বে সাধারণতঃ the বসে না।)

- ✓ Calcutta is the city of joy though there are many sufferings.
- ✓ Delhi is the capital of India for hundreds of years.
- Newton is a great scientist not only of England, but also of the world.

Sulekha is a beautiful girl, but she is not as tall as Sujata.

***Note** When the article is used before Proper Noun, it becomes Common Noun. Proper Noun-এর পূর্বে article বসলে তা Common Noun হয়ে যায়।

A Newton (= a scientist) can not be a Milton (= a poet).

(ii) Before Material Nouns. (Material Noun-এর পূর্বে সাধারণতঃ the বসে না।)

- ✓ Gold is a precious metal.
- ✓ Iron and steel are useful metals.
- Coal is black but very useful to us.
- Cotton grows in India, Egypt and America.

***Note** The 'is' is used before a Material Noun when it is particularly referred. (বিশেষভাবে নির্দিষ্ট করলে Material Noun-এর পূর্বে the বসে।)

The coal of Jharia burns well.

(iii) Before Abstract Nouns. (Abstract Noun-এর পূর্বে সাধারণতঃ কোন article বসে না।)

- ✓ Health is Wealth. (স্বাস্থ্যই সম্পদ।)
- ✓ Honesty is the best policy. (সত্যতাই স্রেষ্ঠ নীতি।)
- ✓ Kindness is a great virtue. (দয়া মহৎ গুণ।)

***Note** The 'is' is used before an Abstract Noun when it is specified. (নির্দিষ্ট করে বোঝালে Abstract Noun-এর পূর্বে the বসে।)

The kindness of Vidyasagar has become a proverb.

An article is used before an Abstract Noun when it is preceded by an Adjective. [Death is preferable to dishonour. (But) He died a peaceful death. What is the cause of accident? (But) He met a serious accident.]

(iv) Before a Common Noun preceded by the phrases *kind of*, *sort of*, *species of* in Interrogative sentences. (ক্রমবোধক বাক্যে *kind of*, *sort of*, *species of* থাকলে তার পূর্বে article বসে না।)

What *kind of* flower is it? }
What *kind of* / *sort of* man is he? } Interrogative
What *species of* mosquito is Aenophelis? }

But we say, Malaria is caused by a *species of* mosquito. [Assertive]

The rose/Rajmangandha is a *kind of* flower.

(v) Before school, college, church, bed, hospital, market, prison when these places are visited or used for their primary purpose.

(School, College, Church, bed, hospital, market এবং prison-এর পূর্বে article বসে না যখন এই সব জায়গায় মুখ্য উদ্দেশ্যে যাওয়া হয় বা জায়গাটি ব্যবহার করা হয়।)

✓ We go to school / college

(to learn)

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| Someone goes to church | (to pray) |
| " to bed | (to sleep) |
| " to market | (to sell or buy) |
| " to prison | (as a punishment) |
| " to hospital | (for treatment) |

But when these places are visited or used for any other purpose the article is used. (কিছু অন্য উদ্দেশ্যে গেলে বা ব্যবহৃত হলে article বসে।)

I went to the school to see the Headmaster. (পাঠের জন্য নয়।)

He went to the hospital to see his uncle. (চিকিৎসার উদ্দেশ্যে নয়।)

The bed is dirty and is now used as a dumping bed.

(vi) Before man or woman in the sense of mankind and before father, mother, uncle, aunt, or baby; when it expresses our father, our mother, our uncle, our aunt, our baby, etc.

(মানবজাতি অর্থে man বা woman-এর পূর্বে এবং নিজের বাবা, মা, কাকা, কাকীমা, শিশু ইত্যাদি অর্থে father, mother, uncle, aunt, baby ইত্যাদির পূর্বে article বসে না।)

Man and woman should go side by side in this world.

Father is hungry. Mother is angry.

Baby is crying. Uncle is coming. Aunt is cooking.

(vii) Before home when it means the home of the speaker, or the person spoken to.

Go home. Stay at home. (এখানে home এই noun-টি here বা there-এর মতো Adverb।)

But, "When home is followed by a descriptive phrase of clause, the is necessary."

He returned to the home where he had been so happy.

She was married in the home of her grand-parents.

(viii) Before the names of games and meals. (খেলা ও উৎসবের নামের পূর্বে সাধারণতঃ article বসে না।)

We like to play football/cricket/hockey / tennis / badminton etc.

We have dinner /breakfast as usual time.

(ix) Before names of seasons and festivals. (ঋতু ও উৎসবের নামের পূর্বে সাধারণতঃ article বসে না।)

Summer/winter/spring/autumn [But, the rainy season].

Summer is the best time for picnic. The first time I went to Darjeeling was the summer. (নির্দিষ্ট summer বোঝাতে the বসে।)

Similarly festivals as :- New year's Day, Christmas etc.

(x) Before the names of squares, buildings, parks, streets, Avenue etc. (square, palace, park, street, Avenue ইত্যাদির নামের পূর্বে article বসে না।)

Buckingham Palace, Curzon Park, Rashbehari Avenue., College Street.

(xi) Before the words King and Queen if they are followed by the name of King or Queen and before titles when they are used in apposition to a Noun. (King বা Queen-এর সঙ্গে তাঁদের নাম থাকলে কিংবা কোন title কোন Noun-এর apposition হয়ে বসলে তার পূর্বে article বসে না।)

King George-V, Queen Victoria.

Mr. Sen, Principal of our College, is a well-known figure.

(xii) Before complement of a transitive verb.

(Transitive Verb-এর Complement-এর পূর্বে article বসে না।)

They made him President.

He was elected Chairman of the Board.

Mr. Sen became Principal of the college.

(xiii) In certain phrases consisting of a transitive verb followed by its object. (Transitive Verb এবং তার Object-কে নিয়ে গঠিত কিছু phrase-এ article বসে না।)

to catch fire, to take root, to give ear, to cast anchor, to set sail, to lose heart, to take offence etc.

(xiv) In certain phrases consisting of a preposition followed by its object etc.

(Preposition এবং : Object নিয়ে গঠিত কিছু কিছু phrase-এ article বসে না।)
at home, at dinner, at ease, at dawn, at day-break, at sunrise, at sunset, at noon, at night, by day, by night, by name, by land, by water, by river, by air, by boat, by bus, by train, by steamer, by ship, on foot, under ground, above ground, from hand to mouth etc.

Repetition of the Article

(i) When two or more Nouns or Adjectives refer to different persons or things, the article is used before each Noun or Adjective.

যখন দুই বা ততোধিক Noun বা Adjective ভিন্ন ভিন্ন ব্যক্তি, প্রাণী বা বস্তুকে বোঝায়, তখন প্রতিটি Noun বা Adjective-এর পূর্বে article বসে। এগুলি Subject হলে Verb-টি Plural Number অনুযায়ী হয়।

The Headmaster and the Secretary are coming. (two different persons—দুজন আলাদা ব্যক্তি।)

He had a clever and a black cat. (two different cats).

Give me a red and a blue pencil. (two different pencils.)

(ii) When two or more Nouns or Adjectives refer to the same person or thing, the article is used before the first Adjective or Noun.

যখন দুই বা ততোধিক Noun বা Adjective-একই ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুকে বোঝায়, তখন কেবল প্রথম Noun বা Adjective-এর পূর্বে Article বসে। এগুলি Subject হলে Verb-টি Singular Number অনুযায়ী হয়।

The Headmaster and secretary is coming. (one person একই ব্যক্তি, নিচি সেক্রেটারি।)

He had a clever and black cat. (one cat).

Give me a red and blue pencil. (one pencil).

(iii) In a comparison, if two Nouns refer to different persons or things, the article is used with each Noun, otherwise not.

তুলনা করার সময় যদি দুটি Noun ভিন্ন ভিন্ন ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুকে বোঝায়, তাহলে প্রতিটি Noun-এর পূর্বে article বসে। তা না হয়ে একই ব্যক্তি বা বস্তুকে বোঝালে article একবার বসে।

He is a better statesman than a philosopher. (different persons)

He is a better statesman than philosopher. (same person)

(iv) Before Comparatives as Adverbs. (দুটি Comparative Adverb হিসাবে ব্যবহৃত হলে উভয় ক্ষেত্রেই the বসে।) The sooner the better.

DETERMINERS

In Modern English grammar Articles and some Adjectives except Adjectives of quality (i.e., Adjective of Quantity, Adjective of number, Demonstrative Adjective, Distributive Adjective and Possessive Adjective) are called Determiners. There are two types of Determiners—Specific Determiners and General Determiners.

আধুনিক ইংরেজি গ্রামারে Article এবং কিছু Adjective-কে (Adjective of quantity, Adjective of number, Demonstrative Adjective, Distributive Adjective এবং Possessive Adjective) Determiner বলা হয়। এগুলি দু'কমের—(i) Specific Determiner এবং (ii) General Determiner.

Specific Determiners/Definite Determiners :
The determiners used to refer to some one or something in a specific way are called **Specific Determiners or Definite Determiners**.

কাউকে বা কোন কিছুকে নির্দিষ্ট ভাবে বোঝাতে যে Determiner ব্যবহৃত হয়, তাকে Specific Determiner বা Definite Determiner বলে।

The boys are playing football.

I want this pen and not that pen.

These boys are looking after her child.

The woman is looking after her child.
Here in the phrase 'the boys' the indicates that the boys are already known to the speaker.

Similarly this; these; her etc. are used to determine the persons or objects.

List of Specific Determiners /Definite Determiners :

| | | |
|-------|------|-------|
| the | your | our |
| this | my | |
| that | his | their |
| these | her | |
| those | its | |

General Determiners/Indefinite Determiners :

The determiners used to refer to someone or something in a general or indefinite way are called **General Determiners or Indefinite Determiners**.

কাউকে বা কোন কিছুকে সাধারণভাবে বা অনির্দিষ্টভাবে বোঝাতে যে Determiner ব্যবহৃত হয়, তাকে General Determiner বা Indefinite Determiner বলে।

A boy is going to school.

An old man is walking on the road.

All men must die, but most men do not think of it.

He did not eat any rice, but I ate some.

Each candidate was asked to answer the question.

List of General Determiners/Indefinite Determiners :

| | | | |
|------|---------|--------|------------|
| a | other | few | no |
| an | another | many | several |
| all | each | little | enough |
| any | every | much | such |
| some | either | more | one |
| both | neither | most | first etc. |

Groups of Determiners

Now, we can classify the Determiners into three groups.

(i) **Th-type** : the, this, that, these, those.

(ii) **Possessive type** : your, my, our, his, her, their, its.

(iii) **Number/quantity type** : a, an, each, every, any, another, little, some, enough etc.

Predeterminers :

Some words are used before Determiners and function as a combined structure. They are called **Predeterminers**.

কখনো কখনো Determiner-এর পূর্বে কিছু শব্দ বসে একটি Combined Structure তৈরি করে। এই শব্দগুলিকে **Predeterminer** বলে।

I am not such a fool. | a such fool হয় না।

All the girls wore white sari. [the all girls হয না।]
 Both the boys are equally guilty. [উভয় বালক-Both boys, উভয় বালকই—
 Both the boys হয; the both boys হয না।]
 What a beautiful bird it is!
 Such, all, both, what-এই শব্দগুলি Determiner-এর পূর্বে ব্যবহৃত হয়ে একটি
 combined structure তৈরি করেছে। সেজন্য এগুলিকে Predeterminer বলে।

APPLIED SECTION

We cannot say.
 Boy is going to school. Ox is running.
 We must say.
 A/The boy is going to school. An/The ox is running.
 No Common Countable Noun can be used in a sentence without any
 article or determiner. (Article বা Determiner ছাড়া কোন Common
 Countable Noun বাক্যে ব্যবহার হতে পারে না।)

Headlines again :

A is used :

- before a word beginning with a consonant.
a bird, a flower, a lion.
- before a vowel letter that sounds like a consonant.
a European, a University (sound Eu = yu ইউ)
a one rupee note (sound O = w ওয়া)

An is used :

- before a word beginning with a vowel.
an ass, an orange
- before a consonant letter that sounds like a vowel.
an M. A. (এম. এ.), an M.B. (এম.বি.) an S. D. O. (এস. ডি. ও),
an hour (আওয়ার), an honourable (অনারেবল) person.
- before a word beginning with a silent 'h'.
an hour (আওয়ার), an honourable (অনারেবল) person.

Normally we do not use any article before Proper Nouns (or Capital
 Letter Nouns), Material Nouns and Abstract Nouns. But other
 Determiners may be used before these words as necessary.

সাধারণতঃ Proper Noun, Material Noun এবং Abstract Noun-এর পূর্বে কোন
 article বসে না। অবশ্য এগুলির পূর্বে প্রয়োজন মতো অন্য Determiner বসতে পারে।

Calcutta is a big city. This Calcutta is a matter of pride to us.
 Iron is a useful metal. Honesty is the best policy.

But The is used :

- before names of rivers, mountain ranges, seas, deserts, impor-
 tant buildings etc.

The Ganges flows down from the Himalayas.

The Bay of Bengal lies to the South of West Bengal.

The Sahara is in Africa. The Thor is in Rajasthan.

The Tajmahal is one of the wonders of the world.

***Note :** Though the is not used before a Proper Noun, We can say.
 The Boses are visiting china.

(Here The Boses = Mr. Bose and his family)

We also say —U.S.A. (The United States of America = America)

- before nouns of which there is only one.

The sun is shining in the sky.

- before nouns that refer to a class of things / people.
The dog is a faithful animal.
But, Man is mortal.
- to particularise the noun.
The book you mention is out of print.
A farmer has three sons. The sons are lazy.
- before the superlatives.
He is the most intelligent boy.
- as an adverb with comparatives. The more the merrier.
- Normally we do not use any article or determiner in the following

constructions.

| | | | |
|---------|----------------|--------|---------------|
| be in | bed | travel | by bus |
| go to | market | go | by car |
| sent to | church | come | by train |
| - | prison | - | by boat |
| - | hospital | - | by plane |
| be at | school/college | go | no foot |
| go to | university | - | on horse-back |
| leave | home | - | on bicycle |

EXERCISE

1. Fill in the blanks with A or An as required.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) ——— B.D.O. | (j) ——— university |
| (b) ——— S.D.O | (k) ——— umbrella |
| (c) ——— D.M | (l) ——— unique event |
| (d) ——— B.A. | (m) ——— uniform speed |
| (e) ——— M.A. | (n) ——— one-eyed man |
| (f) ——— F.R.C.S | (o) ——— one-act play |
| (g) ——— ewe | (p) ——— opinion |
| (h) ——— union | (q) ——— historical play |
| (i) ——— European | (r) ——— honest man. |

2. Fill in the blanks with suitable articles.

It is ——— useful article. Animesh reads ——— Gita everyday. Gahar
 reads ——— Koran. Rambabu is ——— L.L.B. This is ——— one-way road.
 Ceylon is ——— island. He is ——— Newton. He is ——— Newton of India.
 Bankimchandra is ——— Scott of Bengal. He is ——— B.A., but his brother is —
 ——— M.A. It is ——— unanimous decision. He lives in ——— U.K. but his
 sister lives in ——— U.S.A.

3. Match the two parts of each sentence. Write 'the' where necessary and put a X where it is not necessary. One has been done for you.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (i) My father goes to (b) | (a) school? |
| (ii) Does your sister go to | (b) X market. |
| (iii) Tourists in Delhi go to see | (c) Park Street. |
| (iv) Tourists in Calcutta go to see | (d) violin? |
| (v) Do you play | (e) Delhi. |
| (vi) The U. B. I. is on | (f) Australia. |
| (vii) The smallest continent is | (g) Victoria Memorial. |
| (viii) His uncle lives in. | (h) Tajmahal. |

4. Put suitable articles and determiners in the following blanks. Choose the determiners from the given list. [any, some, their, another, other, the, a]

- (i) Our house is nearest to _____ house.
 (ii) Is there _____ difference between _____ two?
 (iii) At night we stayed at _____ hotel.
 (iv) I am not satisfied with this book. Could you supply me _____ book?
 (v) _____ Aryans are very proud of their high birth. They are afraid of getting mixed up with _____ Tribals. It is _____ false pride.

5. Complete the following passages with suitable articles (a, an, the).

- (i) Sorajini Naidu who was _____ Indian was born at Hyderabad in _____ Decan, on _____ 13th February, 1879. Her father came of _____ Bengali family that was famous for learning, and she herself was _____ great scholar.
 (ii) _____ Narmada is _____ a name of _____ river in South India. It is _____ important river and is considered as a holy river in _____ South.
 (iii) _____ gentleman walking with _____ stick in his hand is a very well-known person here. He is _____ professor at _____ University. He has just returned from _____ U. K. after a period of four years obtaining _____ Ph. D. from _____ Oxford University.

6. Put articles where it is required and put a cross (X) where it is not required.

- (i) _____ Is this _____ book you are telling me about? "Yes, it is on _____ live of _____ Satyajit Roy, one of _____ greatest sons of _____ India."
 (ii) Her sister is _____ musician. She plays _____ sitar and _____ guitar.
 But her brother has no interest in _____ music. He is _____ good sportsman. He plays _____ football and _____ hockey.

7. The articles are missing in the following passages. Find where they are missing and insert them.

- (i) Do not look at me. Look above and see moon and stars. There are uncountable stars twinkling in sky at night. In morning they will disappear again.
 (ii) One day old man was walking on road. He was carrying bagful of sugar in his hand. That man was secretary of school. I knew him to be honest person.
 (iii) He saw most wonderful sight. Through little hole in wall children had crept in, and they were sitting in branches of trees. In every tree that he could see was little child.

8. Write in your own English using suitable articles and determiners.

ছোড়া চতুষ্পদ (four-footed/quadruped) ভাবু : গরু উপভাষী প্রাণী ; শিশু তৃণাশন করে (sucks its mother) ; আমাদের প্রথম শিক্ষক একজন এম. এ. বি. এ. ; সিবিগেশনারি একজন অর্ধজনিক (honorary) ম্যাজিস্ট্রেট ; তারা এক খড়ীর মধ্যে আসবে ; তার ছাই একজন ইউরোপীয়ের কাছে ইয়েজি পড়ে ; তাদের বাড়ীর পাশে একজন এম. বি. বি. এস. ডাক্তার থাকেন ; অনেক ফুলের গন্ধ (smell) মাই ; কিছু বোলাশের মুড়িই গন্ধ আছে ; পৃথিবী সূর্যের চারদিকে ঘোরে ; বসন্তকালে গাছের নতুন শাখা জোঁড় (put forth) ; তাকে আশ্বাসে পঠানো হলো ; আমি প্রত্যহ আনন্দভাষার পড়ি ; বাল্যকাল হামাগু চলে কখন ; বাইবেল পুঁজিদের পবিত্র গ্রন্থ ; জল বাড়ীতে কোম্ব খাওয়ার পাত্রে না ; এ পুকুরের জল খুব ঠাণ্ডা ; আমি সকালে চা পান করি ; আমি মার্কিনদের চা পছন্দ করি ; সন্ধ্যায় সেই উপায় ; গার্ডিভির সত্যতা সর্জনবিন্দিত ; সত্য শব্দ বর্ষ (virtue) ; ক্রিয়াসম্প্রদায়ের মত প্রকাশনাকে পবিত্র হওয়া ; ঘামিকেরা সর্বদাই সুখী ; ভাড়াটীর দ্রব্য সস্তা (cheap) ; এটি একটি আমেরিকান শব্দ ; তিনি একশ বছরকরতে চান না ; উভয় বালকই সমান মোদী ; কোন বালক নিশ্চয় ইচ্ছা করিয়াছে ; কোন কোন বালক পরীক্ষায় বেশ করিয়াছে ; প্রত্যেক হেলে ও প্রত্যেক মেয়ে একটি করে পুস্তকই পেশ ; তার প্রত্যেকটি কথাই মিথ্যা ; প্রত্যেক মা-ই তার সন্তানকে ভালবাসেন ;

MODIFIERS CHAPTER-20 MODIFIERS

Read the following sentences. (নিচের বাক্যগুলি পড়)।

- All those self-taught boys were very clever.
 A blooming flower is beautiful to look at.
 A growing child needs nutritious food.
 A sleeping lion cannot catch a prey.
 Don't put your hand in boiling water.
 Don't sit on a broken chair.
 The girl is nursing the wounded bird.
 We saw the men looking out hopelessly.
 The words or phrases all, those, self-taught, blooming, growing, sleeping, boiling, broken, wounded and looking out hopelessly are used here to modify the nouns. These are called **Modifiers**. These may be placed before or after the nouns. Hence these are also called **Noun Modifiers**.

এ সব word বা phrase Noun এর আগে বা পরে বসে। Noun-কে modify (বিশেষিত) করে, সেগুলিকে **Modifier** বা **Noun Modifier** বলে।

There are two types of Modifiers. (দুইরকম Modifier আছে।)

(1) **Premodifier**. (2) **Postmodifier**.

(1) A modifier which precedes a Noun is called **Premodifier**.
 এ modifier Noun-এর পূর্বে বসে বলে Premodifier বলে।

যেমন—A blooming flower. A broken chair.

(2) A modifier which follows a Noun is called **Post-modifier**.
 এ modifier Noun-এর পরে বসে বলে Postmodifier বলে।

যেমন—We saw the men looking out hopelessly.

Various types and uses of Premodifiers

There are different types of Premodifiers.
 (অনেকরকম premodifier আছে।)

(i) **Predeterminers as Premodifiers**.

All the boys were present in the class.
 Both the books are out of print.

(ii) **Determiners as Premodifiers**.

The boys and girls are walking side by side.
 Those boys and girls are very intelligent.

(iii) **Present participle (ing-participle) as Premodifiers**.

A darkening sky may bring showers.

The cloud brings showers for the thirsting flowers.

A life of increasing labour and decreasing leisure is the characteristic of modern civilization.

(iv) **Past Participle (ed/en-participle) as Premodifiers**.

The injured cat is limping.

A burnt child dreads the fire.

The ants eat their stored food in winter.

The worried man could not attend the guests.

He did not like to live in the haunted house.

(v) **Adjectives as Premodifiers**.

A lazy man cannot be an early riser.

A clever boy like you cannot do such foolish work.

An intelligent girl worked out the sum in a few minutes.

(vi) **Nominal Compound as a premodifier.**

She is a *record-breaking* typist.

Mark the *wheat-producing* countries in the map.

Try to use this *labour-saving* method.

You should be aware of the *Calcutta bus routes*.

A *low cost* house is not easily available in Calcutta.

(vii) **Noun for a Noun Modifier :**

The *School Inspector* came on a *surprise visit*.

I am going to my *country house*.

Various types and uses of Post modifiers

There are different types of postmodifiers.
(সমসংকম Postmodifier আছে)

(i) **Present Participle phrases as postmodifier.**

I found an old woman *standing at the door*.

I used to watch the flower plant *growing everyday*.

We saw the beggar *looking our hopelessly*.

The student *working in the laboratory* is very brilliant.

(ii) **Past Participle phrases as Postmodifier.**

I saw a man *injured by an accident*.

A tiger *killed by the hunter* was left in the jungle.

He has got the money *sent by his father*.

I have got the letter *written by you*.

(iii) **"To" Infinitive phrases as Postmodifier.**

She got a nice pen *to write with*.

Here is a chair *to sit on*.

I am the last man *to leave the place*.

(iv) **Adjective phrases as Postmodifier.**

A man *with white beard* came here yesterday.

He is a man *of great honour*.

(v) **Nominal clause as Appositive used as Postmodifier.**

The report *that he was murdered* is true.

Our hope *that he would come back home* proved false.

(vi) **Relative clause as Postmodifier.**

The boy *who came her* is my cousin.

This is the place *where he was born*.

This is the pen *which I lost yesterday*.

I want a car *that I can drive*.

NOUN MODIFIERS & NOMINAL GROUPS

Now, we see a **Noun** may be modified by :

(i) the words **before** the Head Noun— **Premodifiers.**

[যে বিশেষকর্মণি Noun-এর পরে বসে সেগুলি Premodifiers.

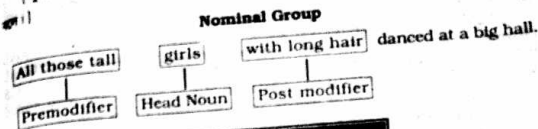
(ii) the words **after** the Head Noun— **Postmodifiers.**

[যে বিশেষকর্মণি Noun-এর পরে বসে সেগুলি Postmodifier.

| Premodifier | Head Noun | Postmodifier |
|--------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| (i) Predeterminers | ←O→ | (i) Present Participle Phrases |
| (ii) Determiners | | (ii) Past Participle Phrases |
| (iii) Present Participle | | (iii) "To" Infinitive Phrases |
| (iv) Past Participles | | (iv) Adjective Phrases |
| (v) Adjectives | | (v) Nominal Clauses |
| (vi) Nominal Compounds | | (vi) Relative Clauses |
| (vii) Nouns | | |

The whole group of words (the Head noun with its modifiers) is called a **Nominal Group** or a **Noun cluster**.

[যুগ্ম Noun এবং তার Modifier-কে একত্রে Nominal Group বা Noun Cluster বলা হয়।]

**EXERCISE**1. **Fill in the blanks with 'ing'-participles which are used as Modifiers (premodifier or Postmodifier).**

Verbs to be used are given in the list below.

[stand, walk, run, work, boil]

(i) Don't try to get into a ——— train.

(ii) The farmers ——— in the field are very poor.

(iii) I found the girl ——— at the door.

(iv) We saw a girl ——— on the ropes.

(v) Only hard ——— students will succeed.

(vi) Don't put your hand in ——— water.

2. **Use Past participle forms of the verbs given in the list as Modifiers.**

[burn, speak, read, wound, balance, break, worry]

(i) A ——— diet is required for a growing baby.

(ii) Why have you such a ——— look ?

(iii) They took the ——— man to hospital.

(iv) You should learn ——— English too.

(v) Good books ——— in childhood are the real guides.

(vi) Don't sit on a ——— chair.

(vii) A ——— child dreads the fire.

3. **Use appropriate words, phrases or clauses or infinitives as Modifiers.**

Root verbs are given in the brackets.

(i) Look at the cows (graze) in the field.

(ii) The girl came here (dance) joyfully.

(iii) If she catches you (read) her diary, she'll be furious.

(iv) The picture (paint) by the artist is wonderful.

(v) He advised me to apply for the post (vacate).

(vi) She is busy (write) some letters.

(vii) He fell down while (board) a bus.

(viii) We should avoid (waste) of money.

4. **Write in your own English using Modifiers.**

যুবক সিংহ শিকার ধরতে পারে না। বাড়ন্ত শিশুর পুষ্টির জন্য প্রয়োজন। ভাঙা চেয়ারে বসে না। ফটা বেল্ট চালিও না। ফুটন্ত জলে হাত দিও না। চলন্ত বাসে উঠতে যেও না। ফুটন্ত ফুল দেখতে খুব সুন্দর। যেসেটি একটি আহত পাখীকে গুরুত্ব করে। বাবার পাঠানো টাকা আমি খরচ করে ফেলেছি। ভুজ্জার্ত ফলের জন্য মেঘ বৃষ্টি নিয়ে আসে। ভীত ছেলেটি ডিম্বকর করে উঠল। ভাঙা পাত্রে জল ঢেল না। ম্যাপে ভা-উপাদক অঙ্কলগুলি চিহ্নিত কর। মাঠে যে কৃষকেরা কাজ করছে, তারা ক্লান্ত হয়ে পড়েছে। আমার একটি দুখের লেখার কলম আছে। কালো দাড়িওয়ালা লোকটিকে আমি চিনি। সে যে টাকা কুড়িয়ে পেয়েছে, তার এই বিবৃতি বিশ্বাস করা যায় না।

STRUCTURAL & NON-STRUCTURAL WORDS

[1991 সালের মাধ্যমিক পরীক্ষায় Structural word গিরে পূরণস্থান পূরণ করতে দেওয়া হয়েছে।]

Words are the elements of a sentence. In *Modern English Grammar* words are divided into two broad group—STRUCTURAL WORDS OR MINOR WORDS AND NONSTRUCTURAL WORDS OR MAJOR WORDS. Structural words or Minor words are also called Grammatical words. Major words are also called Class words.

[Word বা শব্দ হলো বাক্যের উপাদান। আধুনিক ইংরেজি ব্যাকরণে এই word-গুলিকে দুটি প্রধান ভাগে ভাগ করা হয়েছে—Structural words বা Minor words বা Grammatical words এবং Non-Structural words বা Major words বা Class words।]

The difference between Structural words or Minor words and Non-Structural words or Major words :

[Structural word বা Minor word এবং Nonstructural word বা Major word-এর পার্থক্য :]

(i) Structural words are used for forming the structure of a sentence. They have little meaning of their own.

But Non structural words or Major words play the important role in conveying the meaning of a sentence.

[Structural word বাক্যের কাঠামো গঠনের জন্য ব্যবহৃত হয়। তাদের নিজস্ব অর্থ বহু নয়। কিন্তু Non-Structural word বা Major word বা মুখ্যপদ বাক্যের অর্থ প্রকাশে প্রধান ভূমিকা পালন করে।]

(ii) Only Structural word (a, an, the, this, as, on etc.) can not make a sentence. But only a Major word (Non-structural word) can make a sentence. (Yes, No, Come, Stop, Well, Thanks etc.)

[কেবলমাত্র একটি Structural word (a, an, the, this, as, on ইত্যাদি) ঘাটা কোন বাক্য হয় না। কিন্তু একটি Major word বা মুখ্য পদ দিয়েই অনেক সময় একটি বাক্য হয়। যেমন—Yes, No, Come, Stop, Well, Thanks ইত্যাদি।]

(iii) The same Structural word (a, an, the, etc.) can be used more than once in a sentence. But a Non-structural word (Major word) cannot be usually repeated in a sentence.

[একটি বাক্যে একটি Structural word (a, an, the ইত্যাদি) বার বার ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে। কিন্তু একটি Non-structural word (Major word) একই বাক্যে সাধারণতঃ বার বার ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে না।]

(iv) Structural words (a, an, the, in, on, to etc.) cannot take any Prefix or suffix. But more and more new words can be formed by adding Prefixes or Suffixes with the Non-Structural words or Major words (i. e. normal > abnormal : greed > greedy etc.)

[Structural word অর্থাৎ a, an, the, in, on, to ইত্যাদির সঙ্গে কোন Prefix বা Suffix যুক্ত হতে পারে না। কিন্তু Non-Structural word বা Major word-এর সঙ্গে Prefix বা Suffix যুক্ত হতে নতুন নতুন শব্দ গঠিত হয়। যেমন—normal > abnormal : greed > greedy, ইত্যাদি।]

(v) Structural words (a, an, the, this, by, for etc.) have no inter-relationship while Non-structural words or Major words or Class words have inter-relationship (i.e. happy > happiness > happily etc.)

[Structural word-গুলির মধ্যে (a, an, the, this, by, for ইত্যাদি) কোন আন্তঃসম্পর্ক নেই। কিন্তু Non-structural word বা major word-গুলির একাধিক রূপের মধ্যে আন্তঃসম্পর্ক আছে। যেমন—happy > happiness > happily ইত্যাদি।]

| STRUCTURAL WORDS OR MINOR WORDS | NON-STRUCTURAL WORDS OR MAJOR WORDS OR CLASS WORDS |
|--|--|
| (1) Determiners (a, an, the, this, my, his, our ইত্যাদি) | (1) Nouns (বিশেষ্য) |
| (2) Intensifiers or Downtoners (very, much, too, little, rather ইত্যাদি) | (2) Pronouns (সর্বনাম) |
| (3) Auxiliaries (shall, will, can, may ইত্যাদি) | (3) Adjectives (বিশেষণ) |
| (4) Prepositions (in, on, to, for, by, with ইত্যাদি) | (4) Main Verbs (মুখ্য ক্রিয়া) |
| (5) Conjunctions or Linkers (and, but, or, for, as, if, though, although, however ইত্যাদি) | (5) Adverbs (বিশেষ্য বা সর্বনাম শব্দ অনুশব্দের বিশেষণ) |

EXERCISE

1. Fill in each blank with one word that fits in the context. Read through the text before you start filling in the blanks. Remember that all the words will be grammatical/structural word. One has been done for you. [M.P. 1991]

The sprawling lake at the Alipore Zoo is no longer a favourable haunt for thousands of migratory birds — used to spend the winter months here. — a couple of years ago the tumultuous cries — whistles of the "winter guests" from Siberia and — foot hills of the Himalayas — be heard. But this year there is silence — the lake. The Alipore Zoo has become a more "transit" point in the migratory flight path of the birds. Experts believe that this can be explained by the fact — since last year about 6,000 birds from the Siberian region and the Himalayas — begun to visit the lake — about a week in November and — fly away. Ans : that, Even, and, the, could, in, that, had, for, then.

2. There are four numbered blanks in the passage given below. Fill in the blanks with the best alternatives from the lists provided. The numbers in the blanks correspond to the numbers of the lists concerned.

The best alternatives for the blanks No. (i) is chosen for you. [H.S. 1992]

Example (i) (a) in (b) for (c) to (d) about [Answer : (i) (b).]

Baroda State in Western India had a reputation (i) — being progressive in many fields, not in the least in education and social reform. Sixty years ago the then Maharaja of Baroda invited an American to assist (ii) — the establishment of a complete, modern library system. That American, William Alanson Borden accepted the invitation and stayed (iii) — as Director of State Libraries in Baroda (iv) — three years.

(i) (a) for, (b) by, (c) towards, (d) in

(iii) (a) on, (b) up, (c) out, (d) across

(iv) (a) after, (b) since, (c) for, (d) under.

3. Fill in the blanks with the structural words given in the list.
Those who are responsible (i) teaching young people have resorted, in different periods of history, to (ii) variety of means making their pupils learn. The earliest of these was (iii) the rod.
- (i) (a) to, (b) for, (c) of (ii) (a) an, (b) a, (c) the (iii) (a) an, (b) a, (c) the
4. Fill in the blanks with the structural words given below.
I am annoyed (i) him for his behaviour. I refused (ii) second fiddle to him. He is (iii) man of strong principles. He will not swallow a camel easily.
- (i) (a) with, (b) about, (c) on, (ii) (a) to, (b) for (c) at (iii) (a) an, (b) a, (c) the
5. Fill in the blanks with the structural words given below.
Mr. Bose is very strict (i) the children in his class. He is particularly strict (ii) punctuality. However, his relationship (iii) the children is (iv) happy one.
- (i) (a) an, (b) about, (c) with (ii) (a) about, (b) with, (c) on (iii) (a) an, (b) a, (c) with (iv) (a) an, (b) a, (c) the
6. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate structural words.
Mr. Smith is — European. He deals — umbrella, but he deals — the customers very well. All Europeans are not the same.

CHAPTER—22

NARRATION/REPORTING

In English, as in our mother tongue, we need to report messages, speeches, comments, requests etc. of a person or persons to others. We may report the words of a speaker in two ways.

1. We may report the words of a speaker in two ways.
(i) We may quote his actual words. This is called Direct speech.
(ii) We may report what he said without quoting his exact words. This is called Indirect or Reported Speech.
2. We may report the words of a speaker in two ways.
(i) We may quote his actual words. This is called Direct speech.
(ii) We may report what he said without quoting his exact words. This is called Indirect or Reported Speech.

Features of Direct Speech (প্রত্যক্ষ উক্তি বৈশিষ্ট্য) :

The speech which is under Quotation marks or Inverted commas in writing is called Direct Speech and the verb by which it is expressed, is called Reporting Verb.

Three features of Direct Speech (Direct Speech-এর তিনটি বৈশিষ্ট্য) :

- (a) In writing, the Direct Speech is put within Inverted commas (") to mark off the exact words of the speaker.
Of course, in dialogues Inverted Commas are often left out.
(b) A Comma is used after Reporting Verb.
Of course, in dialogues, Reporting Verb and comma are not needed.
(c) The first letter of the Direct Speech is a Capital letter.
Now look at the following table. (নিচের Table-টি দেখ) :

| Direct Speech | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Speaker Sitish | Reporting Verb said | Direct Speech "I am very busy". |

| Indirect Speech | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| Reporter Sitish | Reporting Verb said | Linker that | Reported Speech he was very busy. |

It will be noticed that in changing the Direct Speech into Indirect certain grammatical changes have been made. (দেখা কর, উপরের Direct Speech-কে Indirect করার জন্য কিছু পরিবর্তন করা হয়েছে।)

- (i) We have used the linker *that* before the Reported Speech or Indirect statement. (Reported Speech বা Indirect statement-এর (পরোক্ষ উক্তি) পূর্বে আমরা একটি linker (সংযোগক) *that* বসিয়েছি।)
 (ii) The pronoun *I* is changed to *he*. (সর্বনামটি *he*-তে পরিবর্তিত হয়েছে।)
 (iii) The verb *am* is changed to *was*. [*am* ক্রিয়াটি *was*-এ পরিবর্তিত হয়েছে।]

Rules for changing Direct Speech into Indirect

[Direct Speech থেকে Indirect এ পরিবর্তন করার নিয়ম।]

- (i) We use a **linker** before the Indirect Speech.
 (Indirect Speech-এর পূর্বে একটি **linker** বা সংযোগক ব্যবহার করতে হয়।)
 Direct : He said, "I am unwell."
 Indirect : He said *that* he was unwell.
 N. B. The linker *that* is often omitted in spoken English.
 (ii) The **pronouns** are changed according to sense.
 (অর্থ অনুযায়ী pronoun-এর পরিবর্তন হয়।)
 Direct : Salil said to his friend, "You are ill."
 Indirect : Salil told his friend *that* he was ill.
 Direct : Salil said to me, "You are ill."
 Indirect : Salil told me *that* I was ill.
 Direct : I said to you, "I don't believe you."
 Indirect : I said (that) I didn't believe you.
 (iii) If the Reporting Verb is in the **past tense**, we must make the following changes. (যদি Reporting Verb-টি **past tense**-এ থাকে, তাহলে আমাদের নিম্নলিখিত পরিবর্তনগুলি করতে হয়।)

| Direct | | Indirect |
|------------------------|---------|--------------------------|
| a. present | becomes | past |
| b. present continuous | becomes | past continuous |
| c. past indefinite | | |
| d. Present perfect | becomes | past perfect |
| e. past perfect | | |
| f. past continuous | becomes | past perfect continuous. |
| g. future (shall/will) | becomes | future (should/would) |

Narration of Assertive Sentence (বিবৃতিমূলক বাক্য)

- Direct : He said, "I do it."
 Indirect : He said *that* he *did* it.
 Direct : He said, "I am writing letters."
 Indirect : He said *that* he *was writing* letters.
 Direct : He said, "I wrote letters."
 Indirect : He said *that* he *had written* letters.
 Direct : He said, "I have passed the examination."
 Indirect : He said *that* he *had passed* the examination.
 Direct : He said, "I had passed the examination."
 Indirect : He said *that* he *had passed* the examination.
 Direct : He said, "I was playing football."
 Indirect : He said *that* he *had been playing* football.
 Direct : He said, "I shall play football."
 Indirect : He said *that* he *would play* football.

***Note 1.** If the Reporting verb is in the **present or future tense**, the tense of the verb of the Direct Speech is not changed at all.
 [যদি Reporting Verb-টি present বা future tense এ থাকে, তাহলে Direct Speech-কে Indirect করার সময় Verb-এর কোন পরিবর্তন হয় না।]

- Direct : The farmer says, "I am busy."
 Indirect : The farmer says *that* he is busy.
 Direct : The farmer will say, "I am busy."
 Indirect : The farmer will say *that* he is busy.

***Note 2.** If the statement is a **habitual truth or eternal truth**, no change of tense is required.
 [বক্তব্যটি যদি অভ্যাসগত বা চিরসত্য বোঝায়, তাহলে tense-এর কোন পরিবর্তন হয় না।]

- Bimal Said "I walk for an hour every morning"
 Bimal said *that* he *walks* for an hour every morning. } Habitual truth
 The teacher said "The sun rises in the east"
 The teacher said *that* the sun *rises* in the east. } Eternal truth.

***Note 3.** Some words of **time expression** and **place expression** are changed if the Reporting Verb is in the past tense.

[Reporting Verb-টি past tense-এ থাকলে সময় বা স্থানবাচক কিছু শব্দের পরিবর্তন হয়।]

| Direct | থেকে | Indirect এ পরিবর্তিত হয় :- |
|------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| Now | becomes | then |
| ago | " | before |
| today | " | that day |
| to night | " | that night |
| tomorrow | " | the next day |
| yesterday | " | the previous day |
| last night | " | the previous night |
| here | becomes | there |
| hence | " | thence |
| this | " | that |
| these | " | those |
| thus | " | that way |
| was | " | so |
| come | " | go |

***Note 4.** Students often change *it* into *that* in the indirect. But that is wrong. It remains unchanged.

[ছাত্রছাত্রীরা প্রায়ই *it*-কে *that* এ পরিণত করে। এটি ভুল। *It* indirect এ অপরিবর্তিত থাকে।]

- Direct : The boy said, "I'll do the work *now*."
 Indirect : The boy said *that* he would do the work *then*.
 Direct : He said, "I am glad to be here *this evening*."
 Indirect : He said *that* he was glad to be there *that evening*.
 Direct : He said, "I shall go to Delhi *tomorrow*."
 Indirect : He said *that* he would go to Delhi *the next day*.
 Direct : He said, "I have never seen anything like *it*."
 Indirect : He said, *that* he had never seen anything like *it*.

***Note 5.** The changes do not occur if the speech is reported during the same period or at the same place.

[যদি বক্তব্যটি একই সময়ে বা একই জায়গায় report করা হয়, তাহলে উপরিউক্ত পরিবর্তনগুলি করার প্রয়োজন হয় না।]

- Speaker (at 10 a. m.) : The Inspector *will* visit our school *today*.
 Reporter (at 10. a. m.) : He says *that* the Inspector *will* visit their school *today*.

Reporter (at 5. p. m./after a few days) : He said *that* the Inspector *would* visit their school *that day*.

Speaker (in Calcutta) : Sir Asutosh Mukherjee was born here.
 Reporter (in Calcutta, but after a few days) :
 He said that Sir Asutosh Mukherjee was born here.
 Reporter (in Delhi) : He said that Sir Asutosh Mukherjee was born there.

***Note 6.** Normally, there are no changes in the verb forms of the Modal Auxiliaries like *must*, *ought to* and *should*, though *should* often becomes *would* corresponding persons of the subject and *had to* is often used in place of *must*.

[সাধারণত : *must*, *ought to* এবং *should* -এর যতো Modal Auxiliary তদিক কোন পরিবর্তন হয় না, যদিও কখনো *must*-এর জায়গায় *had to* বসে এবং *should*-এর জায়গায় *would* বসে।]

Direct : She said, "We ought to go."

Indirect : She said that they ought to go.

Direct : She said, "We must go."

Indirect : She said that they must go/had to go.

Direct : Niren said to me, "I should be grateful if you help me."

Indirect : Niren told me that he would be grateful if I helped him.

But the *should* of obligation is not changed. [কিন্তু ইচ্ছা করে *should* পরিবর্তন হয় না।]

Bimal said to him, "you should be more careful."

Bimal told him that he should be more careful.

***Note 7.** In indirect speech, "said to him", "said to me" etc. before that are not good English. Write "told him", "told me" etc. [Object বা থাকলে 'say' এবং object থাকলে 'tell' হয় Reporting verb. Indirect Speech-এ that-এর পূর্বে said to him, said to me ইত্যাদি ভালো ইংরেজি নয়; এরপ ক্ষেত্রে told him, told me এরপ লেখা উচিত।]

EXERCISE-I

A. Report the following sentences in Indirect Speech.

(নিচের বাক্যগুলিকে Indirect Speech-এ রিপোর্ট কর।)

1. The teacher said to the boy, "You have forgotten the lesson."

2. The boy said, "I shall go out and play."

3. He said, "I am happy to be here today."

4. They said, "We shall play the game again tomorrow."

5. The boy said, "Two and two make four."

6. "I have lost my books and yours too", she told them.

7. The princess says, "I have lost my way."

8. They say, "We must keep our locality clean."

9. The girl says, "These books are theirs, but this one is mine."

10. The Happy Prince said, "I led dance in the great hall."

B. Use different forms of tenses of the verb 'write' as in the following example and then change the narration. (নিচের উদাহরণের মতো 'write verb-এর বিভিন্ন tense-এর বাক্য গঠন কর এবং Narration পরিবর্তন কর।)

| Tense | Direct | Indirect |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|----------|
| Simple Present | Mrinal said, "I write a letter" | ..... |
| Pr. Continuous | Mrinal said, "....." | ..... |
| Pr. Perfect | Mrinal said, "....." | ..... |
| Pr. perfect Cont. | Mrinal said, "....." | ..... |
| Simple Past | Mrinal said, "....." | ..... |
| Past Continuous | Mrinal said, "....." | ..... |
| Past Perfect | Mrinal said, "....." | ..... |
| Simple Future | Mrinal said, "....." | ..... |

Narration of Interrogative Sentences (প্রশ্নসূচকবাক্য)

Rules :

(i) If the Direct Speech is in Interrogative sentence, Reporting Verbs such as *say*, *tell* etc. are changed into *ask*, *enquire* etc. in the Indirect Speech and the Verb takes an object.
 [যদি Direct Speech-টি Interrogative বাক্য থাকে, তাহলে *say*, *tell* প্রভৃতি Reporting Verb-টি Indirect Speech-এ *ask* এ পরিবর্তিত হয়। এবং এই verb-এরপর একটি object বসে।]

(ii) If the Direct Speech begins with some 'wh' question word, such as *who*, *what*, *where*, *why*, *how*, etc. the question word is retained in the Indirect Speech.
 [যদি Direct Speech-টি *who*, *what*, *where*, *why*, *how* ইত্যাদি প্রশ্নবোধক শব্দ দিয়ে শুরু হয়, তবে ঐ প্রশ্নবোধক শব্দগুলি Indirect Speech-এ থেকে যায়।]

(iii) But if the Direct Speech does not begin with such question word, for *whether* is used as the linker.
 [কিন্তু যদি Direct Speech-টি *who*, *what*, *where*, *why*, *how* প্রভৃতি কোন প্রশ্নবোধক শব্দ দিয়ে শুরু না হয়, তাহলে সংযোজক শব্দ হিসাবে *if* বা *whether* বসে।]

(iv) The order of words in the Indirect Speech is changed from the interrogative construction to the Assertive construction and the note of interrogation becomes Fullstop.

[Indirect Speech-এ প্রশ্নবোধক বাক্যের বিপরীতমূলক বাক্যের গঠনে পরিবর্তিত হয়ে যায় এবং প্রশ্নচিহ্ন ফুলস্টপ হয়ে যায়।]

Questions beginning with Do/Does/Did/Is/Am/Are etc.

Direct : "Do you know the way to the station?" She said to Mahim.

Indirect : She asked Mahim if (whether) he knew the way to the station.

Direct : "Does she require any help?" the old man asked me.

Indirect : The old man asked me if she required any help.

Direct : I said to the boy, "Did you go to school?"

Indirect : I asked (enquired of) the boy if he had gone to school.

Direct : "Is not poverty a curse?" my father said to me.

Indirect : My father asked me if poverty was (is) not a curse.

Direct : "Are you weeping?" he asked her.

Indirect : He asked her if she was weeping.

Direct : "Have you brought a pen for me?" the girl said to her father.

Indirect : The girl asked her father if he had brought a pen for her.

Direct : "Can you see a woman seated at a table?" he asked her.

Indirect : He asked her if she could see a woman seated at a table.

Direct : Persome said, "Marie, isn't the soup boiling yet?"

Indirect : Persome asked Marie if the soup was not boiling by that time.

Direct : "Would you sing for our visitors?" my mother said to my sister.

Indirect : My mother asked my sister if she would sing for our visitors.

Direct : "Do you suppose you know better than your own father?" jeered his angry mother.

Indirect : His mother angrily asked (enquired) whether he supposed that he knew better than his own father.

Direct : My brother said to me, will you not go to the show?"

Indirect : My brother asked me if I would not go to the show.

***Note :** An Interrogative sentence beginning with *shall* takes the form *would* in the past tense in the Indirect Speech. But *should* is retained when it implies a matter of duty.

[Interrogative Sentence -এর *should* Indirect Speech-এ Past tense-এ *would* হয়ে যায়। কিন্তু কর্তব্য বা ঐচ্ছিক বাক্যে *should* অপরিবর্তিত থাকে।]

Direct : I said to him, "Shall I reach the village before dawn?"

Indirect : I asked him if I would reach the village before dawn.

Direct : The girl said, "Shall I go out for shopping?"

Indirect : The girl asked if she would go out for shopping.

But

Direct : Nikhil said to me, "Shall I wait for you for an hour?"

Indirect : Nikhil asked me if he should wait for me for an hour.

Wh' Questions

Direct : I said to the man, "Who are you?"

Indirect : I asked the man who he was.

Direct : He said to me, "What are you doing?"

Indirect : He asked me what I was doing.

Direct : "Where do you live?" asked the stranger.

Indirect : The stranger asked (him) where he lived.

Direct : "Why are you weeping?" the Swallow asked the Prince.

Indirect : The Swallow enquired of the Prince why he was weeping.

Direct : "Why doesn't she talk to me any more?"

Indirect : I thought to myself why she did not talk to me any more.

Direct : "When will you come back?" the prince said to the Swallow.

Indirect : The Prince asked the Swallow when he would come back.

Direct : "How did you do that?" they asked Edison.

Indirect : They asked Edison how he had done that.

Direct : He said to me, "Which book do you want?"

Indirect : He asked me which book I wanted.

Direct : "Who was the first man to fly in the space?" the examiner asked the boy.

Indirect : The examiner asked the boy who was the first man to fly in the space.

***Note :**

In the last sentence, the order of words has not been changed as the interrogative word *who* has been used as the subject of the sentence.

[যদিও ক্রম, শেষ বাক্যে order of word পরিবর্তন হয়নি, কারণ *who* নিজেকে Subject বলে *who*-র পরেই Verb বসে।]

Of course, such a sentence may be reported thus:

The examiner wanted to know the name of the first man who flew in the space.

Changes in Question Tags.

Direct : He said to me, "You are going to the play ground, aren't you?"

Indirect : He asked me whether it was true that I was going to the playground.

[Or] He asked me whether I was going to the playground and assumed that I was.

P.C.D. (11B)

Direct : He said to me, "You didn't cause much damage to the book, did you?"

Indirect : He asked me whether I had caused much damage to the book.

[Or] He asked me whether I had caused much damage to the book and assumed that I had not.

EXERCISE II

A. Report the following sentences in Indirect Speech.
(নিচের বাক্যগুলিকে Indirect Speech-এ রিপোর্ট কর।)

1. The boy said to me, "Will you accompany me?"
2. She said to me, "Shall I post these letters for you?"
3. He said to me, "Have you done your home task?"
4. "Is it good or bad?" asked Rahim.
5. "Is there anybody there?" said the traveller.
6. "Are you coming with me?" he asked.
7. Hasina said to the man, "Do you know Mr. Das?"
8. The man said to me, "Do you know where he lives?"
9. She said to me, "Did you write to me before?"
10. Lila said to me, "Can you tell me his address?"

B. Report the following sentences in Indirect Speech.
(নিচের বাক্যগুলিকে Indirect Speech-এ রিপোর্ট কর।)

1. "What are you doing here?" he wanted to know.
 2. "What do you think of it?" Edison asked John.
 3. "Who are you and what do you want of us?" I said to them.
 4. "Where had you been yesterday?" I asked her.
 5. Father said to me, "When did you do it?"
 6. I said to Ramen, "Whose pen are you using?"
 7. Mother said to the boy, "What is your father?"
 8. He said to them, "How are you?"
 9. He said, "How could such a man be a teacher?"
 10. I said to him, "Why have you failed?"
 11. He said to me, "When will the down train arrive?"
 12. "Who was the first man to land on the moon?" asked the examiner.
- C. Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.
1. I said to him, "Are you going home, aren't you?"
 2. He said to me, "Didn't you do your homework, did you?"
 3. Father said to me, "Have you bought a pen from market for me, have you?"
 4. My friend said to me, "Haven't you enjoyed the pathar Panchali, have you?"

Narration of Imperative Sentence

[Commands, requests etc. (আদেশ অনুবোধমূলক)]

Rules :

(i) The Reporting verb becomes *order*, *request*, *advise*, *ask*, *tell* etc. according to the sense. Hence the words '*said to me*', '*said to him*' etc. becomes '*ordered*' me', '*advised* (d) him' etc.

[Reporting Verb অর্থ অনুসারে *order*, *request*, *advise*, *tell*, *ask* ইত্যাদি হয়। যেমন '*said to me*', '*said to him*' ইত্যাদি '*order* (ed) me', '*advise*(d) him' ইত্যাদি হয়।]

(ii) The imperative mood is changed into the infinitive. Hence *to* is used before the main verb to make it infinitive.

[Imperative mood-টি] Infinitive mood-এ পরিবর্তন হওয়ার জন্য যখন verb-টি আগে to যুক্ত হয়।

(iii) Negative Imperative may be expressed by using not before infinitive in the Indirect Speech. The Reporting verb *forbid*, *prohibit* etc. may also be used without using *not*.

[Negative Imperative কে Indirect Speech করতে হলে infinitive-এর not বসাতে হয়, অথবা *not* না বসলে *forbid*, *prohibit* প্রভৃতি Reporting verb বসানো যায়।]

(iv) Such expressions as *please*, *sir* in the Direct are left out in Indirect Speech and they are rendered by the verb *request* or by adverb *kindly*, *politely* etc.

[Direct Speech এর *Please*, *Sir* ইত্যাদি Indirect Speech-এ কৃপে দেওয়া এবং তার অর্থ প্রকাশের জন্য Reporting Verb-টিকে *request* করা হয় অথবা *kindly*, *politely* ইত্যাদি adverb যোগ করা হয়।]

- Direct : The officer shouted to his men, "Halt!"
 Indirect : The officer *ordered* his men *to halt*.
 Direct : Father said to me, "Go home at once."
 Indirect : Father *ordered* me *to go* home at once.
 Direct : The teacher said to me, "Don't come here."
 Indirect : The teacher *ordered* me *not to go* there.
 or, The teacher *forbade* me *to go* there.
 Direct : He said to me, "Please open the door."
 Indirect : He *requested* me *to open* the door.
 or, he *told* me *politely* *to open* the door.
 Direct : He said to me, "Please wait here till I return."
 Indirect : He *requested* me *to wait* there till he returned.
 Direct : I said to him, "Please explain the passage."
 Indirect : I *requested* him *to explain* the passage.
 Direct : Mother said to him, "Don't run in the sun."
 Indirect : Mother *advised* him *not to run* in the sun.
 or, Mother *forbade* him *to run* in the sun.

When *order*, *request*, *advise*, etc. are not clearly expressed, *tell* or *ask* may be used as the Reporting Verb. (যখন *order*, *request*, *advise* ইত্যাদি পরিষ্কারভাবে বোঝা যায় না তখন Reporting Verb হিসাবে *tell* বা *ask* ব্যবহার করা হয়।)

- Direct : He said to me, "Don't do it again."
 Indirect : He *told* (asked) me *not to do* it again.
 Direct : "Don't forget to give her the information," he said to you.
 Indirect : He *told* (reminded) you *not to forget* to give her the information.
 Direct : Rina said to him, "Sir, Don't go home now."
 Indirect : Rina *asked* him *politely* *not to go* home then.

Imperative beginning with 'Let'

When *Let* in the Direct Speech expresses a proposal or suggestion we may use *should* for *Let* and change the Reporting verb into *propose* or *suggest*. Moreover the Imperative form is changed into Assertive form with the linker *that*.

[যদি Direct Speech-টি *Let* দিয়ে শুরু হয়, এবং এই *let* যারা যদি কোন *proposal* বা *suggestion* বোঝায়, তাহলে Reporting verb-টি *propose* বা *suggest* হয়।]

Imperative form -টি Assertive form এ পরিবর্তিত হয় এবং linker হিসাবে *that* যুক্ত হয়।

- Direct : Lila said to her friends, "Let us have a picnic on Sunday."
 Indirect : Lila *proposed* (suggested) to her friends *that they should* have a picnic on Sunday.
 Direct : He said to his companions, "Let us not miss this chance."
 Indirect : He *proposed* (suggested) to his companions *that they should* not miss that chance.

But When *Let* does not express a proposal, it should be changed into *might*, *may* or *could* or into some other form according to the context.

[যদি *Let* যারা *Proposal* বা *suggestion* না বোঝায়, তাহলে *Let* কে *might* বা *may* or *could* বা অন্য কোন form-এ পরিবর্তিত করা হয়।]

- Direct : We said, "Let him tell the story."
 Indirect : We said *that he might* (or *might be allowed to*) tell the story.
 Direct : She said, "Let him eat whatever he likes."
 Indirect : She said *that he might* (or *might be allowed to*) eat whatever he liked.
 Direct : He said, "Let me come in."
 Indirect : He *requested* *that he might* be allowed to come in.

Imperatives with must, would and could

The Modals *must*, *would* and *could* are not normally changed in the Indirect Speech. You should also note that some sentences with *would* and *could* are interrogative in form but Imperative in nature.

[*Must*, *would*, *could* প্রভৃতি Modal-গুলি Indirect Speech-এ সাধারণতঃ পরিবর্তন হয় না। আরো লক্ষ্য কর কতকগুলি বাক্য *Could* অথবা *would* দিয়ে আরম্ভ হয়ে interrogative form হলেও এগুলি বাক্যতঃ Imperative বাক্য।]

- Direct : He said to me, "You *must* leave the place."
 Indirect : He *told* me *that I must* leave the place.
 Direct : He said to me, "Would you help me to do the sum?"
 Indirect : He *requested* me *to help* him *to do* the sum.
 Direct : I said to her, "Could you give me a cup of tea?"
 Indirect : I *requested* her *to give* me a cup of tea.

EXERCISE III

A. Report the following sentences in Indirect Speech.

(নিচের বাক্যগুলিকে Indirect Speech-এ লেখ।)

1. The master said to his servant, "Do as I told you."
2. The teacher said to the boys, "Don't make so much noise."
3. Kanika said to me, "Please lend me your pen."
4. He said, "Be quiet and listen to my words."
5. She said to her father, "Kindly excuse me this time."
6. The General said to his soldiers, "March forward!"

B. Change the following Direct Speech into Indirect Speech.

(নিচের Direct Speech -গুলিকে Indirect Speech-এ পরিবর্তন কর।)

1. I said to the teacher, "Let me come in."
2. He said, "Let us wait for the award."

3. I said, "Let him do what he likes."
4. Father said to his son, "You must do this."
5. The hare said to the tortoise, "Let us run a race."
6. Rekha said to her mother, "Let me look out the window."

Narration of Optative Sentence

[Wishes, prayers etc. (ইচ্ছা, প্রার্থনাসূচক)]

Optative sentences express wish or prayer. So Reporting Verb in such sentences are changed into wish, pray, desire, long, yearn for etc. Moreover the optative form is changed into Assertive form with the linker *that* in the Indirect Speech.

Optative Sentence যেহেতু ইচ্ছা বা প্রার্থনা বোঝায়, সেজন্য Reporting Verb হয় wish, pray ইত্যাদি। তাছাড়া Indirect Speech-এ Optative form-এ Assertive form-এ পরিবর্তিত হয় এবং Linker হিসাবে *that* বসে।

- Direct : I said to him, "May you be happy."
 Indirect : I wished that he might be happy.
 Direct : Mother said to me, "May God bless you."
 Indirect : Mother prayed that God might bless me.
 Direct : He said, "May his soul rest in peace."
 Indirect : He prayed that his soul might rest in peace.
 Direct : The girl said, "Oh, had I the wings of a dove."
 Indirect : The girl wished that she could have the wings of a dove.

EXERCISE-IV

Report the following sentences into Indirect Speech.

(নিচের বাক্যগুলিকে Indirect Speech-এ রূপান্তর করুন।)

1. I said to him, "May you live long."
2. Nilima said to me, "May you recover soon."
3. Mother said to him, "May God grant you a long life."
4. The holy man said, "May peace prevail."
5. She said, "May Mother Teresa recover from illness soon."
6. He said, "Oh, if I could bring my departed friend back to life."

Narration of Exclamatory Sentence

[Sudden emotion (আবেগসূচক)]

Rules :

(i) In Exclamatory sentences, the Reporting verb is changed to *exclaim* in (with) *grief*, *exclaim* in *joy*, *exclaim* in *wonder* etc. according to the sense of *Alas*, *Hurrah* etc. But in some cases where one is not sure about the nature of exclamation, it is advised to change the Reporting verb into *cry* or *exclaim* only. Other forms of Reporting Verbs are *scream*, *shout*, *applaud* etc.

[Exclamatory sentence-কে Indirect Speech-এ পরিবর্তন করতে হলে *Alas*, *Hurrah* ইত্যাদির অর্থ অনুযায়ী *exclaim* in *grief*, *exclaim* in *joy*, *exclaim* in *wonder* ইত্যাদি হয়। কিন্তু যেখানে exclamation-এর প্রকৃতি সম্বন্ধে নিশ্চিত হওয়া যায় না, সেখানে Reporting Verb-কে *exclaim* বা *cry* out করাই সর্বোত্তম। Exclamatory Sentence-এ Reporting Verb-এর অন্যান্য form গুলি হলো *scream*, *shout*, *applaud* ইত্যাদি।]

(ii) The Exclamatory sentence is turned into a statement and linker *that* is used in the Indirect Speech.

[Indirect Speech-এ exclamatory sentence বা আবেগসূচক বাক্যটি Assertive sentence-এর মতো statement বা বিবৃতিতে পরিণত হয় এবং linker হিসাবে *that* ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

(iii) If the Exclamatory sentence begins with *What* or *How* to denote excess or extremity of emotion, it becomes *great* or *very* according to sense. Normally *great* is placed before a Noun and *very* is placed before an Adjective.

[যদি Exclamatory sentence আরম্ভের উত্তম বোঝাতে *What* বা *How* দিয়ে শুরু হয়, তাহলে তার পরিবর্তে *great* বা *very* বসে। সাধারণতঃ Noun-এর পূর্বে *great* এবং Adjective-এর পূর্বে *very* বসে।]

(iv) In Indirect Speech, the sentence ends with a full stop (.) and not an exclamation mark (!). It is applicable for all sorts of sentences as all these are assertive sentences or statement in Indirect Speech.

[Indirect Speech-এ note of exclamation-এর পরিবর্তে full stop বসে। এই নিয়মটি সকলপ্রকার sentence-এর পক্ষেই প্রযোজ্য, কারণ, Indirect Speech-এ সব sentence-ই statement বা বিবৃতি হয়ে যায়।]

- Direct : The boys said, "Hurrah! We have won the match."
 Indirect : The boys exclaimed in (with) joy that they had won the match.
 Direct : He said to me, "Alas! I could not save you."
 Indirect : He exclaimed in grief that he could not save me.
 Direct : The boy said, "What a fool I am!"
 Indirect : He exclaimed (cried out) that he was a great fool.
 Direct : He said, "What a nice bird it is!"
 Indirect : He exclaimed in wonder that it was a very nice bird.
 Direct : He observed, "How dirty the house is!"
 Indirect : He exclaimed that the house was very dirty.

Some Special uses of Exclamatory Sentences :

- Direct : "Help! Help!" shouted the woman.
 Indirect : The woman shouted for help.
 Direct : He said, "Good bye, my friends!"
 Indirect : He bade good bye to his friends.
 or,
 He bade his friends good bye.
 Direct : The teacher said, "Thank you, my boys!"
 Indirect : The teacher thanked them boys.
 Direct : He said, "By Jove! what a good news."
 Indirect : He swore by Jove that it was a very good news.
 Direct : She said to me, "Happy Christmas."
 Indirect : She wished me a Happy Christmas.
 Direct : He said to them, "Bravo! you have done well."
 Indirect : He applauded them saying that they had done well.
 Direct : The old man said to him, "Fie! You are such a coward."
 Indirect : The old man exclaimed that it was shameful that he was such a coward.
 Direct : He said, "Poor fellow! How changed you are."
 Indirect : He pitied the man and exclaimed that he was greatly changed.

- Direct : "So help me Heaven!" he cried, "I'll never do so again."
 Indirect : He *prayed to Heaven* to help him and *resolved* not to do again.
 Direct : He said, "who knew that this would happen!"
 Indirect : He said that *none* knew that (that) would happen.
 Direct : He said, "Good Gracious! What a huge snake." [সে কল্ল
 গুহের কল! কত বড় সাপ।]
 Indirect : He *exclaimed with wonder* that it was a huge snake.
 Direct : "Good Heavens! We have reached the station." said the boys.
 Indirect : The boys *exclaimed with delight* that they had reached the station.

EXERCISE-V

Report the following sentences in indirect speech.

(নিচের বাক্যগুলিকে Indirect Speech-এ রূপ দাও।)

1. He said, "Alas! I am undone."
2. He says, "Hurrah! my friend has come."
3. The teacher said to the boy, "Fie! you are a liar."
4. They cried out, "Bravo! it is a capital hit."
5. The girl said, "Ah! I am happy now."
6. The leader said to his men, "Good bye, Comrades!"
7. "How selfish I have been!" He said.
8. The girl remarked "What a fine picture it is!"
9. The teacher remarked, "What a stupid fellow you are!"
10. Tom said to John, "How clever you are!"
11. "By God! What an interesting piece of painting," they said.
12. "So help me Heaven!" he cried, "I will never steal again."

Narration of Vocatives (সংক্ষেপ)

It is important to note that conversion of vocatives into 'Addressing as' is now treated as 'Hackneyed English'. It should be avoided thus:

Direct : He said to the officer, "Yes, sir, I shall do this."

Indirect : He told the officer *politely* that he would do that.

[If we write, *Addressing the officer as sir*, he told him that he would do that—it would be bad English.]

Indirect : He told the officer *politely* that he would do that.

'Addressing as' should be used only when there is no other suitable way to express vocatives.

[Vocative-কে কেবল *Addressing as* দ্বারা প্রকাশ করা ছাড়া অন্য কোন বিকল্প না পাওয়া যায়, কেবলমাত্র *Addressing as* ব্যবহার করা হয়।]

Vocatives may be omitted as in the above example, or may be dealt with as below: [সংক্ষেপে বাক্য দেওয়া যায় অথবা অন্যভাবে পরিবর্তন করা চলে।]

Now study the conversion of the following vocatives.

[এক নিম্নের vocatives বা সংক্ষেপগুলির পরিবর্তন করা কর।]

- Direct : Father said, "Sunil, go to school."
 Indirect : Father asked Sunil to go to school.
 Direct : The teacher said, "Keep quiet, my boy!"
 Indirect : The teacher asked the boy to keep quiet.
 Direct : The teacher said, "Keep quiet, my dear boys!"
 Indirect : The teacher *affectionately* asked the boys to keep quiet.

- Direct : Bibhas cried, "My friend, I always thought of you."
 Indirect : Bibhas told his friend that he always thought of him.
 Direct : "Jim, darling" cried Della "Don't look at me that way."
 Indirect : Addressing Jim as her darling, Della implored him not to look at her that way.

Reporting Mixed Sentences

Rules:

(i) When the sentences of the same kind occur consecutively in the Direct Speech, the Reporting Verb becomes common and so it is to be used only once in the Indirect Speech. I such cases, the sentence are joined by 'and'.

[যখন Direct Speech-এ এক প্রকারের বাক্য পরপর থাকে, তখন Reporting Verb একমুখ্য ব্যবহৃত হয় এবং বাক্যগুলি and দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়।]

(ii) When the sentences of different kinds are joined, different Reporting Verbs have to be used in the Indirect Speech.

[যখন Indirect Speech-এ ভিন্ন ভিন্ন ধরনের বাক্য যোগ করতে হয়, তখন ভিন্ন ভিন্ন Reporting Verb ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

(iii) A useful connective device is to use *Then, added that, further said that* or *also said that*.

[ভিন্ন ভিন্ন বাক্য যোগ করতে একটি প্রয়োজনীয় সৌশল হচ্ছে *Then, added that, further said that* বা *also said that* ব্যবহার করা।]

Direct : I said to him, "Who are you? what do you want?"

Indirect : I *asked* him who he was and what he wanted.

Direct : Shila said to me, "I have left my pencil at home. Can you give me one to write with?"

Indirect : Shila *told* me that she had left her pencil at home and *asked* me if I could give her one to write with.

Direct : Mr. Sen said to his friend, "What time is it? My watch has stopped."

Indirect : Mr. Sen *asked* his friend what time it was and *added that* (further said that/also said that) his watch had stopped.

Direct : Binman said, "Why are you still waiting here, Bipin? Go away now."

Indirect : Binman *asked* Bipin why he was still waiting there. *Then* he *ordered* (advised) him to go away.

APPLIED SECTION

(For Questions and Answer—'Yes' and 'No')

In changing 'Yes' or 'No' into Indirect Speech we should repeat the verb of question or the common verb 'do' or the sense of the verb.

The ugly forms 'replied in the affirmative' and 'replied in the negative' should be avoided now a days.

[Yes বা No-কে Indirect Speech-এ আনতে হলে Direct Speech-এ যে Verb উঠা আছে, তাকে আনতে হয়। অথবা ঐ Verb-এর পরিবর্তে do Verb আনতে হয়। এছাড়া কেবলমাত্র 'replied in the affirmative' এবং 'replied in the negative' এরকম বিকৃত form এড়িয়ে যাওয়া হয়।]

The teacher said to the boy, "Are you ill?"

The boy replied, "No".

The teacher asked the boy if he was ill, and the boy *replied* that he was not.

The host said to her, "Have all the guests arrived?"

She replied, "Yes".

= The host asked her if all the guests had arrived and she replied that they had.

Some one asked her, "Will you take some more luchies?"

She said, "No". [= She refused to take any more luchies.]

Some one asked him, "Did you break the glass?"

He said, "No, I didn't do it." [= He denied that he had broken it.]

Or, He denied having done it.

Nikhil : Could you accompany me?

Rakesh : No, I can't. [= Rakesh told Nikhil that he could not do that.]

REPORTING DIALOGUES/MESSAGES

Normally in real life situations, we do not report every word of the sentence. Many irrelevant points are intentionally omitted while reporting. Hence conversations and talks are reported in a summary form. Hackneyed expressions like "Addressing him (his friend) by the name of Suren" or "replied in the negative", "replied in the affirmative" etc. should be avoided. Stress should be laid on reflecting the true mood of the dialogue or the message.

[সাধারণতঃ বাস্তব পরিস্থিতিতে আমরা যাকের প্রতিটি শব্দকে report করি না। অনেক অপ্রাসঙ্গিক কথা বাদ দিতে হয়। সেজন্য অনেক সময় কথোপকথনকে সংক্ষিপ্ত আকারে report করতে হয়। "Addressing him (his friend) by the name of Suren", "replied in the negative", "replied in the affirmative" ইত্যাদি report করার ভালো উপায় নয়। Dialogue (সংলাপ) বা Message (সংবাদ) -এর প্রকৃত অর্থটি প্রকাশ করার উপর জোর দিতে হয়।]

A dialogue can be reported in three ways :

(i) by the speaker, (ii) by the listener, (iii) by a third person.

[Dialogue বা সংলাপ তিনভাবে report করা যায়-বক্তার দ্বারা, শ্রোতার দ্বারা বা তৃতীয় কোন ব্যক্তির দ্বারা।]

Study the following examples :

Example -1.

Bikash : Hallo, Subhash, where are you going?

Subhas : I'm going to the play ground to witness a football match. why don't you accompany me ?

Bikash : I can't. I'm going to the station to receive my sister who is coming from Delhi by the Rajdhani Express alone.

Subhas : Then you must hurry up. I'll see you at your house this evening.

(i) Now imagine you are Bikash and report the above dialogue :
(মনে কর তুমি বিকাশ এবং উপরের dialogue-টি report কর।)

I greeted Subhas (not, addressed Subhas by saying Hallo) and asked him where he was going. Subhas replied that he was going to the playground to witness a football match and requested me to accompany him (not, asked me why I did not accompany him). I told him that I could not do that because I was going to the station to receive my sister who was coming from Delhi by the Rajdhani Express alone. Subhas asked me to hurry up and told me that he would see me at my house that evening.

(ii) Now imagine you are Subhas and report the above dialogue:
(মনে কর তুমি সুভাষ এবং উপরের dialogue-টি report কর।)

Bikash asked me where I was going and I replied that I was going to the play ground to witness a football match. I requested him to accompany me. Bikash told me that he could not do that because he was going to the station to receive his sister who was coming from Delhi by the Rajdhani Express alone. Then I asked him to hurry up and told him that I would see him at his house that evening.

(iii) Now report the above dialogue as a third person : (মনে কর তুমি তৃতীয় কোন ব্যক্তি এবং উপরের dialogue-টি report কর।)

Bikash greeted Subhas and asked him (Subhas) where he was going. Subhas replied that he was going to the playground to witness a football match. He also requested Bikash to accompany him. Bikash told him that he could not do that because he was going to the station to receive his sister who was coming from Delhi by the Rajdhani Express alone. Then Subhas asked him to hurry up and told him that he (Subhas) would see him at his house that evening.

Note In the three forms of the reporting, Pronouns should be carefully changed.

[লক্ষ্য কর, Reporting-এর এই তিনরকম form-এ Pronoun গুলিকে সতর্কভাবে পরিবর্তন করতে হয়। ব্যক্তি নিয়ম সবই একত্রকার।]

Example 2

Mala received a message from a messenger for her brother Dipu. The following was the conversation between them : [M. P. 1990]

Messenger : Hallo! Is Dipu at home?

Mala : No, he's not. I'm his sister Mala.

Messenger : Could you tell him I've brought two tickets for 'Pather Panchali'? I'll be at the main gate of Nandan today at 1 p. m. sharp.

Mala : All right.

Messenger : Thank you, good bye.

Imagine you are Mala. You have to go out: So write a message for Dipu. You can do it in about 40 words.

[Note : he's = he is; I'm = I am; I'll = I will; I've = I have.]

Ans.

Dear Dipu,

Someone (possible your friend) came to see you at our home. He told me that he had brought two tickets for 'Pather Panchali' and he would be at the main gate of Nandan today at 1 p. m. sharp.

Mala.

Example 3

Read the following conversation between a teacher and a student :

Teacher : Why were you absent? The Headmaster has got angry with you. Go to him and see him at once.

Student : I'm sorry, sir. Now I'll go to him and pray to him to excuse me for the first time.

(i) The student reports :

The teacher asked me why I had been absent. He then informed me that the Headmaster had got angry with me. So he advised me to go and see the Headmaster at once. However I apologised and told the teacher that I would go to the Headmaster and pray to him to excuse me for the first time.

(ii) Report it as a third person.
The teacher asked the student why he had been absent. He (the teacher) then informed him that the Headmaster had got angry with him (the student). So he advised him to go and see the Headmaster at once. The student apologised and said that he would go to the Headmaster and pray to him to excuse him for the first time.

Example 4.

Read the following conversation :

Prabir : Where are you going now?
Subir : To Durgapur.
Prabir : Why are you going there?
Subir : To meet my uncle.
Prabir : What does he do there?
Subir : He is employee of the steel plant.

(i) Now study how the conversation can be reported in detail by another person after a few days.

Prabir asked Subir where he was going then. Subir replied that he was going to Durgapur. Prabir then asked him why he was going there. Subir replied that he was going there to meet his uncle. Prabir further asked him what his uncle used to do there. In reply Subir told him that his uncle was (is) an employee of the Steel plant.

***Note** If Subir's uncle is still an employee of the Steel Plant, the verb form will be 'is' instead of 'was'.

(ii) Now study how the conversation can be reported in a summary form :

In reply to Prabir's queries Subir informed him that he was going to Durgapur to meet his uncle who was (is) an employee of the Steel Plant.

Example 5

Report the following.

The traveller said, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn?" "Yes" said the peasant, "do you want one in which you can spend the night?" "No", replied the traveller, "I only want a meal."

Reported Speech :

The traveller asked the peasant if he could tell him the way to the nearest inn. The peasant replied that he could, and asked whether the traveller wanted one in which he could spend the night. The traveller answered that he did not wish to stay there, but only wanted a meal.

***Note** It will be noticed that we have avoided the ugly phrases replied in the affirmative 'and' replied in the negative 'by using 'could' and 'he did not wish to stay there'.

Example 6.

Report the following.

"Who hath dared to wound thee?" cried the giant; "tell me that I may take my big sword and slay him."

"Nay!" answered the child, "but these are the wounds of love."

"Who art thou?" said the giant and a strange awe fell on him and he knelt before the child.

Reported Speech :

The giant angrily asked the child who had dared to wound him and requested him (the child) to tell him so that he might take his big sword and slay him. The child answered that no one had wounded him, but

those were the wounds of love. When the giant wanted to know who he (the child) was, a strange awe fell on him, and he knelt before the child.

Example 7.

Report the following :

"I am waited for in Egypt", said the Swallow. "My friends are flying up and down the Nile, and talking to the large lotus-flowers. Soon they will go to sleep in the tomb of the great king."
"Swallow, Swallow, little Swallow", said the Prince, "will you not stay with me for one night, and be my messenger?" The boy is so thirsty, and the mother so sad.

Reported Speech :

The Swallow said that he was waited for in Egypt and added that his friends were flying up and down the Nile, and talking to the large lotus flowers, and soon they would go to sleep in the tomb of the great king. The Prince earnestly requested (not, asked) the Swallow to stay with him for one night and be his messenger, and added that the boy was very (not so) thirsty, and the mother very (not so) sad.

Example 8.

Report the following.

Bishop : My dear, there's so much suffering in the world, and I can do so little, so very little.

Persone : Suffering, yes, but you never think of the suffering you cause to those who love you best, the suffering you cause to me.

Bishop : You, sister dear? Have I hurt you?

Reported Speech :

The Bishop told Persone affectionately that there was so much suffering in the world, and he could do so little. Persone admitted that there was suffering, but he never thought of the suffering he caused to those who loved him best, the suffering he caused to her. The Bishop was surprised at his sister's words and asked her if he had hurt her.

Example 9.

Report the following.

Davy : You have a trade, a present, Mr. Faraday?

Faraday : Yes, Sir, I am a book binder.

Davy : And you desire to change?

Faraday : Yes, Sir, I am anxious to do so.

Davy : Why?

Reported Speech :

Davy asked Faraday if he had a trade. Faraday replied that he was a book-binder. Then Davy asked him whether he desired to change his trade. Faraday told him politely that he was anxious to do so. Davy wanted to know the reason.

Example 10.

Report the following.

Sergeant : You know him? Come back here. What sort of man is he?

Man : Come back, is it, Sergeant? Do you want me killed?

Sergeant : Why do you say that?

Reported Speech :

The Sergeant asked the man if he knew him. He further told him to go back there and asked him what sort of man he was. The man ironically (विपरीत अर्थ) asked the Sergeant if he (Sergeant) wanted him go back to get killed. The sergeant wanted to know the reason.

Example 11.

Sergeant : Stop. Didn't I tell you to stop? You cannot go there.
Man : Oh! Very well. It is hard thing to be very poor. All the world is against the poor.

Reported Speech :

The sergeant ordered the man to stop and harshly reminded him that he had already asked him to stop. He (the sergeant) warned him that he could not go there.

The man reluctantly admitted it and said (commented) that it was hard thing to be very poor that all the world was against the poor.

Example 12

Man : Can you cure a headache?
Chemist : (Thrusting a bottle under the man's nose) I am sure your headache is gone now.
Man : You fool. It is my wife that has got the headache, not me.

Reported Speech.

The man asked the chemist if he could cure a headache. Thrusting a bottle under the man's nose the chemist said that he was sure that his headache was gone then. Then the man angrily called the chemist a fool and said that it was his wife that had got a headache and not he.

Example 13.

Hannah : Mrs. Meldon wants to know whether you'll come downstairs to tea or have it up here?
Corrie : Has she got back?
Hannah : Yes, Sir. She expected you to meet her at the station. Sir. She waited a long time in the cold, and then got Marshall to drive her up.

Reported Speech.

Hannah informed Mr. Corrie that Mrs. Meldon wanted to know whether he would go downstairs to tea or have it up there. Corrie wanted to know whether she had got back. Hannah politely replied that she had. She (Hannah) further informed him that she (Mrs. Meldon) had expected him to meet her at the station, that she had waited a long time in the cold, and then got Marshall to drive her up.

*[Note that Hanna is a feminine character. In the drama 'Progress' the direction has been given as 'she turns to go']

Example 14.

Mrs. Meldon : It's all in your head?
Corrie : Yes, Yes. Don't keep on repeating yourself, but come and help to clear the mess you've made.
Mrs. Meldon : Henry, won't you do what I ask you?

Reported Speech :

Mrs. Meldon asked Corrie if it was all in his head. Corrie replied irritatingly and asked her not to keep on repeating herself, but to go

and help to clear the mess she had made. Then Mrs. Meldon wanted to know from Henry if he would not do what she had asked him.

Example 15.

Mrs. Meldon : Henry, I beg you to destroy your invention.
Corrie : You what?
Mrs. Meldon : I beg you to destroy it. Let that be your memorial to Eddie!
Corrie : My dear Charlotte, I begin to believe that grief has unhinged your mind. Destroy my invention!
Mrs. Meldon : Your bomb will destroy life, Henry. I beg you to destroy it.
Corrie : Rubbish, woman, rubbish.

Reported Speech :

Mrs. Meldon called Corrie by his Christian name, Henry and begged him to destroy his invention. Corrie wanted to be sure of what she begged. Mrs. Meldon repeated that she begged him to destroy the invention and let that be his memorial to Eddie. Corrie addressed Mrs. Meldon by her Christian name Charlotte and said that he began to believe that grief had unhinged her mind. It was unbelievable to him that he should destroy his invention. Mrs. Meldon reminded Corrie that his bomb would destroy life. So she begged of him to destroy it. Being irritated by the suggestion, Corrie addressed Mrs. Meldon as 'woman' and repeatedly called her suggestion 'rubbish.'

***Note**

Here 'addressed' should not be avoided as Henry and Charlotte denote Christian names of Corrie and Mrs. Meldon respectively.]

EXERCISE-A1**A. Report the following dialogues :**

1. Corrie : I'm sorry, Charlotte, I ought not to be talked about the war to you—especially today.
Mrs. Meldon : I don't mind, Henry. And after all, the war office is not the war.

Imagine that you are

- (i) Corrie
- (ii) Mrs. Meldon
- (iii) a third person.

2. Corrie : What the hell are you doing?
Mrs. Meldon : I'm destroying your foul invention.
Corrie : (Laughing harshly) That won't destroy it. I've got it in my head. All that you've done, Charlotte, is to make a mess on my floor.

3. Mr. Faraday : Davy put his hand out.
Yes, Sir Humphry, said Michael, jumping to his feet.
Let's sit down here and talk the matter over' began Davy.

4. Father : How do you feel, Schatz?
Schatz : Just the same, so far.
Father : Why don't you try to sleep?
I'll wake you up for the medicine.

5. Seatz : About how long will it before I die?
 Father : You aren't going to die. What's the matter with you?
 Seatz : Oh, yes, I am. I heard him say a hundred and two.
 Father : People don't die with a fever of one hundred and two.
 That's a silly way to talk.
 6. Gandhi : You don't like Vegetables?
 Fischer : I don't like the taste of these vegetables three days running.
 Gandhi : Ah, you must add plenty of salt and lemon.
 Fischer : You want me to kill the taste?
 Gandhi : (Laughing) No, enrich the taste.
 Fischer : (Jokingly) You're so non-violent you wouldn't even kill a taste!
 7. Corrie : Oh, my dear Charlotte, I'm sorry, I did not meet you at the station.
 Mrs. Meldon : It doesn't matter, Henry. Only I thought you were coming — you said you would — and I waited a long time in the cold.
 8. Hannah : Mrs Meldon is not very happy today, sir.
 Corrie : Not happy? Why? I'm happy, aren't I?
 Hannah : Well, you see, Sir, it's three years ago today since her son was killed in the war!
 9. Corrie : I'm going to make war horrible, really horrible!
 Mrs. Meldon : Yes.
 Corrie : I've got something here, Charlotte, the formula for a bomb that will make war not only stupendously horrible, but will end it almost as quickly as it began.
 Mrs. Meldon : On that table?
 Corrie : Yes.
 10. Passenger : Four tickets to Panaji, please.
 Booking clerk : What class?
 Passenger : Second Class.
 Booking clerk : Won't you like to have first class tickets for the sea part of the journey from Nagar Haveli?
 Passenger : What would be the difference in price between the two classes per ticket?
 Booking clerk : Some twenty five rupees. Not much. But it will make your journey extremely enjoyable.
 11. Son : Shall we take a taxi or a bus to go to the exhibition?
 Father : It would be better we take a bus. It's really difficult getting a taxi at this rush hours. (hours = time)
 Son : Shall we go to the next bus stop? That is the terminus. There we would get vacant seats.
 Father : Yes, Yes; that's a good idea.
 12. Mr. Homes : Good morning, madam! My name is Shariack Homes. (Pointing out to Watson) This is my friend, Dr. Watson, before whom you can speak freely. But first I shall order you a cup of hot coffee, for I see that you are shivering.
 Lady : (in a low voice) It is not cold which makes me shiver.
 Mr. Homes : What is it then?
 Lady : It is fear. It is terror.

B. Write some dialogues in real life situations and report the same in third person.

- In a crowded bus you accidentally step on somebody's foot. Apologise.
 You :
 Somebody :
- At a railway station you want to have a cup of tea but you have only a ten-rupee note. What do you ask somebody there?
 You :
 Somebody :
- Your neighbour's radio is very loud and you feel disturbed. You have knocked at his door. What do you say?
 You :
 Neighbour :
- You meet a stranger in your town. He wants to go to the post office. He wants you to give the direction.
 The stranger :
 You :
- An old friend of yours has come to your town, and you meet him on the road. Invite him to come and spend the weekend with you.
 You :
 Your friend :

C. This is telephone message that a P. A. (Personal assistant) received for Mr. Sen, his boss. How would he report it to his boss?

- P. A. : Hallo!
 Mr. Roy : Good afternoon. Mr. Roy speaking. Could I speak to Mr. Sen?
 P. A. : I'm afraid, he has not yet returned from Bombay. Possibly he'll be here tonight.
 Mr. Roy : I telephoned at his home this morning, but couldn't get him. Would you give him a message from me, please? It's about our meeting on Friday. I have been suddenly called from the Head Office. It's better to postpone our meeting until next week.
 P. A. : Yes, sir, I'll give the message.
 Mr. Roy : Thank you. Good bye.
 P. A. : Good bye (or, Simply Bye)
Note that the first three lines do not come into the report. Begin like this:
 Sir,

Mr. Roy rang up to speak to you. He telephoned at your home too, but could not get you. He informed that

(signature)

P. A.

CHAPTER-23

VOICE CHANGE/DESCRIBING A PROCESS/
NARRATING EVENTS

What is Voice ?

Voice is the form of the verb which indicates whether the subject does the work or something has been done to it.

[ক্রিয়াবাক্যের ভবিষ্যৎকেই Voice বা বাক্য বলে। ক্রিয়ার প্রকাশভঙ্গি বলে দেয় কত কত কাজ নিজে করছে, না কর্তার দ্বারা কোন কাজ সম্পন্ন হচ্ছে।]

There are three kinds of Voices (Voice বা বাক্য ভিন্নকর্মের)।

(i) Active Voice, (2) passive Voice, (3) Quasi-Passive Voice.

Active Voice : When the Subject of a Sentence is the doer or actor, the Verb is in Active Voice. It is so because the Subject is active.

[কর্তা যখন নিজেই ক্রিয়ার কাজ সম্পন্ন করে, তখন ক্রিয়া Active Voice-এ থাকে। কারণ তখন Subject বা কর্তা Active বা সক্রিয়।]

I do this work. He does this work etc.

Passive Voice : When the Subject of a Sentence is acted upon, the verb is in Passive Voice. It is so because the Subject is passive.

[কর্তার দ্বারা যখন কোন কাজ সম্পন্ন হয়, তখন ক্রিয়ার Passive Voice হয়। এখানে কাজের ভুলনায় কর্তার গুরুত্ব কমে যায়।]

This work is done by me. This work is done by him ইত্যাদি।

Active-Passive Relation :

| | Subject | Verb | Object |
|-----------|----------|------------|---------------|
| Active : | Manika | Opened | the door |
| Passive : | The door | was opened | by Manika |
| | Subject | | Prep & Object |

Rules for changing Active Voice into Passive :

Rule 1 : The object of the verb in the Active Voice becomes the Subject of the Verb in the Passive Voice. [Active Voice-এর Object (কর্তা) Passive Voice-এর Subject (কর্তা) হয়।]

Rule 2 : The Subject of the Verb in the Active Voice becomes the object in the Passive Voice generally Preceded by the preposition *by*. [Active Voice এর Subject Passive Voice-এর object-এ পরিণত হয় এবং তার পূর্বে সাধারণত *by* বসে।]

Rule 3 : The main verb is changed into the past participle form and it is preceded by the correct form of the Verb 'to be' in Passive Voice [Active Voice-এর মূল Verb -টি Passive Voice-এর Past Participle-এ পরিবর্তিত হয় এবং তার পূর্বে 'to be' Verb এর প্রয়োজনীয় form বসাতে হয়।]

Rule 4 : There are some verbs with two objects. In such cases either of the Objects can be changed into the Subject and the other is retained as an object. This Object is called Retained Object. [Active Voice -এ যদি কোন Verb -এর দুটি Object থাকে, তাহলে একটি Object-কে Subject করে অপরটিকে Object রূপে রাখতে হয়। Passive-এ যেটি Object রূপে থেকে যায়, তাকে Retained Object বলে।]

Rule 5 : Double Passive should be avoided in a Simple sentence or in a single clause as it is liable to give a wrong meaning. But in changing the voice of Complex Sentences the Voices of both the Principal and Subordinate Clauses should be changed. [কোন Simple Sentence-এ বা কোন একটি Clause-এ Double Passive করা উচিত নয়, কারণ এতে বাক্যের অর্থ ভুল হয়ে যায়। অবশ্য Complex Sentence-এ Principal এবং Subordinate দুটি Clause-এই Passive করতে হয়।]

Verb Patterns of Passive Voice

| Tenses | Verb 'to be' | Past Participle of the main verb. |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| Simple Present & Past | am are is was were | caught killed done told cured caught |
| Continuous | am are is was were | being killed done told cured |
| Perfect | has have had | been arrested bought |
| Future | shall will | be built taught |

Table of Tenses in Active and Passive

| Tense | Active Voice | passive Voice |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| Simple Present | buys | is/are bought |
| Simple Past | bought | was/were bought |
| Present Continuous | is/are buying | is/are being bought |
| Past Continuous | was/were buying | was/were being bought |
| Present Perfect | has/have bought | has/have been bought |
| Past Perfect | had bought | had been bought |
| Simple Future | will buy | will be bought |
| Conditional | would buy | would be bought |
| Perfect Conditional | Would have bought | Would have been bought. |

Objective Forms of Pronouns to remember

| Subject Form | Object Form | Subject Form | Object Form |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| I | me | He | him |
| We | us | She | her |
| You | you | They | them |

Voice Change of Assertive Sentences

Passive form : be (is, am, are, was, were being, been) + Past Participle.

| Active | Passive |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| do the work. আমি কাজটি করি। | The work is done by me. |
| Lila writes a letter. লীলা চিঠি লেখে। | A letter is written by Lila. |
| Biltu helped him. বিল্টু তাকে সাহায্য করেছিল। | He was helped by Biltu. |
| Reba is singing a song. রেবা গান গাইছে। | A song is being sung by Reba. |
| she was singing a song. সে গান গাইছিল। | A song was being sung by her. |
| he has called me. সে আমাকে ডেকেছিল। | I have been called by him. |
| they had seen the picture. তারা ছবিটি দেখেছিল। | The picture had been seen by them. |
| you will play football. তুমি ফুটবল খেলবে। | Football will be played by you. |
| she would sing a song. সে গান গাইবে। | A song would be sung by her. |
| she would have read the book. সে বইটি পড়ে থাকবে। | The book would have been read by her. |

Imperative Sentences

If the verb in the Active Voice expresses orders, requests, advice etc., the word 'Let' is usually placed at the beginning of the Passive voice and the 'be' verb is placed before the Past Participle of the main verb. But if the sentence begins with 'please' in Active Voice, 'You are requested to' is used in the Passive Voice. In such cases an intransitive verb may also be changed into Passive with 'you are requested to.' Another form of the Passive is with the verb 'should' and 'be'.

Imperative sentence-এ আদেশ, অনুপ্রোথ, উপদেশ ইত্যাদি বোঝালে দাতকের প্রথমে *let* যোগ করে Passive করা হয়। *let* এবং *be* verb এর Past Participle এর পরে *be* verb যুক্ত হয়। কিন্তু Imperative Sentence-এ Active Voice-এ যদি *please* লিখি থাকে, তাহলে Passive Voice-এ 'You are requested to' কথাগুলি ব্যবহৃত হয়। আর যদিও সাধারণতঃ Intransitive Verb বা অকর্মকৃত ক্রিয়ার Passive Voice হয় না, তবুও এখানে *Please* থাকলে 'You are requested to' দিয়ে করে হারও Passive voice করা যায়। আর *should* এর *be* verb-এর সাহায্যেও আর একরকম Passive করা যায়।

Passive form : Let + Object + be + Past Participle of the Verb.

| Active | Passive |
|---|--|
| do this work. কাজটি কর। | Let this work be done. |
| open the door. দরজাটি খোল। | Let the door be opened. |
| put the door. দরজাটি বন্ধ কর। | Let the door be shut. |
| tell him to go. তাকে যেতে বল। | Let him be told to go. |
| ask him to do this work. তাকে এই কাজটি করতে বল। | You are requested to do this work. |
| ask to keep off the grass. দয়া করে ঘাস কাট। | You are requested to keep off the grass. |

| Active | Passive |
|---|---------------------------------|
| Please do not smoke. দয়া করে ধূমপান করবেন না। | You are requested not to smoke. |
| Please go there. দয়া করে সেখানে যান। | You are requested to go there. |
| Keep your word. ভোমার কথা রাখ। | Your word should be kept. |
| Obeey your teacher. তোমার শিক্ষককে মানা কর। | Your teacher should be obeyed. |
| Love the children. শিশুদের ভালোবাস। | The children should be loved. |
| Prepare for the worst. সবচেয়ে খারাপ প্রস্তুতি নিন। | Be prepared for the worst. |

Interrogative Sentences

An Interrogative Sentence in Active Voice keeps its Interrogative form in its Passive Voice. If the Interrogative Sentence begins with the Auxiliary Verb *Do*, the process of changing is convenient by changing it into Assertive first and then into Interrogative. But if the Interrogative sentence does not begin with *Do*, or begins with a *Wh* word it can be directly changed into passive.

Interrogative Sentence-এর Passive Voice-এ Interrogative Sentence-এর *Do* Verb দিয়ে শুরু হয়, তাহলে প্রথমে তাকে Assertive Sentence-এ পরিবর্তন করে তারপর তাতে Interrogative Sentence-এ পরিবর্তন করে নিদর্শনস্বরূপ। তবে যদি Auxiliary 'Do' না থাকে অথবা 'Wh' word দিয়ে শুরু হয়, তাহলে সরাসরি Passive-এ পরিবর্তন করা যায়।

Let us study the following examples. (নিচের উদাহরণগুলি দেখ।)

| | |
|-----------|--|
| Active | : Do you see the bird? তুমি কি পাখিটা দেখছ? |
| Assertive | : You see the bird. — The bird is seen by you. I |
| Passive | : Is the bird seen by you? |
| Active | : Did you see the man? তুমি কি মোকদ্দিকে দেখেছিলে? |
| Assertive | : You saw the man. — The man was seen by you. I |
| Passive | : Was the man seen by you? |
| Active | : Has he done it? সে কি এটা করেছে? |
| Passive | : Has it been done by him? |
| Active | : Have you read the book? তুমি কি বইটা পড়েছ? |
| Passive | : Has the book been read by you? |

Wh' Questions :

| | |
|---------|--|
| Active | : Who taught you English? কে তোমাকে ইংরেজি পড়িয়েছিলেন? |
| Passive | : By whom were you taught English? |
| Active | : Whom did you call? তুমি কারকে ডেকেছিলে? |
| Passive | : Who was called by you? |
| Active | : What do you want? তুমি কি চাও? |
| Passive | : What is wanted by you? |
| Active | : Why did the teacher punish you? শিক্ষক কেন তোমাকে শাস্তি দিয়েছিলেন? |
| Passive | : Why were you punished by the teacher? |
| Active | : Which book do you want? তুমি কি বই চাও? |
| Passive | : Which book is wanted by you? |

- Active : How did you do it ? এটা তুমি কিভাবে করলে?
 Passive : How was it done by you?

Negative Sentences

- Active : I do not like puffed rice. আমি ফুড়ি ভালবাসি না।
 Passive : Puffed rice is not liked by me. ফেস্টি গ্রান ভালহেনি।
 Active : The boy did not break the glass. ছেলেটি গ্লাস ভাঙেনি।
 Passive : The glass was not broken by the boy.
 Active : I have not given him the letter. আমি তাকে চিঠি দিইনি।
 Passive : The letter has not been given him by me.
 or, He has not been given the letter by me.
 Active : Has he not seen the picture? সে কি ছবিটা দেখেনি?
 Passive : Has not the picture been seen by him?
 Active : Had you not called him? তুমি কি তাকে ডাকনি?
 Passive : Had he not been called by you?
 Active : Reba will not call you. রেবা তোমাকে ডাকবে না।
 Passive : You will not be called by Reba.
 Active : She did not write a letter to you. সে তোমাকে চিঠি লেখেনি।
 Passive : A letter was not written to you by her.

(1) Passive Voice of Intransitive Verbs with cognate object :

We have so far noticed that the Transitive Verbs alone can be converted into the Passive Voice as they have objects. The Intransitive verbs having no objects can not be converted into the Passive Voice. However, when an Intransitive Verb is used Transitively having a cognate object, it can be changed into the Passive Voice.

- | Active | Passive |
|----------------------------------|---|
| He ran a race. | A race was run by him. |
| He dreamt a dream. | A dream was dreamt by him. |
| The patient slept a sound sleep. | A sound sleep was slept by the patient. |
| They have fought a good fight. | A good fight has been fought by me. |

(2) Intransitive Verb used Causatively (কারণে ঘরা করানো অর্থে) :

- Active : The trainer walked the horse after the race.
 Passive : The horse was walked after the race by the trainer.
 Active : They have stood the table against the wall.
 Passive : The table has been stood against the wall by them.

(3) Intransitive Verbs used as a group verb.

- Active : We should not laugh at a lame man.
 Passive : A lame man should not be laughed at by us.
 Active : We must listen to our teachers.
 Passive : Our teachers must be listened to (by us).
 Active : We talked of them.
 Passive : They were talked of by us.

***Note** Remember that *He is gone*, *He is come* are not in the Passive Voice. They are merely alternative forms of *He has gone*, *He has come*. But there is a slight difference in meaning between the two forms. In *He has gone*, emphasis is laid on the time of the action; but in *He is gone*, emphasis is laid on the state of the agent, i.e., his absence.

and not on the time of the action. However, *come here* or *go there* may be converted into the Passive Voice in the following way :

- Active : Come here.*
 Passive : You are requested to come here.
 Active : Go there.*
 Passive : You are requested to go there.*

Passive Voice of Transitive Verbs with two objects.

In such cases any of the objects may become the subject. But the indirect object or the Personal object is preferred for the subject. Another object is retained. Hence it is retained object.
 [একটি বস্তু দুটি object-এর মধ্যে যে কোন object-কে subject করা যায়। কিন্তু indirect object বা personal object-কে subject করাই অধিক সঙ্গত। এক্ষেত্রে অন্য যে object-টি Object হিসাবে থেকে যায়, তাকে বলে Retained Object.]

- Active : Mr. Das teaches us English.
 Passive : { (1) We are taught English by Mr. Das.
 (2) English is taught us by Mr. Das.
 Active : Bipin gave me a book.
 Passive : { (1) I was given a book by Bipin.
 (2) A book was given me by Bipin.
 Active : My friend sent me a gift.
 Passive : { (1) I was sent a gift by my friend.
 (2) A gift was sent me by my friend.
 Active : They handed him a leaflet.
 Passive : { (1) He was handed a leaflet by them.
 (2) A leaflet was handed him by them.
 Active : Gahar offered me a seat.
 Passive : { (1) I was offered a seat by Gahar.
 (2) A seat was offered me by Gahar.



Factitive Objects : [Transitive verb-এর যে object-টি complement-এর সহিত ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

- Active : They made him king.
 Passive : He was made king by them.
 King was made him by them. (wrong)
 Active : They elected him President.
 Passive : He was elected President by them.
 President was elected him by them. (wrong)

Reflexive Object : [self-স্বক object] Impersonal.

Reflexive Object cannot be changed into Subject.

- Active : He hurt himself.
 Passive : He was hurt by himself. (Not, Himself was hurt by him.)

***Note** But this is not good English. The Active form should be preferred. According to 'Modern English Usage' By Fowler, 'It is a familiar process. But it sometimes leads to bad grammar, false idiom or clumsiness.'

Passive of Infinitives (to + verb)

- Active : There are lots of things to do.
 Passive : There are lots of things to be done.
 Active : There is no time to lose.

| | |
|---------|--|
| Passive | : There is no time to be lost. |
| Active | : You have to admit this. |
| Passive | : This has to be admitted by you. |
| Active | : I am to make a telephone call. |
| Passive | : A telephone call is to be made by me. |
| Active | : You are to make this arrangement. |
| Passive | : This arrangement is to be made by you. |

Verbs followed by objects + Plain Infinitives.

| | |
|---------|--|
| Active | : I saw him go to the garden. |
| Passive | : He was seen to go to the garden. <i>by me.</i> |
| Active | : Lipika made us laugh. (to omitted) |
| Passive | : We were made to laugh by Lipika. |

Verbal Noun with Preposition & Object.

| | |
|---------|---|
| Active | : We went to see the landing of the ship. |
| Passive | : We went to see the ship being landed. |

Object understood in the Passive Voice : V.V.O

When the action is important, not the doer, or the doer is unknown the object with *by* is understood.

| | | | |
|--------|------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| Active | : I have lost my book. | Passive | : My book has been lost. |
| Active | : Someone has stolen my car. | Passive | : My car has been stolen. |
| Active | : Someone invited me to the party. | Passive | : I was invited to the party. |

এইরকম The shed is burnt to ashes. [Doer is unknown.]

English is spoken all over the world. [Not the doer, but the action is important here.]

Quasi-passive voice (কর্মকর্তৃবাচ্য)

A Quasi-passive voice is active in form but passive in sense. It may be changed in the passive form in the following way.

[Quasi-passive voice বা কর্মকর্তৃবাচ্য পঠনকালীনতে Active কিন্তু অর্থের দিক থেকে Passive; একে নিম্নলিখিত উপায়ে Passive form-এ পরিবর্তন করা যায় ।]

Verbs with a complement :

| | |
|---------|---|
| Active | : Honey tastes sweet. মধু স্বাদে মিষ্টি। |
| Passive | : Honey is sweet when it is tasted. |
| Active | : The rose smells sweet. ফোলাপুষ্প মিষ্ট গন্ধ দেয়। |
| Passive | : The rose is sweet when it is smelt. |
| Active | : The stone feels rough. |
| Passive | : The stone is rough when it is felt. |
| Active | : This composition reads well. |
| Passive | : This composition sounds well when it is read. |
| Active | : Your blame counts for nothing. |
| Passive | : Your blame is worth nothing when it is counted. |

Verbs without a complement :

| | |
|---------|-----------------------------------|
| Active | : The house is building. |
| Passive | : The house is being built. |
| Active | : The trumpets are sounding. |
| Passive | : The trumpets are being sounded. |
| Active | : The drums are beating. |
| Passive | : The drums are being beaten. |
| Active | : The book is printing. |

| | |
|---------|------------------------------|
| Passive | : The book is being printed. |
| Active | : The cow are milking. |
| Passive | : The cows are being milked. |

—Nesfield.

But the following Quasi-passive voice can not be changed into Passive forms. [কিন্তু নিচের কর্মকর্তৃবাচ্যগুলিকে কর্মবাচ্যে পরিবর্তিত করা যায় না ।]

A conch blows. (শাঁখ বাজে ।) [It expresses the quality of a conch.]

Rice sells cheap. (চট্টল সস্তা দরে বিক্রয় ।)

We can not say. Rice is cheap when it is sold.

Passive Voice of Complex Sentences

In changing the voice of Complex sentences the voices of both the Principal and the Subordinate clauses should be changed. The Introductory It may also be sometimes used in such cases.

Complex Sentence-এর Voice-পরিবর্তনে Principal ও Subordinate উভয় প্রকার Clause-এরই পরিবর্তন করতে হয়। এরূপ ক্ষেত্রে কখনো কখনো Introductory 'It' ব্যবহার করতে হয়।]

Active : We know that Columbus discovered America.
Passive : That America was discovered by Columbus is known to us.
Or. It is known to us that America was discovered by Columbus.

Active : We hope that we shall finish the work in time.
Passive : It is hoped that the work will be finished in time. *by us.*
Active : I can not depend on what he says.
Passive : What is said by him cannot be depended on by me.
Active : We must endure what we cannot cure.
Passive : What cannot be cured must be endured.

Sometimes one clause with transitive verb is turned into Passive and another with intransitive verb remains in Active Voice.

We know that the earth is round.

It is known to us that the earth is round.

***Note Double Passives in a simple sentence or in one clause should be avoided** as they are liable to give a wrong meaning.

[Simple Sentence-এ অথবা একটিমাত্র clause-এ Double Passive হলে ভুল অর্থ হয়ে যায় ।]

Active : They proposed to hold a meeting.
Incorrect Passive : A meeting was proposed to be held by them.
Correct Passive : It was proposed by them to hold a meeting.
Or. It was proposed by them that a meeting should be held.
Similarly. (অনুরূপভাবে) :

The judge ordered the culprit to be hanged. (Correct).

The culprit was ordered to be hanged by the judge. (Incorrect).

N. B. যদি *to be hanged by the judge* বলা হয়, তাহলে judge নিজেই যেন ফাঁসিতে ঝোলাবেন, এরূপ অর্থ বোঝায়, তাই এরকম Passive করলে অর্থ ভুল হবে।

Passive Voice with different Prepositions :

| | |
|---------|---|
| Active | : I know the fact. |
| Passive | : The fact is known to me. (not by me.) |
| Active | : His conduct shocked me. |

- Passive : I was shocked at his conduct. (not by his conduct)
 Active : Light filled the room.
 Passive : The room was filled with light. (not by light)
 Active : Her manners pleased us very much.
 Passive : We were very much pleased with her manners. (not by her manners)
 Active : The novels of Tolstoy interest me.
 Passive : I am interested in the novels of Tolstoy. (not by the novels of Tolstoy)

Some Peculiarities in Voice

- Active : One should keep one's promise.
 Passive : A promise should be kept. (by one—omitted)
 Active : Someone has stolen my purse.
 Passive : My purse has been stolen. (by someone—omitted)
 Active : Circumstances obliged me to go.
 Passive : I was obliged to go. (by circumstances—omitted)
 Active : We can gain nothing without labour.
 Passive : Nothing can be gained without labour. (by us—omitted)
 Active : Why did they refuse him admittance?
 Passive : Why was he refused admittance? (by them—omitted)
 Active : We should not encourage indiscipline.
 Passive : Indiscipline should not be encouraged. (by us—omitted)
 Active : Mother looked after the boy. (look after—group verb)
 Passive : The boy was looked after by mother. (prep. 'after' retained)
 Active : He has worked out the answer correctly (work out—group verb)
 Passive : The answer has been correctly worked out by him.
 Active : Some one built this building in 1990.
 Passive : This building was built in 1990. (by some one—omitted)
 Active : Dr. Das presided over the meeting.
 Passive : The meeting was presided over by Dr. Das.
 Active : He considers me honest.
 Passive : I am considered honest by him.
 Active : He likes people to obey him.
 Passive : He likes to be obeyed by people.
 Active : We ought to help the poor.
 Passive : The poor ought to be helped by us.
 Active : People believe that you know.
 Passive : It is supposed that you know.
 Active : We will not admit children under ten.
 Passive : Children under ten will not be admitted by us.
 Active : It is time to do your duty.

- Passive : It is time for your duty to be done.
 Active : I have lost my pen.
 Passive : My pen has been lost. (by me—omitted)

APPLIED SECTION

Students must remember that the ability to change the Active Voice into the Passive and vice versa is not sufficient. They must know when to use the Active Voice and when to use the passive :

The Active Voice is used when the agent (i.e. the doer of the action) is to be made prominent; the passive, when the person or thing acted upon is to be made prominent. The passive is therefore generally preferred when the active form would involve the use of an indefinite noun or pronoun (someone, somebody, people, we, they etc.)

Hence, "My pen has been stolen: is preferable to "Someone has stolen my pen"

Modern English Grammar shows us categorically that the English Passives are generally formed from.

(1) 'Be' + Past Participle..

A picture was bought from market.
 Some acid is taken in a glass-jar.

(2) Modal + ; Be' + Past Participle.

It can be done in ten minutes.
 This may please be done.
 The luggage may be kept aside.
 The answers must be written in ink.

(3) Get + Past Participle.

Some furniture got damaged. (Quasi Passive)
 The plan is got approved by the Corporation. (Full Passive)

When to use the Passive?

We use Passive Voice—

(i) for describing a process..

How orange syrup is prepared? (কিভাবে Orange Syrup তৈরী হয়)

First oranges are bought from market. Then the rotten ones are rejected. After that the wholesome oranges are washed and peeled. Then the oranges are crushed in a specially designed bowl. Now the seeds are strained away. After that sugar is added. Finally the solution of sugar and orange juice is stirred and the orange syrup is ready.

প্রথমে বাজার থেকে কমলালেবু কিনে আনা হলো। তারপর পচা লেবুগুলি বাদ দেওয়া হলো। ভালো লেবুগুলি ধুয়ে নিয়ে খোসা ছাড়ানো হলো। তারপর বিশেষ ধরনের তৈরি পাत्रে লেবুগুলি থেকে রস নিংড়ে নেওয়া হলো। এবার বীজগুলি হৈকে ফেলা হলো। এরপর চিনি মেশানো হলো। সবশেষে কমলালেবুর রস এবং চিনির দ্রবণটিকে ভাল করে ঘেঁটে নেওয়া হলো। এভাবেই কমলা রস প্রস্তুত হলো।

(ii) for narrating an incident/events.

(a) An old man was knocked by the bus and was taken to hospital where it was declared that the poor fellow was dead.

[একজন বৃদ্ধ লোক বাসের ধাক্কায় পড়ে গিয়েছিলেন। তাঁকে হাসপাতালে নিয়ে যাওয়া হয়েছিল। সেখানে তাঁকে মৃত বলে ঘোষণা করা হয়েছিল।]

HAPPY
NEW
YEAR
2020

(b) The Annual Sports meet of Arambagh Boys' High School was held on Sunday on the play ground of the School under a sunny sky.

[আরামবাগ বয়েজ হাইস্কুলের বার্ষিক ক্রীড়া প্রতিযোগিতা ছুন্দের মাঠে সন্ধ্যার অপরূপ আনন্দে পরিপূর্ণ ছিল।]

(iii) **for defining:**

(a) Short stories usually with animal characters and a moral are called fables. [ছোট গল্পে প্রাণী চরিত্র এবং নীতিকথা থাকলে তাকে fable বলা হয়।]

(b) If the satellite is made to revolve at exactly the same speed as that of the earth then the satellite will be called a 'geostationary satellite'. [যদি Satellite-টি পৃথিবীর সমান গতিতে ঘুরতে থাকে, তাহলে তাকে Geostationary Satellite বলা হয়।]

(iv) **for impersonal scientific writing:**

Three flasks and a few brightly polished nails are taken. In the first flask three nails are dropped and water is poured. The flask is left uncorked. [তিনটি ফ্লাস্ক এবং কয়েকটি চকচকে পেরেক নেওয়া হলো। প্রথম ফ্লাস্কে তিনটি চকচকে পেরেক নেওয়া হলো এবং জল ঢালা হলো। ফ্লাস্কটি খোলা রাখা হলো।]

(v) **for describing social and historical incidents.**

(a) A great battle was fought at Plassey.

(b) Mr. Raju Gandhi was murdered by some terrorists.

(vi) **for writing a notice.**

A meeting of the M.C. will be held in the school premises at 2 p.m. on the 25th February, 19... All the members are requested to attend the meeting.

(vii) **for making announcement.**

The flight to Japan will be delayed by three hours for foul weather.

(viii) **for classifying.**

Food can be classified into four groups—carbohydrates, vitamins, fats and proteins.

(ix) **for making request and invitation.**

(a) You are cordially invited to visit the exhibition.

(b) You are requested to keep off the grass.

(x) **for giving warning, advice, suggestion etc.**

(a) Smoking should be avoided.

(b) Answer-scripts may be cancelled for taking unfair means.

EXERCISE

1. Use the verb 'eat' in Active and Passive Voices in different tenses in the following table. One has been done for you.

| | Voice | Indefinite | Continuous | Perfect |
|---------|---------|---------------------|------------|---------|
| Present | Active | I eat rice | ..... | ..... |
| | Passive | Rice is eaten by me | ..... | ..... |
| Past | Active | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| | Passive | ..... | ..... | ..... |

VOICE CHANGE/DESCRIBING A PROCESS/NARRATING EVENTS 263

| | Passive | Active |
|---------|---------|--------|
| Picture | | |
| | | |
| | | |

2. Rewrite the following sentences using the Passive Voice.

A scientist invented penicillin in 1928. Someone built this school in 1990. I wrote a letter to you. Sumita will sing a song. Rakesh is drawing a picture. The girl was plucking a flower. He has read the book. Spring has forgotten the garden. He will give me a rupee. The Headmaster will punish the boy. They fought a good fight. The thief had stolen his bag. Mother looked after the children well. You should obey your parents. The Headmaster teaches us English. Please do this work. One must keep one's promises. We must endure what we cannot cure. Who has done this? I do not know why he has done this. Did you point out any defect? Prepare for the worst. Has anyone answered your question? May God bless you. Can I ever forget you? How many guests did you invite? It is now time to call over the names. I know that he did it. Do not laugh at the lame man. Do not look down upon the poor. Circumstances compelled me to go there. No one should take reference books out of the library. Somebody found your keys on the top of the almirah. They have increased the rate of taxation to thirty percent.

3. Rewrite the following sentences using the Active Voice.

This may please be done. He was elected President. The meeting was presided over by Mr. Sen. Let this work be done. You are requested to put off your shoes. Is the moon seen by you? The house has been repaired. English is spoken by them. Duties must be done. All the children should be loved. What is seen by him? My pen has been lost. A dream was dreamt by him. The thief has been caught by the police. The charge will be taken over tomorrow. It is known that the earth is round.

4. Change the voice of the following sentences.

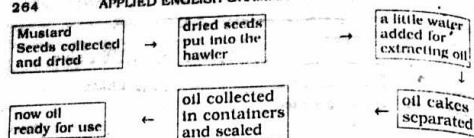
The tea-leaves are plucked. They are taken to the factory. Grain stalks are cut and tied in the bundles. Stalks are threshed to separate grain from stalk. Grain is stored in a granary. The air is constantly being polluted by smoke. The ground is polluted by rotten rubbish. Water is also polluted by chemicals and other wastes from factories.

5. Fill in the gaps, using the Passive Voice form of the verbs given in brackets for describing how tea is prepared for marketing.

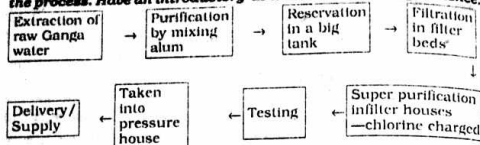
Leaves of tea plant— (pluck) and then— (take) to the factory. There they— (weigh) and— (prepare). First the leaves— (spread) on flat trays. These trays then— (take) to a heated room and— (keep) there for about twenty hours. The heat softens the leaves. Next the leaves— (pass) through a machine which curls and crushes the leaves. Then they— (place) in drawers and— (keep) there in layers of one or two inches thick. The drawers thereafter— (cover) with damp curtains. Here the leaves change their colour and look like bright copper. They also get their fine flavour here. Thus tea— (prepare) for marketing.

6. Use Passive Voice in describing the following process. You should have an introductory sentence like this.

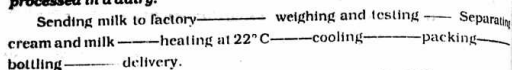
The preparation of edible oil from mustard seeds goes through a number of steps.



7. The following flow-chart describes how drinking water from Paldi Water Works is supplied to Calcutta. Study the flow chart and describe the process. Have an introductory as well as a concluding sentence.



8. Study the flow-chart and describe in Passive Voice how milk is processed in a dairy.



9. Use the Passive Voice and write in your own English :

পৌর এলাকায় বাড়ি তৈরি করতে হলে কতকগুলি পদক্ষেপ (steps) নিতে হয়। প্রথমে পরিকল্পনা টাকা পয়সা খরচের আনুমানিক হিসেব (estimate) তৈরি করা হয়। তারপর পৌর সংস্থা (municipality/corporation) কাছ থেকে পরিকল্পনা অনুমোদিত করা হয় (is got approved)। তারপর রাজমিস্ত্রি (mason) এবং শ্রমিকদের নিযুক্ত করা হয়। এরপর ছাদ পর্যন্ত নির্মাণ কাজ শেষ হয়। এরপর দরজা এবং জানলা লাগানো হয়। ভেতরের এবং বাইরের দেওয়াল প্রস্তুত করা হয়। এবং ইলেকট্রিক তার বসানোর কাজ (wiring) করা হয়। ভেতরের এবং বাইরের দেওয়াল রঙ করা হয়। এবং জানের সংযোগ এবং পরিশ্রাব্যার (sewerage) সংযোগের বন্দোবস্ত করা হয়। এখন ঘরা বেতে পারবে। পূর্ণনির্মাণের কাজ সম্পূর্ণ হলো।

[*Note: Sometimes, an Active voice is changed in to the Passive according to sense.]

Active : I have been able to spend Rs 10/-

= I have spent Rs 10/- (according to sense)

Passive : Rs 10/- has been spent by me.

[Rs 10/- is used here in collective sense. Hence the verb form is singular]

CHAPTER-24

SENTENCE AND ITS CLAUSES/JOINING/SPLITTING

Sentences according to structures are of three kinds.

(পাঁচের দিক থেকে Sentence তিন প্রকার।)

(1) Simple Sentence (সরল বাক্য)

(2) Complex Sentence (জটিল বাক্য)

(3) Compound Sentence (যৌগিক বাক্য)

Simple Sentence : A simple sentence is one that contains **only one subject and one finite verb**, expressed or understood. J. C. Nesfield.

[Simple Sentence-এ একটি মাত্র Subject এবং একটি মাত্র finite verb বা সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া থাকে। অবশ্য এর কোন একটি অংশ কখনো কখনো উহ্যও থাকতে পারে।]

যেমন—He found his meal ready.

He goes to school everyday.

***Note** A simple sentence may also have one or more non-finite verb/verbs. [Simple Sentence-এর একটি finite verb বা সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া ছাড়া এক বা একাধিক non-finite verb বা অসমাপিকা ক্রিয়া থাকতে পারে।]

যেমন—He goes to school to read and write.

Going home he found his meal ready.

Examples :

(a) Come

(Sub উহ্য)

(d) The boy reads a book.

(b) Come here.

(")

(e) The girl plucks a flower.

(c) Come to the blackboard.

(")

(f) I shall not go to school.

Complex Sentence : A complex sentence is one that contains **one principal clause and one or more subordinate clause or clauses.**

—Nesfield

[Simple Sentence-এ একটি Principal clause এবং এক বা একাধিক Subordinate clause থাকে, তাকে Complex sentence বলে। Principal clause—প্রধান বাক্যাংশ; Subordinate clause—অগ্রধান বাক্যাংশ বা নির্ভরশীল বাক্যাংশ]

***Note** A complex sentence may also have subordinate clauses joined with Conjunctions—*and, or, but, as well as* etc. [Complex sentence-এ *and, but* ইত্যাদি দ্বারা যুক্ত subordinate clause থাকতে পারে।]
যেমন—I left the room *when my sister came and began to eat a ripe banana.* I know *that he is poor but honest.*

Examples :

(a) I know

that he is honest.

Pr. cl. (প্রধান বাক্যাংশ)

Sub. cl. (অগ্রধান বাক্যাংশ)

(b) This is the boy

who did it.

Pr. cl. (প্রধান বাক্যাংশ)

Sub. cl. (অগ্রধান বাক্যাংশ)

(c) We waited

until he came.

Pr. cl. (প্রধান বাক্যাংশ)

Sub. cl. (অগ্রধান বাক্যাংশ)

Compound sentence : A compound sentence is one that contains **two or more independent clauses or co-ordinating clauses** joined together by co-ordinating conjunctions like *and, or, but, as well as, either or, neither nor* etc.

—Nesfield

[যে বাক্যে দুই বা তার বেশি স্বাধীন Clause সংযোগমূলক Conjunction-এর দ্বারা যুক্ত হয়। (যেমন-and, or, but, as well as, either..... or, neither..... nor) তাকে compound sentence বলে।]

Examples :

Salil is a good boy and he loved his brother.
Co-ord. cl. Co-ord. cl.
You may read the book or leave the class.
Co-ord. cl. Co-ord. cl.
He was late but he was not sorry.
Co-ord. cl. Co-ord. cl.

Difference of Clause and Phrase.

A phrase is a group of words which does not contain a finite verb. [Phrase হলো এমন শব্দগুচ্ছ যার মধ্যে কোন finite verb বা সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া নেই।]

A clause is a group of words that contains a finite verb. [Clause হলো এমন শব্দগুচ্ছ যার মধ্যে একটি finite verb বা সমাপিকা থাকে।]

—Nesfield

He gave me a gold chain.
phrase

He gave me a chain which was made of gold.
clause

*Note : Modern English grammar, however, has widened this view. It is now possible to talk of clauses with finite & non-finite verbs and verbless clauses. However, a clause is a shorter sentence within a bigger sentence.

- (a) I can not tell when he will come. (clause with a finite verb)
- (b) Wounded in the war. he returned home. (clause with a non finite) (= when he was wounded in the war)
- (c) While walking in the field. I saw a cow. (clause with a non-finite) (= While I was walking in the field)
- (d) When in England. he saw a strange sight. (verbless clause) (= When he was in England)

So we should say :

A clause is a group of words that contain a finite verb expressed or understood. But a phrase does not contain a finite verb in any way.

—P.C Das

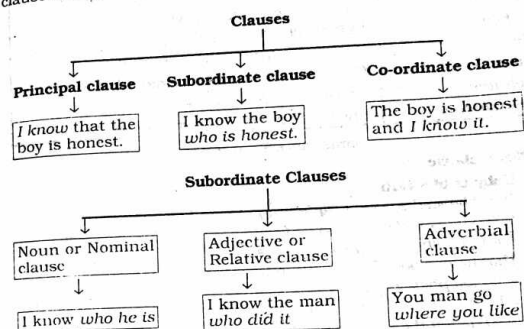
[সে জন্য আমরা বলতে পারি, একটি Clause-এ একটি finite verb বা সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া প্রকাশ্যভাবে অথবা উহা অবস্থায় থাকতে পারে। কিন্তু একটি phrase-এ কোনভাবেই finite verb থাকে না।]

Clauses

Clauses are of three kinds—(1) Principal clause (প্রধান বাক্যাংশ বা নিজেই স্বাধীনভাবে বসতে পার) (2) Subordinate clause (অপ্রধান বাক্যাংশ যা অন্য clause-এর উপর নির্ভরশীল) (3) Co-ordinate clause (সংযোগমূলক বাক্যাংশ)।

Then Subordinate clauses are subdivided into three heads—(i) Noun or Nominal clause. (ii) Adjective or Relative clause. (iii) Adverbial clause.

- A. The Noun clause does the work of a noun (Noun clause Noun-এর মতো কাজ করে।)
- B. The Adjective clause does the work of an Adjective. (Adjective clause Adjective-এর মতো কাজ করে।)
- C. The Adverbial clause does the work of an Adverb. (Adverbial clause Adverb-এর মতো কাজ করে।)



NOUN CLAUSE (NOMINAL CLAUSE)

A Noun clause is used in a sentence in the same way as a noun may be used. (Noun clause বাক্যে noun যেভাবে ব্যবহৃত হয়, সেইভাবে বসে।)

- (i) subject, (ii) object, (iii) object to a preposition (iv) complement (v) appositive.

| Functions of a Noun clause | Examples |
|---|--|
| Subject (কর্তা) | What he said is true. How he went there is known to all. That he is honest is known to me. When he will come is uncertain. Whether he will succeed is uncertain. |
| Object (কর্ম) | I know that he is honest. |
| Object to a preposition (preposition-এর কর্ম) | It depends on how he behaves. I know nothing of what he will do. |
| Complement (অকর্মক ক্রিয়ার কর্ম) | This is what we expected. |
| Appositive (কোন Noun-এর বা It-এর Apposition হিসাবে) | Our hope that he will come back proved false. It is true that he has come. |

| Linking Words | Examples |
|---------------|---|
| that | He said <i>that</i> he would go. |
| who | I know <i>who</i> he is. |
| whose | Do you know <i>whose</i> book it is? |
| whom | I can guess <i>whom</i> you want to see. |
| what | No one knows <i>what</i> caused the accident. |
| which | Can you tell <i>which</i> one is Ram's? |
| where | I do not know <i>where</i> he was born. |
| when | I know <i>when</i> he will come. |
| how | I can tell <i>how</i> he stole your watch. |
| why | Could you explain <i>why</i> he did this? |
| whatever | I earn <i>whatever</i> I can. |
| if/ whether | She asked me <i>if (whether)</i> I would stay or not. |

Some more Examples:

Noun clause

(i) Subject of a verb :

What he said is true. | **By joining** : He said this. It is true. |
 Why she is sad is anybody's guess.
 That you should say so surprises me.
 That he is a good boy is known to us.
 Who telephoned me is still a mystery.
 When he will return is uncertain.
 Why he left the place is a mystery.
 Whatever he earns is spent lavishly.
 Which he prefers is not known to me.
 How he could assist his friend was his chief concern.

(ii) Object of a verb :

We know that the earth is a planet.
 | **By joining** : The earth is a planet. We know it. |
 He hoped that it was true.
 She denied that she had written the letter.
 I cannot tell what has become of him.
 I do not know when I shall return.
 I asked the boy how old he was.
 Tell me frankly why you did this.
 Can you tell me what he requires?
 Tell me where you live.
 No one knows who he is.
 I ask you what you want.
 I know what he means.

(iii) Object to a preposition :

There is no meaning in what you say.
 | **By joining** : you say something. There is no meaning in it. |
 I know nothing of what he will do.
 Pay careful attention to what I say.
 They had no complaint except that the day was too hot.

(iv) Complement to a verb :

This is what we expected.

| **By joining** : This is the thing. We expected it. |
 Life is what we make it.

My belief is that he will not come.
 Our satisfaction is that we tried to the last.
 His great fear is that he may fail.
 My wish is that I may please you.
 His request will be that he may be allowed to resign.

(v) Object to a missing preposition :

The child was afraid that he would fall down. (afraid of)
 | **By joining** : The child might fall down. He was afraid of it. |
 They felt sorry that they lost the match. (sorry for)
 The patient was sure that he would recover. (sure of)
 She did not seem hopeful that he would arrive. (hopeful of)

(vi) Apposition to a noun or pronoun :

Your statement that you found the money in the street is correct.
 | **By joining** : You found the money in the street. It is your statement. It is correct. |
 There is a rumour that he is dead.
 The fact that he is no more is painful to us.
 It is true that the boy is honest.
 It is feared that he will not come back.
 It was unfortunate that you were absent.
 His belief that some day he would succeed cheered me.

***Note** In a Noun Clause the linking word is usually that. (Though some other linking words such as who, whose, what, which how etc are occasionally used.)

[লক্ষ্য কর Noun clause-এ বেশির ভাগ ক্ষেত্রে linking word-টি হয়, যদি who, whose, what, which, how ইত্যাদি subject, object, complement apposition হিসেবে Noun clause গঠন করতে Linker হতে পারে।]

Some more joining with a nominal clause

- You have solved the problem. No one knows the method.
[= No one knows how you solved the problem.]
- The student was absent yesterday. The teacher asked him the reason. | =The teacher asked the student why he had been absent yesterday.
- Mr. Rao is a great politician. This fact must be admitted.
[= This fact must be admitted that Mr. Rao is a great politician.
- The Rajdhani Express will reach at a certain time. Do you know the time? | =Do you know when the Rajdhani Express will reach ?]
- He passed the Final examination. He told me this.
[= He told me that he passed the final examination.]
- He did it. I do not know how. It is true.
[= It is true that I do not know how he did it.]

ADJECTIVE CLAUSE (RELATIVE CLAUSE)

An Adjective clause or Relative clause is used as an Adjective to qualify a noun or pronoun or denotes relation to a noun or pronoun. The noun or pronoun with which the Adjective clause is related called its antecedent. | Adjective clause বা Relative clause-এর মতো পূর্ববর্তী

noun বা pronoun-কে qualify করতে ব্যবহৃত হয় অথবা পূর্ববর্তী noun বা pronoun-এর সঙ্গে সন্ধা প্রকাশ করে। যে noun বা pronoun-এর সঙ্গে Adjective clause-এর সন্ধা তাকে Antecedent বলে।

Adjective clause বা Relative clause যাকে qualify করে সেই Antecedent এর ঠিক পরে বসে।

| Functions of a Relative clause | Examples |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Subject (কর্তা) | The boy <i>who came here</i> is my friend. |
| Object (কর্ম) | The boy <i>whom you know</i> is my friend. |
| Possessive (সম্বন্ধ) | The boy <i>whose father is a doctor</i> came here. |

LINKING WORDS/LINKERS

| Relative clause | Living (প্রাণীবাচক) | Non-living (অপ্রাণীবাচক) | Living and Non-living (প্রাণী ও অপ্রাণীবাচক) |
|-----------------|---------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Subject | <i>who</i> | <i>which / that</i> | <i>that</i> |
| Object | <i>whom</i> | <i>which / that</i> | <i>that</i> |
| Possession | <i>whose</i> | <i>of which</i> | — |

Examples : [Note the Linkers.]

This is the boy *who broke one of the windows*.

[By joining : This is the boy. He broke one of the windows.]

The girl *whom you saw last night* is my sister.

= The girl is my sister. you saw her last night.

That's the man *whose wife is an actress*.

= That is the man. Her wife is an actress.

The book *which (that) I lent you* belongs to my brother.

= I lent you the book. It belongs to my brother.

This is the chair *of which one leg is broken*.

= This is the chair. Its one leg is broken.

Noun clauses and Adjective clauses side by side. Noun clause এক

Adjective clause-এর আরো কিছু উদাহরণ পাশাপাশি লক্ষ্য কর।

Noun clauses

Tell me *who did it*.

Tell me *where he lives*.

Tell me *when he will come*.

I know *why he said so*.

I know *how he did it*.

Adjective clause

I know the boy *who did it*.

Tell me the place *where he lives*.

Tell me the time *when he will come*.

I know the reason *why he said so*.

I know the way *how he did it*.

[N. B. উপরের উদাহরণগুলিতে দেখা যাবে, Noun clause-এ কোন antecedent নেই; কিন্তু Adjective clause-এ সর্বদাই Antecedent আছে এবং Linker তুলি Antecedent-এর পরে বসে।]

Some more join g with a Relative clause

(a) Something bright was moving across the sky. It was like a star.
[=Something *which* was bright like a star was moving across the sky.]

(b) Rabindranath Tagore was a great poet. We hold him in high esteem. [= Rabindranath Tagore *whom* we hold in high esteem was a great poet./Rabindranath Tagore *who* was a great poet is held in high esteem by us.]

(c) A body was found last week. The police are trying to identify the body. [=The police are trying to identify the body *which* was found last week.]

- (d) I went to see the doctor. The doctor told me to take rest for a few days. [= I went to see the doctor *who* told me to take rest for a few days.]
- (e) Coal is found in Bengal. It is a very useful mineral. [= Coal *which* is a very useful mineral is found in Bengal.]
- (f) The Giant loved a little boy most. The boy was never seen again. [= The little boy *whom* the giant loved most was never seen again.]
- (g) The gallery was crowded. It holds only one thousand people. [= The Gallery *which* holds only one thousand people was crowded.]
- (h) The boy passed the Final examination. He told me this. [= The boy told me the fact *that* he passed the Final examination.]
- (i) The house is under construction. It belongs to me. [=The house *which* is under construction belongs to me.]
- (j) This is the place. Rabindranath was born here. [= This is the place *where* Rabindranath was born here. [= This is the place *where* Rabindranath was born.]
- (k) The book is very useful. Samir bought it yesterday. [= Yesterday Samir bought a book *which* is very useful. Or, The book *which* Samir bought yesterday, is very useful.]
- (l) The doctors and nurses are all thoroughly trained men and women. Their main purpose is to help the patients to get well as quickly as possible. [= The doctors and nurses are all thoroughly trained men and women *whose* main purpose is to help the patients to get well as quickly as possible.]

ADVERBIAL CLAUSE

An Adverbial clause is used as an Adverb to modify a verb, an adjective, another adverb etc. and usually denotes (i) time (ii) place (iii) cause or reason (iv) effect or result (v) extent (vi) manner (vii) comparison (viii) contrast (ix) condition (x) purpose. [Adverbial clause বাক্যে Adverb-এর মতো Verb, Adjective বা অন্য কোন Adverb-কে modify করে এবং সাধারণতঃ সময়, স্থান, কারণ, ফল, পরিমাণ, ধরণ, তুলনা, বৈপরীত্য, শর্ত বা উদ্দেশ্য বোঝায়।]

| Functions of an Adverb Clause | Linking words | Examples |
|-------------------------------|------------------|--|
| Time (সময়) | <i>when</i> | Father came <i>when</i> I started for Delhi. |
| Place (স্থান) | <i>where</i> | You may go <i>where</i> you like. |
| Cause or reason (কারণ যেহেতু) | <i>because</i> | My friend will not come <i>because</i> he is ill. |
| | <i>as</i> | Or, My friend will not come <i>as</i> he is ill. |
| Effect or result (ফলাফল) | <i>that</i> | I am so tired <i>that</i> I can not walk. |
| Extent (পরিমাণ) | <i>as far as</i> | He worked so hard <i>that</i> he was tired. |
| Manner (ধরণ) | <i>as</i> | <i>As far as</i> I know, the man is honest. |
| | <i>as if</i> | Amal plays <i>as he usually does</i> . |
| Condition (শর্ত) | <i>if</i> | He acted <i>as if</i> he were mad. |
| Comparison (তুলনা) | <i>as, as</i> | I shall help you <i>if</i> you come here. |
| | <i>than</i> | This boy is as brave <i>as</i> his brother (is). |
| Contrast (বৈপরীত্য) | <i>though</i> | You are taller <i>than</i> I (am). |
| Purpose (উদ্দেশ্য) | <i>that</i> | <i>Though / Although</i> he is poor, he is honest. |
| | | We read <i>that</i> we learn. |

Notes : As (reason) : As he is poor, he could not donate one thousand rupees. (যেহেতু সে দরিদ্র, সেজন্য সে এক হাজার টাকা দান করতে পারেনি।)
 As (contrast) : Poor as he is, he donated one thousand rupees. (দরিদ্র হলেও, তবু সে এক হাজার টাকা দান করল। Adjective-এর পরে As when-এর মতো।)

through যা :

Some more Examples : (Note the Linkers.)

Strike *while* the iron is hot.—Time.

I *by joining* : The iron is hot. Strike it now. |

I shall go out to play *when* I finish my sums.—Time

I *as* I shall finish my sums. Then I shall go out to play.

Mother put the fish *where* the cat couldn't reach it.—Place.

It is many days *since* I saw you last.—Time.

Sharmila did the work *as* it should be done.—Manner.

Since you are ill, you need not come.—Reason.

As he was ill, he could not come to school.—Reason.

Or, He could not come to school *because* he was ill.

They started early *that* they might reach early.—Purpose

He works hard in order *that* he may succeed.—Purpose.

He is not as intelligent *as* his sister (is).—Comparison (of degree)

He is no so tall *as* his brother (is)

He loves you better *than* (he loves) me.—Comparison (of degree)

Here *than* me' is compared with the object 'you'. |

He loves you better *than* I (love you).—Comparison (of degree)

Here *than* I' is compared with the subject 'he'. Hence 'I' is in subjective form. |

The more, the merrier.—Comparison (of degree)

As you sow, so you will reap.—Comparison (of manner)

I am not *such* a liar *as* you think.—Comparison (of degree)

Although he studied hard, he could not pass the Exam.—Contrast

So far as I know/*As far as* I know, he is honest.—Extent.

Be *so* good *as* to help me.—Extent.

If you don't work hard, you won't pass the exam.—Condition.

He held my hand *lest* I should fall.—Negative purpose.

I shall wait for you *till* you come back.—Time (till/until)

The doctor had come *before* the patient died.—Time.

The doctor came *after* the patient had died.—Time.

You must do your duty *ere* (এর) you go out for a walk.—Time.

Adverbial clause of Concession:

Adverbial clauses of concession are introduced by *whoever*

whatever, *whichever*, *however*, *whether*, *even if* etc.

| *whoever*, *whatever*, *however*, *whether*, *even if* ইত্যাদি।

Adverbial clause of concession গঠন করা হয় :

Whoever he may be, he cannot be allowed.

Whatever you may say, I do not believe you.

You may take *whichever* you like.

However strong you may be, I am not afraid of you.

I shall support you *whether* (you are) right or wrong.

Even if I fail, I shall not give up hope.

LINKERS OF ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

| | |
|---|--|
| Adverbial clause of Time (সময়) | when, while, before, after, ere (এর), till, until, since. |
| Adverbial clause of Place (স্থান) | where, whence (যেখান থেকে), wherever. |
| Adverbial clause of Cause (কারণ) | as, because, since, that |
| Adverbial clause of Result (ফল) | that, so...that, such...that. |
| Adverbial clause of Purpose (উদ্দেশ্য) | that, in order that, so that, lest |
| Adverbial clause of Comparison (তুলনা) | as...as, so...as, such...as, (in the positive degree), than, the (in the comparative degree) |
| Adverbial clause of Condition (শর্ত) | if, unless, in case, whether, on condition, provided (that) supposing that. |
| Adverbial clause of Contrast (বৈপরীত্য) | though, although |
| Adverbial clause of Extent (পরিমাণ) | as far as, so far as, so...as |
| Adverbial clause of Manner (ধরণ) | as, as if. |
| Adverbial clause of Concession (অস্বীকার) | whoever, whatever, whichever, however, whether, even if. |

Some special notes on Adverbial Clause of Condition.

It is important to note that the **future tense is not used in the Conditional Clause. It may be used in the main clause if it is required.**

[Conditional clause-4 Future tense ব্যবহৃত হয় না; main clause-এ অবশ্যই future tense ব্যবহৃত হতে পারে।]

We do not say : If you will find the pen, I shall give it to you.

We must say : If you find the pen, I shall give it to you.

Conditionals are of three types :

Open Condition (যুক্ত শর্ত অর্থাৎ যা হলেও হতে পারে)

| If clause (simple present) | Main clause (will/shall/can/may + verb) |
|----------------------------|---|
| If it rains. | I'll stay at home. |
| If you study hard. | you will get a first class. |
| If you find my money. | I shall give you an ice-cream. |
| If he runs all the time. | he can get there in time. |
| If her uncle arrives. | she may not come with you. |

Unfulfilled Condition (যা হতে পারত কিন্তু হয় নি)

| If clause (Past perfect) | Main clause (would/should/could/might + perfect) |
|--------------------------|--|
| If you had tried again. | you would have succeeded. |
| If I had studied hard. | I should have got a first class. |
| If I had seen him. | I could have saved him. |
| If you had come to me. | I might have helped you. |

Improbable or Imaginary condition (অসম্ভব বা কাল্পনিক শর্ত)

| If clause | Main clause |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Simple past (Past Subjunctive) | would/should/could/might/ + verb |
| If I had a degree. | I could get a job easily. |
| If I dropped the plate. | it would break. |
| If I were the Chief Minister. | I'd abolish examinations. |
| If I were a bird. | I would sing cheerfully in the sky. |
| (If omitted) Had I been a bird. | I would sing to cheer you. |
| (") Had you taken the medicine | You would have felt much better. |

We can also use *unless* in the sense 'ifnot', or in case in the sense 'if by any chance' in the conditional clause.

['যদি না' অর্থে *unless* এবং 'যদি ঘটে' অর্থে *in case* ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

Unless I hear from you, I'll go out for a week.

In case it rains, you should take an umbrella.

***Note** If you begin your sentences with a conditional clause, you must put a comma at the end of the clause. But if you place the conditional clause after the main clause there is no need of a comma. [যদি conditional clause দিয়ে বাক্য শুরু কর, তাহলে clause-এর শেষে অবশ্য একটি কমা(,) দিয়ে main clause আরম্ভ করবে। আর যদি conditional clause-এর main clause-এর পরে বসে, তাহলে কমা প্রয়োজন হয় না।]

If you study hard, you will get a first class.

[But! You will get a first class *if you study hard*.]

Some more joining with an adverbial clause :

- He came to my house. I was not at home. (Use 'when' clause)
[= He came to my house *when* I was not at home.]
- He has been running temperature. He wishes to go to school.
(Use 'though' clause)
[= *Though* he has been running temperature, he wishes to go to school.]
- He jumped out of bed. The bell rang then. (Use 'when' clause)
[= He jumped out of bed *when* the bell rang.]
- They learned the same things. They could help one another in the homework. (Join with a linker of reason.)
[= They could help one another in the homework *as/because* they learned the same things.]
- You are pardoned. You have confessed your crime. (Join with 'if' clause)
[= You are pardoned *as you* have confessed your crime.]
- I may grant your prayer. You shall have to ask for it. (Join with 'if' clause)
[= I may grant your prayer *if you* ask for it.]
- He is rich. I was in difficulty. He did not help me. (Use a time clause and a contrast clause.)
[= *Though* he is rich, he did not help me *when* I was in difficulty.]
- It is simple. A child can understand it. (Use *so.... that*)
[= It is *so* simple *that* a child can understand it.]

- He will not be able to pay off his debts. He is poor. (Use 'as' clause)
[= He will not be able to pay off his debts *as* he is poor.]
- I am his neighbour. He did not help me. (Use a clause of contrast.)
[= *Though* I am his neighbour, he did not help me.]
- He may come. Please request him to wait for me. (Use 'if' clause)
[= *If* he comes, please request him to wait for me.]
- Don't get out of the train now. The train should stop at the station. (Use a time clause with *till*.)
[= Wait *till* the train stops at the station.]

CO-ORDINATING CLAUSES (COMPOUND SENTENCES)

Co-ordinating clauses are independent clauses or of the same order or rank. A compound sentence must have two or more co-ordinating clauses (principal clauses/main clauses). It may have a subordinating clause or may not have any subordinating clause. The co-ordinating clauses are joined by co-ordinating conjunctions or connectives. [Co-ordinating clause হলো স্বাধীন clause যা অন্য clause-এর উপর নির্ভর করে না, নিজস্ব স্বাধীনভাবে বসতে পারে। Compound sentence-এ দুই বা তার বেশি principal clause বা Co-ordinating clause থাকবে, আর এতে Subordinate clause থাকতে পারে, নাও থাকতে পারে।]

***Note** The sentence having two co-ordinating clauses is also called a **Double sentence** and the sentence having more than two co-ordinating clauses is called a **Multiple sentence**.

| Joining by Co-ordinating Conjunctions | Compound Sentences |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <i>and</i> (সংযোজক) | I went there <i>and</i> found him ill. |
| <i>but</i> (বিপরীতার্থক) | He threw the stone <i>but</i> missed the dog. |
| <i>or</i> (বিকল্পসূচক) | I shall do it now <i>or</i> I shall do it never. |
| <i>so</i> (সিদ্ধান্তসূচক) | It is time to go: <i>so</i> let us start. |
| <i>yet</i> (তথ্যসি) | He is weak, <i>yet</i> he is working hard. |
| <i>both and</i> | I <i>both</i> thanked him <i>and</i> rewarded him. |
| <i>either or</i> | He is <i>either</i> mad <i>or</i> he has become a criminal. |
| <i>neither nor</i> | He <i>neither</i> obtains success <i>nor</i> deserves it. |
| <i>not only...but also</i> | He is <i>not only</i> a knave <i>but also</i> a fool. |

***Note** *And* joins similar clauses, *but* joins dissimilar clauses having contrast and *Or* denotes choice.

[দুটি সমধর্মী বাক্যাংশকে *and* দ্বারা এবং দুটি বিপরীতার্থক বাক্যাংশকে *but* দ্বারা যুক্ত করা হয়। আর এটি অথবা এটি এরূপ দুটি বাক্যাংশকে যুক্ত করতে *or* ব্যবহৃত হয়।]

Some more joining into a compound sentence

- Ram is a student of this school. Rahim is also a student of this school. [= Ram *and* Rahim are the students of this school.]
- The boy is intelligent. He stood first in the examination.
[= The boy is intelligent *and* he stood first in the examination.]
- The girl is intelligent. She failed in the examination.
[= The girl is intelligent *but* she failed in the examination.]

- (d) You may accept the offer. You may refuse it. [= You may accept the offer or refuse it. / You may either accept the offer or refuse it.]
- (e) I did not know anything of it. My brother also did not know anything of it. [= Neither my brother nor I know anything of it.]
- (f) You may turn to the left. You may turn to the right. [= You may turn either to the left or to the right.]
- (g) John may come here. Mary may come here. But both of them will not come here at the same time.
[= Either John or Mary may come here.]
- N.B.** = Either ...or. Neither ... nor are placed just before the alternatives. [Either or. Neither nor যার বিকল্প বোঝায়, তাকে তা পূর্বে স্থানে।]
- (h) He was found guilty. He was hanged. [= He was found guilty, so / therefore he was hanged.]
- (i) He stood first in the examination. He had been ill before.
[He had been ill before the examination; yet he stood first in it.]

CONTRACTED SENTENCES

Compound sentences often appear in a contracted or shortened form, so as to avoid the needless repetition of the same word.

—J.C. Nesfield

- (a) When there are **two predicates to the same subject**, there is no need to mention the subject more than once :
- (1) The sun rose and (the sun) filled the sky with light.
(2) He called at my house but (he) left soon.
(3) He is poor, but (he is) honest. (Adversative—বৈপরীত্য).
(4) He is diligent, and therefore, (he is) prosperous. (Illative—নিহিত).
- (b) When there are **two subjects to the same predicate**, we need not mention the predicate more than once :
- (1) He and you are guilty. (= He is guilty and you are guilty).
(Cumulative—সংযোজন)
(2) Either she did this, or her parents (did this). (Alternative—বিকল্প).

DIFFERENT CLAUSES WITH THE SAME LINKER

Now look back at some Linkers which are used in different clauses in different ways.

[অর্থ এবং প্রয়োগ অনুসারে একই Linking word যারা দু'তরু Clause গুলো জড়ি ধরবে হতে পারে।]

That :

- (i) I know that he is honest. [Noun clause—Object to 'know'.]
(ii) I know the boy that stole the book. [Adj. cl. —qualifying 'boy'.]
(iii) We read that we can learn. [Adv. cl. —modifying 'read' for purpose.]

Where :

- (i) I know where he lives now. [Noun clause—Object to 'know'.]
(ii) I know the place where he lives now. [Adj. cl. qualifying the noun 'place'.]

- (iii) We shall go where he lives now. [Adv. cl. modifying the verb 'go'.]

When :

- (i) I know why he will come back [Noun clause —Object to 'know'.]

- (ii) I know the time when he will come back. [Adj. cl. qualifying the noun 'time'.]
(iii) We shall go when he comes. [Adv. cl. modifying the verb 'go'.]
Why :
(i) I know why he looks so sad. [Noun clause—Object to 'know'.]
(ii) I know the reason why he looks so sad. [Adj. cl. qualifying the noun 'reason'.]

Who :

- (i) Do you know who did it? [Noun clause—Object to 'know'.]
(ii) Do you know the boy who did it? [Adj. clause—Qualifying the noun 'boy'.]

Which :

- (i) Do you know which is what? [Noun clause—Object to 'know'.]
(ii) This is the pen which writes well. [Adj. Clause qualifying 'pen'.]
(iii) Which is preferable is not known to me. [Noun clause—Subject to 'is known'.]

Whether :

- (i) I asked her whether she would do it or not. [Noun cl.—Object to 'ask'.]
(ii) I shall support you whether (you are) right or wrong. [Adv. cl.—modifying 'support'.]

SPLITTING OF SENTENCES

A long sentence can be split up into some short simple sentences. In fact, it is just the opposite of Synthesis or Joining. Here are some examples. Pay special Attention for supplying subject and verb in short sentences and maintain sequence of action.

[একটি দীর্ঘ বাক্যকে কয়েকটি ছোট সরল বাক্যে ভাঙা যায়। প্রকৃতপক্ষে split up হোল Joining-এর বিপরীত ক্রিয়া। এখানে কিছু উদাহরণ দেওয়া হোল। ছোট বাক্যগুলিতে Subject এবং verb ব্যবহার করার দিকে বিশেষ মনোযোগ দাও এবং ঘটনার পারস্পর্য বজায় রাখ।]

- (i) He took a pen and a piece of paper and wrote something on it.
= He took a pen. He took a piece of paper. He wrote something on it.
(ii) It is such a good news that I cannot believe it.
= It is a very good news. But I cannot believe it.
(iii) As you are a proved liar, I cannot believe you.
= You are a proved liar. So I cannot believe you.
(iv) Being tired by a long walk, the traveller sat under a tree.
= The traveller was tired by a long walk. So he sat under a tree.
(v) Habib was unhappy when he was punished and shown a red card by the referee.
= Habib was punished by the referee. He was also shown a red card by the referee. So he was unhappy.
(vi) This is Bikash who is not only my friend but also one of the best boys in the class.
= This is Bikash. He is my friend. He is also one of the best boys in the class.

- (vii) Amal headed the ball that was floated into the penalty area by Akhtar, taken from a corner kick.
= Amal headed the ball. It was floated into the penalty area by Akhtar. It was taken from a corner kick.
- (viii) The boy stood on the burning deck, from where every one else had gone away.
= The boy stood on the deck. The deck was burning. Everyone else had gone away from there.
- (ix) Men of science have proved that the sun does not move round the earth, but the earth moves round the sun.
= The earth moves round the sun. The sun does not move round the earth. Men of science have proved these facts.
- (x) History says that socrates when he was given a cup of hemlock continued to talk to his friends who were standing beside him.
= Socrates was given a cup of hemlock. He continued to talk to his friends. They were standing beside him. History says this.

APPLIED SECTION

1. Complete these sentences with noun clauses :

(Noun Clause-এর সহযোগে বাক্যগুলি সম্পূর্ণ কর।)

- (a) My father said
(b) why I don't know.
(c) What is quite true.
(d) Show me how
(e) I hope
(f) I have forgotten what
(g) My sister believes
(h) He asked his friend if/whether

2. Join these simple sentences in A with Relative clauses in B.

[Using who, whose, whom, which, what, that etc. // Relative Linker is used just after the noun or pronoun with which it is related (antecedent).]

- | A | B |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1st sentence | 2nd sentence |
| (a) Columbus died in 1506. | He was the discoverer of America. |
| (b) Gravity is a force. | It attracts objects towards the centre. |
| (c) This is a tool. | It is used for cutting metal. |
| (d) English is a language. | It is spoken all over the world.. |
| (e) This is the place. | There the poet Rabindranath was born. |
| (f) Report it to your friend. | Nehru said this to his daughter. |
| (g) Rabindranath is a great poet. | He composed 'Gitanjali'. |
| (h) The fox saw some grapes. | Those were hanging from a vine |
| (i) The air surrounds us. | It consists of various elements. |
| (j) You met the man last night. | He is a soldier. |

3. Combine the part in A with a suitable Adverbial Clause in B.

[A কলামের sentence-গুলির সঙ্গে B কলামের Adverbial clause-গুলি সঠিকভাবে যোগ কর।]

- | A | B |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1st part | 2nd part (Choose suitable one) |
| (a) A plant will not grow | if they come by train. |
| (b) Shila cut her finger | while he was crossing the road. |
| (c) The boy met an accident | if the roots are cut off. |
| (d) What will happen to you | while she was sharpening the pencil. |
| (e) They will reach here early | while she spelt 'doll' in the other. |
| (f) Anne gave Helen a doll to hold in one hand. | if you take too much food? |
4. Join the sentences using **and, but, or, either ...or, neither ... nor**.
- (a) John worked hard. He did very well in the exam.
(b) Edison is good at Mathematics. He is bad at English.
(c) Bipin has read the story. He can't remember the title.
(d) Sisir started late. He reached school just in time.
(e) Is the red one your pen? Is the black one your pen?
(f) Shall I write to mother? Will you tell her?
(g) We may go to the market. We may go to the playground.
(h) Bina does not take tea. She does not take milk too.
(i) Miss Helen Keller was highly sensitive to smell.
Dr. Tilney's sense of smell was not sharp.

Participial phrases & Non-finite clauses.

In **Modern Grammar** difference has been shown between a **Participial phrase** and a **Non-finite clause**. Modern Grammar deals with a **Non-finite clause** which is a subordinate clause : but that subordinate clause does not contain a Finite verb. **It contains a participle or an infinitive where the subject and verb are understood. But a Participial phrase itself becomes the subject or the object of a sentence.**

[অধুনিক Grammar-এর **Participial phrase** এবং **Non-finite clause**-এর মধ্যে পার্থক্য দেখানো হয়েছে। Non-finite clause হলো এমন এক রকম subordinate clause যার Finite বা সমাপিকা ক্রিয়া থাকে না; এতে Participle বা Infinitive এমনভাবে থাকে যে Subject এবং Verb উভয় আছে বোঝা যায়। কিন্তু Non-finite clause-এর সঙ্গে Participial Phrase-এর পার্থক্য হলো এই যে Participial Phrase নিজেই Sentence-এর Subject বা Object হয়ে যায়।]

In **chapter 20**, we have discussed how **'-ing participle'**, **'-ed/en participle'** and **Infinitives** are used as **Premodifiers** or **Postmodifiers**. Here we must note that such **Premodifiers** with **'ing'** or **'ed/en'** participles are **Participial phrases**.

But the **Postmodifiers** with **'-ing'** or **'ed/en'** participles or **Infinitives** are **Non-finite clauses** as the omitted subject and verb can be easily inserted into such clauses. In fact, **Non-finite clauses are shortened or reduced clauses**.

[আমরা এই বইয়ের Chapter 20-তে দেখিয়েছি কিভাবে **'ing participle'**, **'-ed/en participle'** এবং **Infinitive**-গুলি **Premodifier** বা **Postmodifier** হিসেবে ব্যবহৃত হয়। এখানে আমরা লক্ষ্য করব, **'ing'** বা **'ed/en'** Participle-যুক্ত **Premodifier**-গুলি কেবল **Participial Phrase** হিসেবে বসে। কিন্তু **'ing'** বা **'ed/en'** Participle বা

Infinitive-যুক্ত Post modifier-বলি Non-finite clause যেহেতু উহা হয়ে থাকে কত বা ক্রিয়া এই clause-গুলিতে সহজেই চোখের দোহা পড়ে। এক্ষেপে Non-finite clause-গুলি হলো একটি সম্পূর্ণ clause-এর সর্বাঙ্গিক রূপ।

Now see the difference between a Non-finite clause and a Participial phrase : [এক Non-finite clause এবং Participial Phrase-এর পার্থক্য বুঝে।]

Non-finite Clause
I found Gargi standing at the door. [= I found Gargi (who was) standing at the door.]

I saw a man injured by an accident. [= I saw a man (who was) injured by an accident.]
He is the last man to leave the place. [= He is the last man (who is) to leave the place.]

*Note ইহা-অন্ত অন্যান্য ক্রিয়া প্রকাশ করতে ing' participle-এর সাহায্যে

Non-finite clause কয় হয়।

গোলমাল তিনটি হেলেনি লোকেরা উঠিল—Hearing the noise the boys sprang up [= when the boys were hearing the noise, they sprang up.]

কতকিছু ভাবা যত্ন গভীর হেলেনি প্রবৃত্তির উত্তর দিতে পারিল না—Being absorbed in deep thought the boy could not answer the question.

অন্যর 'ইশে'-অন্ত অন্যান্য ক্রিয়ায় কেন্দ্রে বা কেন্দ্রি হওয়ার প্রসঙ্গ অর্থে Having-Past Participle দিয়ে Nominative Absolute করে Non-finite clause করা যায়। যেমন—যুব উঠলে কুয়াশা দূরীভূত হয়—The sun having risen, the fog dispersed.

Now see how Non-finite clauses are used to reduce a Relative clause or an Adverbial clause :

[এক Relative clause এবং Adverbial clause-কে সর্বাঙ্গিক করতে ক্রিয়া Non-finite clause-এর ব্যবহার হয় দেখ।]

(i) Use of 'ing participle' for reducing a Relative clause.

| Relative clauses | Non-finite 'ing' clauses (Reduced Relative clauses) |
|---|---|
| Look at the boys who are running in the field. | Look at the boys running in the field. |
| He saw the children who were looking out hopelessly. | He saw the children looking out hopelessly. |
| He saw the sailors who were hauling chests. | He saw the sailors hauling chests. |
| The boy who is working in the laboratory is studious. | The boys working in the laboratory is studious. |
| Can you see the kite which is flying high ? | Can you see the kite flying high ? |

Participial Phrase

A darkening sky may bring showers ['darkening sky' is the subject of the verb 'saw'. No other subject and verb can be inserted into the Participial phrase.]

I saw some starving beggars.

['starving beggars' is the object of the verb 'saw'. No subject and verb can be inserted into the phrase.]

The injured boy was weeping.

['injured boy' is the subject of the sentence and no other subject and verb can be inserted into it.]

(ii) Use of 'ed/en Participle' for reducing a Relative clause.

| Relative clauses | Non-finite 'ed/-en' clauses (Reduced Relative clauses) |
|--|--|
| The picture which was painted by your brother is really beautiful. | The picture painted by your brother is really beautiful. |
| I got the letter which was written by you. | I got the letter written by you. |
| Lessons which are learnt easily are soon forgotten. | Lessons learnt easily are soon forgotten. |
| The book which was lent by the library is missing. | The book lent by the library is missing. |

(iii) Use of 'ing/-ed Participle' for reducing an Adverbial clause.

| Adverbial clauses | Non-finite 'ing/-ed' clauses (Reduced Adverbial clauses) |
|--|--|
| When he was wounded in the war he returned home. | Wounded in the war, he returned home. |
| When he was in England, he saw a strange sight. | When in England, he saw a strange sight. |
| While I was walking in the field, I met a monk. | While walking in the field I met a monk. |
| When the plant was shaded, it stopped feeding. | Shaded, the plant stopped feeding. |

(iv) Use of 'to-infinitive' for reducing Relative clauses.

| Relative clauses | Non-finite 'to-infinitive' clauses (Reduced Relative clauses) |
|--|--|
| Nurul was the last man who raised a protest. | Nurul was the last man to raise a protest [= Nurul was the last man (who was) to raise a protest.] |
| Ayesha was the girl who arrived first. | Ayesha was the girl to arrive first. [= Ayesha was the girl (who was) to arrive first.] |
| I have a nice pen with which I can write. | I have a nice pen to write with. [= I have a nice pen (that is) to write with.] |
| The next train which is to arrive is running three hours late. | The next train to arrive is running three hours late. |
| This is the work which is to be done by us. | This is the work to be done by us. |

*Note A Non-finite clause can be placed in front of a main clause, after a main clause, or in the middle of it.

In the practical field, we have to combine the different processes shown above to join some sentences into a single sentence, as below :

(i) **Separate** : I saw him fall. I ran towards him. I feared the worst.

Joined : When I saw him fall, I ran towards him, fearing the worst. (Complex)